

**UNITED STATES  
SECURITIES AND EXCHANGE COMMISSION  
Washington, D.C. 20549**

**FORM S-1  
REGISTRATION STATEMENT UNDER THE SECURITIES ACT OF 1933**

AETHLON MEDICAL, INC.  
(Exact name of registrant as specified in its charter)

Nevada  
(State or other jurisdiction of incorporation or organization)

3826  
(Primary Standard Industrial Classification Code Number)

13-3632859  
(I.R.S. Employer Identification Number)

9635 Granite Ridge Drive, Suite 100  
San Diego, California 92123  
(858) 459-7800  
(Address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of registrant's principal executive offices)

James A. Joyce  
9635 Granite Ridge Drive, Suite 100  
San Diego, California 92123  
(858) 459-7800  
(Name, address, including zip code, and telephone number, including area code, of agent for service)

With copies of all correspondence to:

Jolie Kahn, Esq.  
33 Edgewood  
Locust Valley, NY 11560  
(516) 217-6379

Robert Charron, Esq.  
Ellenoff Grossman & Schole LLP  
1345 Avenue of the Americas  
New York, NY 10105

Approximate date of commencement of proposed sale to the public: As soon as practicable after the effective date hereof.

If any of the securities being registered on this Form are to be offered on a delayed or continuous basis pursuant to Rule 415 under the Securities Act of 1933, check the following box: ☒

If this Form is filed to register additional securities for an offering pursuant to Rule 462(b) under the Securities Act, please check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering. ☐

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(c) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering. ☐

If this Form is a post-effective amendment filed pursuant to Rule 462(d) under the Securities Act, check the following box and list the Securities Act registration statement number of the earlier effective registration statement for the same offering. ☐

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is a large accelerated filer, an accelerated filer, a non-accelerated filer, or a smaller reporting company. See the definitions of "large accelerated filer," "accelerated filer" and "smaller reporting company" in Rule 12b-2 of the Exchange Act.

Large accelerated filer ☐

Accelerated filer ☐

Non-accelerated filer ☐

Smaller reporting company ☒

(Do not check if a smaller reporting company)

Indicate by check mark whether the registrant is an emerging growth company as defined in Rule 405 of the Securities Act of 1933 (\*230.405 of this chapter) or Rule 12b-2 of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934 (\*240.12b-2 of this chapter).

☐ Emerging growth company

☐ If an emerging growth company, indicate by check mark if the registrant has elected not to use the extended transition period for complying with any new or revised financial accounting standards provided pursuant to section 13(a) of the Exchange Act.

#### CALCULATION OF REGISTRATION FEE

<b>Title of each Class of Securities to be Registered</b>	<b>Proposed Maximum Aggregate Offering Price <sup>(1)(2)</sup></b>	<b>Amount of Registration Fee</b>
Units, each Unit consisting of one share of Common Stock, par value \$0.001 per share and one common warrant to purchase .75 of a share of Common Stock (3)	\$ 7,500,000	\$ 869.25
(i) Common Stock included in the Units (4)	—	—
(ii) Common warrants included in the Units (4)	—	—
Pre-funded Units, each Pre-funded Unit consisting of one pre-funded warrant to purchase one share of Common Stock and one common warrant to purchase .75 of a share of Common Stock (3)	\$ 7,500,000	\$ 869.25
(i) Pre-funded warrants included in the Pre-funded Units (4)	—	—
(ii) Common warrants included in the Pre-funded Units (4)	—	—
Shares of Common Stock underlying pre-funded warrants included in the Pre-funded Units (3)	\$ —	\$ —
Shares of Common Stock underlying common warrants included in the Units and the Pre-funded Units (3)	\$ 14,062,500	\$ 1,627.77
Placement Agent's warrants (6)	—	—
Common Stock issuable upon exercise of Placement Agent's warrants (5)(6)	\$ 281,250	\$ 20.76
<b>Total</b>	<b>\$ 29,343,750</b>	<b>\$ 3,387.03(7)</b>

(1) Estimated pursuant to Rule 457(o) of the Securities Act of 1933 solely for purposes of calculating the amount of the registration fee.

(2) Pursuant to Rule 416 of the Securities Act of 1933, this Registration Statement also shall cover any additional shares of common stock that shall become issuable by reason of any stock dividend, stock split, recapitalization, or other similar transaction by the registrant.

(3) The proposed maximum aggregate offering price of the Units proposed to be sold in the offering will be reduced on a dollar-for-dollar basis based on the offering price of any Pre-funded Units offered and sold in the offering, and as such the proposed maximum aggregate offering price of the Units and Pre-funded Units (including the common stock issuable upon exercise of the pre-funded warrants included in the Pre-funded Units), if any, is \$7,500,000.

(4) No additional registration fee is payable pursuant to Rule 457(i) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

(5) No additional registration fee is payable pursuant to Rule 457(g) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended.

(6) Represents warrants to purchase a number of shares of common stock equal to 3% of the number of shares of common stock (i) included within the Units and (ii) issuable upon the exercise of the pre-funded warrants included within the Pre-funded Units placed in this offering at an exercise price equal to 125% of the offering price per unit (excluding any shares of common stock underlying the common warrants included in the units and the pre-funded units placed in this offering).

(7) The Registrant previously paid \$1506.70 as a registration fee in connection with this registration statement.

**The registrant hereby amends this registration statement on such date or dates as may be necessary to delay its effective date until the registrant shall file a further amendment which specifically states that this registration statement shall thereafter become effective in accordance with section 8(a) of the Securities Act of 1933 or until the registration statement shall become effective on such date as the Commission acting pursuant to said section 8(a), may determine.**

**The information in this preliminary prospectus is not complete and may be changed. These securities may not be sold until the registration statement filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission is effective. This preliminary prospectus is not an offer to sell these securities and we are not soliciting an offer to buy these securities in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted.**

**PRELIMINARY PROSPECTUS**

**Subject to completion, dated September 15, 2017**

**Aethlon Medical, Inc.**

**Up to 4,777,070 Units (each Unit contains 1 Share of Common Stock and 1 Common Warrant to purchase .75 of a Share of Common Stock)**

**or**

**Up to 4,777,070 Pre-funded Units (each Pre-funded Unit contains 1 Pre-funded Warrant to Purchase 1 Share of Common Stock and 1 Common Warrant to Purchase .75 of a Share of Common Stock  
(4,777,070 Shares of Common Stock Underlying the Pre-funded Warrants) and  
(3,582,803 Shares of Common Stock Underlying the Common Warrants)**

We are offering up to 4,777,070 units (each unit consisting of one share of our common stock and one common warrant to purchase .75 of a share of our common stock). Each common warrant contained in a unit has an exercise price of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ per share. The common warrants contained in the units will be exercisable immediately and will expire five years from the date of issuance. We are also offering the shares of our common stock that are issuable from time to time upon exercise of the common warrants contained in the units.

We are also offering to each purchaser whose purchase of units in this offering would otherwise result in the purchaser, together with its affiliates and certain related parties, beneficially owning more than 4.99% of our outstanding common stock immediately following the consummation of this offering, the opportunity to purchase, if the purchaser so chooses, pre-funded units (each pre-funded unit consisting of one pre-funded warrant to purchase one share of our common stock and one common warrant to purchase .75 of a share of our common stock) in lieu of units that would otherwise result in the purchaser's beneficial ownership exceeding 4.99% of our outstanding common stock (or at the election of the purchaser, 9.99%). Each pre-funded warrant contained in a pre-funded unit will be exercisable for one share of our common stock. The purchase price of each pre-funded unit will equal the price per unit being sold to the public in this offering minus \$0.01, and the exercise price of each pre-funded warrant included in the pre-funded unit will be \$0.01 per share. This offering also relates to the shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of any pre-funded warrants contained in the pre-funded units sold in this offering. Each common warrant contained in a pre-funded unit has an exercise price of \$ \_\_\_\_\_ per share. The common warrants contained in the pre-funded units will be exercisable immediately and will expire five years from the date of issuance. We are also offering the shares of our common stock that are issuable from time to time upon exercise of the common warrants contained in the pre-funded units. For each pre-funded unit we sell, the number of units we are offering will be decreased on a one-for-one basis. Units and the pre-funded units will not be issued or certificated. The shares of common stock or pre-funded warrants, as the case may be, and the common warrants can only be purchased together in this offering but the securities contained in the units or pre-funded units will be issued separately.

Our common stock is listed on the NASDAQ Capital Market under the symbol "AEMD." On September 7, 2017, the closing bid price of our common stock as reported on the NASDAQ Capital market was \$1.57 per share. The public offering price per share and related warrant will be determined between us, the placement agent and the investors in the offering based on market conditions at the time of pricing, and may be at a discount to the current market price of our common stock. There is no established trading market for the warrants, and we do not expect an active trading market to develop. We do not intend to list the warrants on any securities exchange or other trading market. Without a trading market, the liquidity of the warrants will be extremely limited.

**Investing in our securities involves risks. You should carefully read and consider the "Risk Factors" beginning on page 5 of this prospectus before investing.**

	Per Unit		Per Pre-Funded Unit		Total
Public offering price	\$	•	\$	•	•
Placement agent fees	\$	•	\$	•	•
Proceeds, before expenses, to us	\$	•	\$	•	•

We have retained H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC as our exclusive placement agent to use its reasonable best efforts to solicit offers to purchase the securities in this offering. The placement agent has no obligation to buy any of the securities from us or to arrange for the purchase or sale of any specific number or dollar amount of the securities. Because there is no minimum offering amount required as a condition to closing in this offering, the actual public offering amount, placement agent's fees, and proceeds to us, if any, are not presently determinable and may be substantially less than the total maximum offering amounts set forth above.

We have agreed to pay the placement agent a total cash fee equal to 6.0% of the gross proceeds of this offering and a management fee of 1% of the gross proceeds of this offering. In addition to the placement agent's fees, we have agreed to pay the placement agent a non-accountable expense allowance of \$50,000, to reimburse the placement agent for fees and expenses of its legal counsel in an amount up to \$100,000 and to reimburse the placement agent for any escrow or settlement fees in an amount not to exceed \$10,000. As additional compensation, we plan to issue the placement agent warrants to purchase a number of shares of common stock equal to 3% of (i) the number of shares of common stock placed in this offering, and (ii) issuable upon exercise of the pre-funded warrants. The exercise price for these warrants will be \$ \_\_\_\_\_ per share, which represents 125% of the public offering price per unit. See "Plan of Distribution."

**Neither the Securities and Exchange Commission nor any state securities commission has approved or disapproved of these securities or passed upon the adequacy or accuracy of this prospectus. Any representation to the contrary is a criminal offense.**

Delivery of the shares of our common stock and warrants is expected to be made on or about •, 2017.

**H.C. Wainwright & Co.**

The date of this prospectus is \_\_\_\_\_, 2017.

**AETHLON MEDICAL, INC.**  
**TABLE OF CONTENTS**

	<b>Page</b>
<a href="#">About this Prospectus</a>	1
<a href="#">Prospectus Summary</a>	1
<a href="#">The Offering</a>	3
<a href="#">Risk Factors</a>	5
<a href="#">Special Note Regarding Forward-Looking Statements</a>	26
<a href="#">Use of Proceeds</a>	27
<a href="#">Market Price for Common Equity and Related Stockholder Matters</a>	28
<a href="#">Capitalization</a>	32
<a href="#">Dividend Policy</a>	33
<a href="#">Dilution</a>	33
<a href="#">Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations</a>	35
<a href="#">Business</a>	49
<a href="#">Directors and Executive Officers</a>	62
<a href="#">Executive Compensation</a>	65
<a href="#">Security Ownership of Certain Beneficial Owners and Management</a>	70
<a href="#">Certain Relationships and Related Transactions and Director Independence</a>	72
<a href="#">Description of Capital Stock</a>	73
<a href="#">Description of Securities We Are Offering</a>	73
<a href="#">Plan of Distribution</a>	76
<a href="#">Legal Matters</a>	78
<a href="#">Experts</a>	78
<a href="#">Where You Can Find More Information</a>	78
<a href="#">Index to Consolidated Financial Statements</a>	F-1

## ABOUT THIS PROSPECTUS

**You should rely only on the information contained in this prospectus. We have not authorized any person to provide you with different information. If anyone provides you with different or inconsistent information, you should not rely on it. We are not making an offer to sell these securities in any jurisdiction where the offer or sale is not permitted. The information contained in this prospectus is accurate only as of the date of this document, regardless of the time of delivery of this prospectus or the time of issuance or sale of any securities. Our business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects may have changed since that date. You should read this prospectus in its entirety before making an investment decision. You should also read and consider the information in the documents to which we have referred you in the section of this prospectus entitled “Where You Can Find More Information.”**

**For investors outside of the United States, neither we nor the placement agent have done anything that would permit this offering or possession or distribution of this prospectus in any jurisdiction where action for that purpose is required, other than in the United States. You are required to inform yourselves about and to observe any restrictions relating to this offering and the distribution of this prospectus outside of the United States.**

## PROSPECTUS SUMMARY

*This summary highlights certain information about us, this offering and selected information contained elsewhere in this prospectus. This summary is not complete and does not contain all of the information that you should consider before deciding whether to invest in our securities. You should carefully read the entire prospectus, including the information set forth in the section entitled “Risk Factors.”*

### Company Overview

We are a medical technology company focused on addressing unmet needs in global health and biodefense. The Aethlon Hemopurifier® is an early clinical-stage therapeutic device designed for the single-use removal of life-threatening viruses from the circulatory system of infected individuals. We believe the Hemopurifier® can be a part of the broad-spectrum treatment of life-threatening highly glycosylated viruses that are not addressed with an already approved treatment countermeasure objectives set forth by the U.S. Government to protect citizens from bioterror and pandemic threats. In small-scale or early feasibility human studies, the Hemopurifier® has been administered to HIV, Hepatitis-C, and Ebola infected individuals. Additionally, the Hemopurifier® has also been validated to capture Zika virus, Lassa virus, MERS-CoV, Cytomegalovirus, Epstein-Barr virus, Herpes Simplex virus, Chikungunya virus, Dengue virus, West Nile virus, Smallpox-related viruses, H1N1 Swine Flu virus, H5N1 Bird Flu virus, and the reconstructed Spanish flu virus of 1918. In several cases, these validations were conducted in collaboration with leading government or non-government research institutes. In the United States, we are focused on the clinical advancement of the Hemopurifier® through investigational device exemptions (IDEs) approved by FDA. We recently concluded a feasibility study to demonstrate the safety of our device in health-compromised individuals infected with a viral pathogen. We are also the majority owner of Exosome Sciences, Inc. (ESI), a company focused on the discovery of exosomal biomarkers to diagnose and monitor life-threatening diseases. Included among ESI's endeavors is the advancement of a TauSome™ biomarker candidate to diagnose Chronic Traumatic Encephalopathy (CTE) in the living. ESI previously documented that TauSome levels in former NFL players to be 9x higher than same age-group control subjects.

### Corporate History

On March 10, 1999, Aethlon, Inc., a California corporation, Hemex, Inc., a Delaware corporation and the accounting predecessor to Aethlon, Inc., and Bishop, Inc., a publicly-traded company, completed an Agreement and Plan of Reorganization structured to result in Bishop, Inc.'s acquisition of all of the outstanding common shares of Aethlon, Inc. and Hemex, Inc. Under the plan's terms, Bishop, Inc. issued shares of its common stock to the stockholders of Aethlon, Inc. and Hemex, Inc. such that Bishop, Inc. then owned 100% of each company. Upon completion of the transaction, Bishop, Inc. was renamed Aethlon Medical, Inc. Our executive offices are located at 9635 Granite Ridge Drive, Suite 100, San Diego, California 92123. Our telephone number is (858) 459-7800. Our website address is [www.aethlonmedical.com](http://www.aethlonmedical.com). Our website and the information contained on our website are not incorporated into this prospectus or the registration statement of which it forms a part.

## **Our Lead Device: The Aethlon Hemopurifier**

The Aethlon Hemopurifier is a device that selectively targets the rapid elimination of circulating viruses and tumor-secreted exosomes that may promote cancer progression. More specifically, the Hemopurifier has the potential to address antiviral drug-resistance in Hepatitis C virus and Human Immunodeficiency Virus-infected individuals; serve as a potential countermeasure against viral pathogens not addressed by drug or vaccine therapies; and, we believe, represent the first therapeutic strategy to potentially address cancer-promoting exosomes. In clinical studies conducted in India, safety and efficacy observations of Hemopurifier therapy have been observed in both Hepatitis C virus and Human Immunodeficiency Virus-infected individuals. We have recently completed the treatment of eight patients in our first FDA-approved early feasibility study of Hemopurifier therapy in the U.S., and are preparing our final report on that study for submission to the FDA.

## **The Scientific Mechanism of the Hemopurifier**

The Hemopurifier is an extracorporeal device designed for the single-use removal of viruses, viral toxins, and deleterious exosomes from the circulatory system of treated patients. Delivery of Hemopurifier therapy can occur through the established infrastructure of continuous renal replacement therapy and dialysis instruments routinely found in hospitals and clinics worldwide. Many extracorporeal techniques, such as dialysis or plasmapheresis, are designed to remove circulating particles solely by molecule size. However, the Hemopurifier incorporates a lectin-affinity agent that is designed to bind to a unique high mannose signature that is abundant on the surface of tumor-derived exosomes and glycoproteins that reside on the outer membrane of infectious viruses. The Hemopurifier is designed to provide a broad-spectrum treatment of life-threatening highly glycosylated viruses that are not addressed with an already approved treatment mechanism to remove certain cancer and infectious disease-related particles from human blood. A single treatment with the Hemopurifier can last from three to six and one half hours in duration.

## **The Hemopurifier - U.S. Clinical Trials**

On March 13, 2017, we disclosed that we concluded an FDA-approved feasibility study of Hemopurifier therapy, which demonstrated safety of our device in health-compromised individuals infected with a viral pathogen as a model to suggest the potential of our device as studied for the broad-spectrum treatment of life-threatening highly glycosylated viruses that are not addressed with an already approved treatment countermeasure against infectious viral pathogens, where a reduction in viral load would be deemed beneficial to improve patient mortality or another clinically-beneficial endpoint. More specifically, the feasibility study was conducted on Hepatitis C virus (HCV)-infected dialysis patients at DaVita MedCenter Dialysis in Houston, Texas. The principal investigator of the study was Dr. Ronald Ralph. We reported that there were no device-related adverse events in the eight enrolled subjects who met the study inclusion-exclusion criteria. We also reported that an average capture of 154 million HCV viruses (in International Units, I.U.) within the Hemopurifier® during 4-hour treatments.

On August 11, 2017, we submitted an Expedited Access Pathway (EAP) program submission to the FDA, which included a request for a "Breakthrough Technology" designation, which was established under the 21<sup>st</sup> Century Cures Act signed into law in 2016. The proposed indications for use includes "The Hemopurifier is a single-use device indicated for the treatment of life-threatening highly glycosylated viruses that are not addressed with an approved treatment," and on September 8, 2017, we received a letter from the FDA informing us that our product and proposed indication for use meets the criteria and has been granted EAP designation. Through this program, we will work collaboratively with FDA to design a data development plan and regulatory pathway intended to achieve FDA-approval of the device, and through this process, we believe the regulatory advancement of our device with the FDA will be accelerated.

Additionally, we are advancing the Hemopurifier® for the broad-spectrum treatment of life-threatening highly glycosylated viruses that are not addressed with an already approved treatment to fulfill the treatment objectives of the 2016 Public Health Emergency Medical Countermeasure Enterprise (PHEMCE), which defines the plan of the U.S. government to protect citizens against bioterror and pandemic threats. Based on preclinical and early-phase or feasibility clinical studies, we believe the Hemopurifier® is a potential broad-spectrum treatment against life-threatening highly glycosylated viruses that are not addressed with an already approved treatment countermeasure. Our goal would be for our device to be procured by the U.S. government for the strategic national stockpile. Currently, we have not begun discussions for inclusion in the strategic national stockpile.

## **Exosome Sciences, Inc. - Diagnostic Candidates**

Through our majority-owned subsidiary Exosome, which is our diagnostic product-oriented business segment, we are developing exosome-based product candidates to diagnose and monitor neurological disorders and cancer. Since it began operations in 2013, Exosome researchers have disclosed that they have isolated brain-specific biomarkers potentially associated with Alzheimer's Disease and Chronic Traumatic Encephalopathy (CTE). Specific to CTE, Exosome is participating in a research collaboration with The Boston University CTE Center to study the correlation of a biomarker known as tauosome with CTE.

## THE OFFERING

Units offered by us in this offering:

4,777,070 units, each consisting of one share of our common stock and one common warrant to purchase .75 of a share of our common stock

Pre-funded units offered by us in this offering:

We are also offering to each purchaser whose purchase of units in this offering would otherwise result in the purchaser, together with its affiliates and certain related parties, beneficially owning more than 4.99% of our outstanding common stock immediately following the consummation of this offering, the opportunity to purchase, if the purchaser so chooses, pre-funded units (each pre-funded unit consisting of one pre-funded warrant to purchase one share of our common stock and one common warrant to purchase .75 of a share of our common stock) in lieu of units that would otherwise result in the purchaser's beneficial ownership exceeding 4.99% of our outstanding common stock (or, at the election of the purchaser, 9.99%). The purchase price of each pre-funded unit will equal the price at which the units are being sold to the public in this offering, minus \$0.01, and the exercise price of each pre-funded warrant included in each pre-funded unit will be \$0.01 per share. This offering also relates to the shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of any pre-funded warrants sold in this offering. For each pre-funded unit we sell, the number of units we are offering will be decreased on a one-for-one basis. Because we will issue a common warrant as part of each unit or pre-funded unit, the number of common warrants sold in this offering will not change as a result of a change in the mix of the units and pre-funded units sold.

Common warrants offered by us in the offering

Common warrants to purchase an aggregate of 3,582,803 shares of our common stock. Each unit and each pre-funded unit includes a common warrant to purchase .75 of a share of our common stock. Each common warrant will have an exercise price of \$ per share, will be immediately separable from the common stock or pre-funded warrant, as the case may be, will be immediately exercisable and will expire on the fifth anniversary of the original issuance date. This prospectus also relates to the offering of the shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the common warrants.

**Common stock outstanding prior to the offering (1)**

8,951,081 shares on September 7, 2017

**Common stock outstanding after the offering (1)**

13,728,151 shares, or 17,310,954 shares if the warrants sold in this offering are exercised in full (assuming a combined public offering price of \$1.57 per share of our common stock and related warrant, the closing bid price of our common stock on NASDAQ on September 7, 2017)

**Use of proceeds**

We intend to use the net proceeds of this offering to continue clinical development of our product candidates and for working capital and other general corporate purposes. See "Use of Proceeds" on page 27 of this prospectus.

**Risk factors**

You should read the “Risk Factors” section of this prospectus for a discussion of factors to consider carefully before deciding to invest in shares of our common stock.

**Market symbol and trading**

Our common stock is listed on the NASDAQ Capital Market under the symbol “AEMD.” There is no established trading market for the warrants, and we do not expect a trading market to develop. We do not intend to list the warrants on any securities exchange or other trading market. Without a trading market, the liquidity of the warrants will be extremely limited. We do not plan on applying to list the pre-funded warrants or the common warrants on NASDAQ, any national securities exchange or any other nationally recognized trading system. Without an active trading market, the liquidity of the pre-funded warrants or common warrants will be limited.

- (1) The number of shares of our common stock outstanding prior to and to be outstanding immediately after this offering, as set forth in the above table, is based on 8,951,081 shares of our common stock outstanding as of September 7, 2017 and excludes as of that date:
- 466,547 shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of outstanding stock options under our stock incentive plans at a weighted average exercise price of \$10.30 per share;
  - 2,464,739 additional shares of common stock reserved for issuance under outstanding warrants with a weighted average exercise price of \$3.48 per share;
  - 507,375 additional shares of common stock reserved for future issuance under our stock incentive plans;
  - 451,786 additional shares of common stock issuable under convertible notes, which includes accrued interest through September 7, 2017;
  - shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants offered hereby; and
  - shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of warrants to be issued to the placement agent in connection with this offering.



## RISK FACTORS

*An investment in our securities involves a high degree of risk. You should carefully consider the risks described below as well as the other information in this prospectus before deciding to invest in or maintain your investment in our company. The risks described below are not intended to be an all-inclusive list of all of the potential risks relating to an investment in our securities. Any of the risk factors described below could significantly and adversely affect our business, prospects, financial condition and results of operations. Additional risks and uncertainties not currently known or that are currently considered to be immaterial may also materially and adversely affect our business. As a result, the trading price or value of our securities could be materially adversely affected and you may lose all or part of your investment.*

### **Risks Relating to Our Financial Position and Need for Additional Capital**

***We will require additional financing beyond this current offering to sustain our operations, and without it, we will not be able to continue operations.***

We raised \$2,759,355 in net proceeds from sales of common stock and \$577,460 in net proceeds from convertible notes under our S-3 registration statement during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017. From April 1, 2017 through September 12, 2017, we entered into sales under our ATM facility of 601,504 shares of common stock for aggregate net proceeds to us of \$1,650,314. However, we will require significant additional financing to conduct the expected additional future clinical trials in the U.S., as well as fund all of our continued research and development activities for the Hemopurifier and other future products through the remainder of the fiscal year ending March 31, 2018 and beyond. In addition, as we expand our activities, our overhead costs to support personnel, laboratory materials and infrastructure will increase. Should the financing we require to sustain our working capital needs be unavailable to us on reasonable terms, if at all, when we require it, we may be unable to support our research and product development activities including our potential clinical trials. The failure to implement our research and product development activities would have a material adverse effect on our ability to commercialize our products and continue in existence. We will need to raise additional funds through debt and/or equity financings in order to complete our ultimate business objectives, including funding working capital to support development and regulatory clearance of our products. We also may choose to raise additional funds in debt or equity financings if they are available to us on reasonable terms to increase our working capital and to strengthen our financial position. Any sales of additional equity or convertible debt securities would result in dilution of the equity interests of our existing stockholders, which could be substantial. Also, new investors may require that we and certain of our stockholders enter into voting arrangements that give them additional voting control or representation on our Board of Directors.

***We have incurred significant losses and expect to continue to incur losses for the foreseeable future.***

We have never been profitable. We have generated revenues during the fiscal years ended March 31, 2017 and March 31, 2016, in the amounts of \$392,073, and \$886,572, respectively, primarily from our contract with the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency, or DARPA, which will not continue into fiscal 2018. However, our revenues have been insufficient to cover our cost of operations. Additionally, our contracts with DARPA have now ended, and we have no assurance when, if at all, we will be able to enter into future government contracts. Future profitability, if any, will require the successful commercialization of our Hemopurifier technology, other products that may emerge from our potential diagnostic products or from additional government contract or grant income. We cannot assure you when or if we will be able to successfully commercialize one or more of our products, or if commercialization is successful, whether we will ever be profitable.

***We have received an explanatory paragraph from our auditors regarding our ability to continue as a going concern.***

Our independent registered public accounting firm noted in their report accompanying our financial statements for our fiscal year ended March 31, 2017 that our net loss and negative cash flows from operating activities during our fiscal year ended March 31, 2017 and our accumulated deficit as of March 31, 2017 raised substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern. Note 1 to our financial statements for the year ended March 31, 2017 describes management's plans to address these matters. We cannot assure you that our business plans will be successful in addressing these issues. This explanatory paragraph about our ability to continue as a going concern could affect our ability to obtain additional financing at favorable terms, if at all, as it may cause investors to lose faith in our long-term prospects. If we cannot successfully continue as a going concern, our shareholders may lose their entire investment.

## Risks Related to Our Business Operations

### *We face intense competition in the medical device industry.*

We compete with numerous U.S. and foreign companies in the medical device industry, and many of our competitors have greater financial, personnel, operational and research and development resources than we do. Our competitors are developing vaccine candidates and/or antiviral drugs, which could compete with the Hemopurifier medical device candidates we are developing. Our commercial opportunities will be reduced or eliminated if our competitors develop and market products for any of the diseases we target that:

- are more effective;
- have fewer or less severe adverse side effects;
- are better tolerated;
- are more adaptable to various modes of dosing;
- are easier to administer; or
- are less expensive than the products or product candidates we are developing.

Even if we are successful in developing the Hemopurifier and potential diagnostic products, and obtain FDA and other regulatory approvals necessary for commercializing them, our products may not compete effectively with other successful products. Researchers are continually learning more about diseases, which may lead to new technologies for treatment. Our competitors may succeed in developing and marketing products that are either more effective than those that we may develop, alone or with our collaborators, or that are marketed before any products we develop are marketed. Our competitors include fully integrated pharmaceutical companies and biotechnology companies as well as universities and public and private research institutions. Many of the organizations competing with us have substantially greater capital resources, larger research and development staffs and facilities, greater experience in product development and in obtaining regulatory approvals, and greater marketing capabilities than we do. If our competitors develop more effective pharmaceutical treatments for infectious disease or cancer, or bring those treatments to market before we can commercialize the Hemopurifier for such uses, we may be unable to obtain any market traction for our products, or the diseases we seek to treat may be substantially addressed by competing treatments. If we are unable to successfully compete against larger companies in the pharmaceutical industry, we may never generate significant revenue or be profitable.

### *We have limited experience in identifying and working with large-scale contracts with medical device manufacturers; manufacture of our devices must comply with good manufacturing practices in the U.S.*

To achieve the levels of production necessary to commercialize our Hemopurifier and other future products, we will need to secure large-scale manufacturing agreements with contract manufacturers which comply with good manufacturing practice standards and other standards prescribed by various federal, state and local regulatory agencies in the U.S. and any other country of use. We have no experience coordinating and overseeing the manufacture of medical device products on a large-scale. We cannot assure you that manufacturing and control problems will not arise as we attempt to commercialize our products, if they are ever approved for use or that such manufacturing can be completed in a timely manner or at a commercially reasonable cost. In addition, we cannot assure you that we will be able to adequately finance the manufacture and distribution of our products on terms acceptable to us, if at all. If we cannot successfully oversee and finance the manufacture of our products if and when they have obtained regulatory clearances, we may never generate revenue from product sales and we may never be profitable.

***Our Aethlon Hemopurifier technology may become obsolete.***

Our Aethlon Hemopurifier products may be made unmarketable by new scientific or technological developments where new treatment modalities are introduced that are more efficacious and/or more economical than our products. The homeland security industry is growing rapidly with many competitors that are trying to develop products or vaccines to protect against infectious disease. Any one of our competitors could develop a more effective product which would render our technology obsolete. Further, our ability to achieve significant and sustained penetration of our key target markets will depend upon our success in developing or acquiring technologies developed by other companies, either independently, through joint ventures or through acquisitions. If we fail to develop or acquire, and manufacture and sell, products that satisfy our customers' demands, or we fail to respond effectively to new product announcements by our competitors by quickly introducing competitive products, then market acceptance of our products could be reduced and our business could be adversely affected. We cannot assure you that our products will remain competitive with products based on new technologies.

***Acceptance into FDA's EAP program may not result in FDA-approval of the Hemopurifier***

We believe that acceptance of the Hemopurifier by the FDA into its EAP program is a positive development towards eventual FDA-approval to bring the device to market in the U.S. However, there is no guarantee the agency will eventually approve the Hemopurifier for marketing in the U.S. Indeed, future FDA-approval of the Hemopurifier will be predicated upon the quality of the pre-clinical and clinical data generated for the device as well as on any additional criteria established under the EAP program. Thus, should data developed on the Hemopurifier not be sufficient to support FDA-approval of the device, the prospects of achieving FDA-approval could be reduced and our business could be adversely affected.

***The clinical benefit of reducing viral load has not yet been established.***

The Aethlon Hemopurifier is being studied for the removal of viral pathogens from the circulatory system of infected individuals. It has not yet been established, however, whether such reduction in viral load will result in an improvement in patient mortality or other clinically-beneficial endpoints. Thus, the full potential of the device has not yet been determined. Should future studies demonstrate that use of the Hemopurifier to reduce viral load does not result in an improvement in patient outcome, market acceptance of the device could be reduced and our business could be adversely affected. We cannot assure you that our products will remain competitive with products based on new technologies.

***Our use of hazardous materials, chemicals and viruses exposes us to potential liabilities for which we may not have adequate insurance.***

Our research and development involves the controlled use of hazardous materials, chemicals and viruses. The primary hazardous materials include chemicals needed to construct the Hemopurifier cartridges and the infected plasma samples used in preclinical testing of the Hemopurifier. All other chemicals are fully inventoried and reported to the appropriate authorities, such as the fire department, who inspect the facility on a regular basis. We are subject to federal, state, local, and foreign laws governing the use, manufacture, storage, handling, and disposal of such materials. Although we believe that our safety procedures for the use, manufacture, storage, handling, and disposal of such materials comply with the standards prescribed by federal, state, local and foreign regulations, we cannot completely eliminate the risk of accidental contamination or injury from these materials. We have had no incidents or problems involving hazardous chemicals or biological samples. In the event of such an accident, we could be held liable for significant damages or fines.

We currently carry a limited amount of insurance to protect us from damages arising from hazardous materials. Our product liability policy has a \$3,000,000 limit of liability that would cover certain releases of hazardous substances away from our facilities. For our facilities, our property policy provides \$25,000 in coverage for contaminant clean-up or removal and \$50,000 in coverage for damages to the premises resulting from contamination. Should we violate any regulations concerning the handling or use of hazardous materials, or should any injuries or death result from our use or handling of hazardous materials, we could be the subject of substantial lawsuits by governmental agencies or individuals. We may not have adequate insurance to cover all or any of such claims, if any. If we were responsible to pay significant damages for violations or injuries, if any, we might be forced to cease operations since such payments could deplete all of our available resources.

Our business exposes us to potential product liability and other liability risks that are inherent in the testing, manufacturing and marketing of medical devices. We cannot be sure that claims will not be asserted against us. A successful liability claim or series of claims brought against us could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

We cannot give assurances that we will be able to continue to obtain or maintain adequate product liability insurance on acceptable terms, if at all, or that such insurance will provide adequate coverage against potential liabilities. Claims or losses in excess of any product liability insurance coverage that we may obtain could have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

Our Hemopurifier products may be used in connection with medical procedures in which it is important that those products function with precision and accuracy. If our products do not function as designed, or are designed improperly, we may be forced by regulatory agencies to withdraw such products from the market. In addition, if medical personnel or their patients suffer injury as a result of any failure of our products to function as designed, or our products are designed inappropriately, we may be subject to lawsuits seeking significant compensatory and punitive damages. The risk of product liability claims, product recalls and associated adverse publicity is inherent in the testing, manufacturing, marketing and sale of medical products. We have recently obtained general clinical trial liability insurance coverage. We cannot give assurances that our insurance coverage will be adequate or available. We may not be able to secure product liability insurance coverage on acceptable terms or at reasonable costs when needed. Any product recall or lawsuit seeking significant monetary damages may have a material effect on our business and financial condition. Any liability for mandatory damages could exceed the amount of our coverage. Moreover, a product recall could generate substantial negative publicity about our products and business and inhibit or prevent commercialization of other future product candidates.

***Our success is dependent in part on a few key executive officers.***

Our success depends to a critical extent on the continued services of our Chief Executive Officer, James A. Joyce, and our President, Rodney S. Kenley. If one or both of these key executive officers were to leave us, we would be forced to expend significant time and money in the pursuit of a replacement, which would result in both a delay in the implementation of our business plan and the diversion of limited working capital. The unique knowledge and expertise of these individuals would be difficult to replace within the biotechnology field. We can give you no assurances that we can find satisfactory replacements for these key executive officers at all, or on terms that are not unduly expensive or burdensome to us. Although Mr. Joyce has signed an employment agreement providing for his continued service to us, that agreement will not preclude him from leaving us should we be unable to compete with offers for employment he may receive from other companies. We do not currently carry key man life insurance policies on any of our key executive officers which would assist us in recouping our costs in the event of the loss of those officers. If either of our key officers were to leave us, it could make it impossible, if not cause substantial delays and costs, to implement our long-term business objectives and growth.

***Our inability to attract and retain qualified personnel could impede our ability to achieve our business objectives.***

We have six full-time employees consisting of our Chief Executive Officer, our President, our Chief Financial Officer, two research scientists and an executive assistant. We utilize, whenever appropriate, consultants in order to conserve cash and resources. Although we believe that these employees and consultants will be able to handle most of our additional administrative, research and development and business development in the near term, we will nevertheless be required over the longer-term to hire highly skilled managerial, scientific and administrative personnel to fully implement our business plan and growth strategies, including to mitigate the material weakness in our internal control over financial reporting described elsewhere in this prospectus. Due to the specialized scientific nature of our business, we are highly dependent upon our ability to attract and retain qualified scientific, technical and managerial personnel. Competition for these individuals, especially in San Diego, California, where many biotechnology companies are located, is intense and we may not be able to attract, assimilate or retain additional highly qualified personnel in the future. We cannot assure you that we will be able to engage the services of such qualified personnel at competitive prices or at all, particularly given the risks of employment attributable to our limited financial resources and lack of an established track record. Also, if we are required to attract personnel from other parts of the U.S. or abroad, we may have significant difficulty doing so due to the high cost of living in the Southern California area and due to the costs incurred with transferring personnel to the area. If we cannot attract and retain qualified staff and executives, we will be unable to develop our products and achieve regulatory clearance, and our business could fail.

***We plan to grow rapidly which will strain our resources; our inability to manage our growth could delay or derail implementation of our business objectives.***

We will need to significantly expand our operations to implement our longer-term business plan and growth strategies if any of our products receive FDA approval. We will also be required to manage multiple relationships with various strategic partners, technology licensors, customers, manufacturers and suppliers, consultants and other third parties. This expansion and these expanded relationships will require us to significantly improve or replace our existing managerial, operational and financial systems, procedures and controls; to improve the coordination between our various corporate functions; and to manage, train, motivate and maintain a growing employee base. The time and costs to effectuate these steps may place a significant strain on our management personnel, systems and resources, particularly given the limited amount of financial resources and skilled employees that may be available at the time. We cannot assure you that we will institute, in a timely manner or at all, the improvements to our managerial, operational and financial systems, procedures and controls necessary to support our anticipated increased levels of operations and to coordinate our various corporate functions, or that we will be able to properly manage, train, motivate and retain our anticipated increased employee base. If we cannot manage our growth initiatives, we will be unable to commercialize our products on a large-scale in a timely manner, if at all, and our business could fail.

***As a public company with limited financial resources undertaking the launch of new medical technologies, we may have difficulty attracting and retaining executive management and directors.***

The directors and management of publicly traded corporations are increasingly concerned with the extent of their personal exposure to lawsuits and stockholder claims, as well as governmental and creditor claims which may be made against them, particularly in view of recent changes in securities laws imposing additional duties, obligations and liabilities on management and directors. Due to these perceived risks, directors and management are also becoming increasingly concerned with the availability of directors' and officers' liability insurance to pay on a timely basis the costs incurred in defending such claims. While we currently carry directors' and officers' liability insurance, such insurance is expensive and difficult to obtain. If we are unable to continue or provide directors' and officers' liability insurance at affordable rates or at all, it may become increasingly more difficult to attract and retain qualified outside directors to serve on our Board of Directors. We may lose potential independent board members and management candidates to other companies in the biotechnology field that have greater directors' and officers' liability insurance to insure them from liability or to biotechnology companies that have revenues or have received greater funding to date which can offer greater compensation packages. The fees of directors are also rising in response to their increased duties, obligations and liabilities. In addition, our products could potentially be harmful to users, and we are exposed to claims of product liability including for injury or death. We have limited insurance and may not be able to afford robust coverage even as our products are introduced into the market. As a company with limited resources and potential exposures to management, we will have a more difficult time attracting and retaining management and outside independent directors than a more established public or private company due to these enhanced duties, obligations and potential liabilities.

***If we fail to comply with extensive regulations of U.S. and foreign regulatory agencies, the commercialization of our products could be delayed or prevented entirely.***

Our Hemopurifier products are subject to extensive government regulations related to development, testing, manufacturing and commercialization in the U.S. and other countries. The determination of when and whether a product is ready for large-scale purchase and potential use will be made by the U.S. Government through consultation with a number of governmental agencies, including the FDA, the National Institutes of Health, the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, and the Department of Homeland Security. Our product candidates are in the pre-clinical and early-stage or feasibility clinical stages of development and have not received required regulatory approval from the FDA, or any foreign regulatory agencies, to be commercially marketed and sold. The process of obtaining and complying with FDA and other governmental regulatory approvals and regulations in the U.S. and in foreign countries is costly, time consuming, uncertain, and subject to unanticipated delays. Obtaining such regulatory approvals, if any, can take several years. Despite the time and expense exerted, regulatory approval is never guaranteed. We also are subject to the following risks and obligations, among others:

- the FDA may refuse to approve an application if they believe that applicable regulatory criteria are not satisfied;
- the FDA may require additional testing for safety and effectiveness;
- the FDA may interpret data from pre-clinical testing and clinical trials in different ways than we interpret them;
- if regulatory approval of a product is granted, the approval may be limited to specific indications or limited with respect to its distribution; and
- the FDA may change their approval policies and/or adopt new regulations.

Failure to comply with these or other regulatory requirements of the FDA may subject us to administrative or judicially imposed sanctions, including:

- warning letters;
- civil penalties;
- criminal penalties;
- injunctions;
- product seizure or detention;
- product recalls; and
- total or partial suspension of productions.

***Delays in successfully completing our planned clinical trials could jeopardize our ability to obtain regulatory approval.***

Our business prospects will depend on our ability to complete studies, clinical trials, obtain satisfactory results, obtain required regulatory approvals and successfully commercialize our Hemopurifier product candidates. Commencement or completion of our clinical trials, announcement of results of the trials and our ability to obtain regulatory approvals could be delayed for a variety of reasons, including:

- serious adverse events related to our medical device candidates;
- unsatisfactory results of any clinical trial;
- the failure of our principal third-party investigators to perform our clinical trials on our anticipated schedules; and
- different interpretations of our pre-clinical and clinical data, which could initially lead to inconclusive results.

Our development costs will increase if we have material delays in any clinical trial or if we need to perform more or larger clinical trials than planned. If the delays are significant, or if any of our product candidates do not prove to be safe or effective or do not receive required regulatory approvals, our financial results and the commercial prospects for our product candidates will be harmed. Furthermore, our inability to complete our clinical trials in a timely manner could jeopardize our ability to obtain regulatory approval.

***If we or our suppliers fail to comply with ongoing FDA or foreign regulatory authority requirements, or if we experience unanticipated problems with our products, these products could be subject to restrictions or withdrawal from the market.***

Any product for which we obtain clearance or approval, and the manufacturing processes, reporting requirements, post-approval clinical data and promotional activities for such product, will be subject to continued regulatory review, oversight and periodic inspections by the FDA and other domestic and foreign regulatory bodies. In particular, we and our third-party suppliers may be required to comply with the FDA's Quality System Regulation, or QSR. These FDA regulations cover the methods and documentation of the design, testing, production, control, quality assurance, labeling, packaging, sterilization, storage and shipping of our products. Compliance with applicable regulatory requirements is subject to continual review and is monitored rigorously through periodic inspections by the FDA. If we, or our manufacturers, fail to adhere to QSR requirements in the U.S., this could delay production of our products and lead to fines, difficulties in obtaining regulatory clearances, recalls, enforcement actions, including injunctive relief or consent decrees, or other consequences, which could, in turn, have a material adverse effect on our financial condition or results of operations.

In addition, the FDA assesses compliance with the QSR through periodic announced and unannounced inspections of manufacturing and other facilities. The failure by us or one of our suppliers to comply with applicable statutes and regulations administered by the FDA, or the failure to timely and adequately respond to any adverse inspectional observations or product safety issues, could result in any of the following enforcement actions:

- untitled letters, warning letters, fines, injunctions, consent decrees and civil penalties;
- unanticipated expenditures to address or defend such actions;
- customer notifications or repair, replacement, refunds, recall, detention or seizure of our products;
- operating restrictions or partial suspension or total shutdown of production;
- refusing or delaying our requests for 510(k) clearance or premarket approval of new products or modified products;
- withdrawing 510(k) clearances or premarket approvals that have already been granted;
- refusal to grant export approval for our products; or
- criminal prosecution.

Any of these sanctions could have a material adverse effect on our reputation, business, results of operations and financial condition. Furthermore, our key component suppliers may not currently be or may not continue to be in compliance with all applicable regulatory requirements, which could result in our failure to produce our products on a timely basis and in the required quantities, if at all.

***If our products, or malfunction of our products, cause or contribute to a death or a serious injury, we will be subject to medical device reporting regulations, which can result in voluntary corrective actions or agency enforcement actions.***

Under the FDA medical device reporting regulations, medical device manufacturers are required to report to the FDA information that a device has or may have caused or contributed to a death or serious injury or has malfunctioned in a way that would likely cause or contribute to death or serious injury if the malfunction of the device or one of our similar devices were to recur. If we fail to report these events to the FDA within the required timeframes, or at all, FDA could take enforcement action against us. Any such adverse event involving our products also could result in future voluntary corrective actions, such as recalls or customer notifications, or agency action, such as inspection or enforcement action. Any corrective action, whether voluntary or involuntary, as well as defending ourselves in a lawsuit, will require the dedication of our time and capital, distract management from operating our business, and may harm our reputation and financial results.

***Our products may in the future be subject to product recalls. A recall of our products, either voluntarily or at the direction of the FDA or another governmental authority, including a third-country authority, or the discovery of serious safety issues with our products, could have a significant adverse impact on us.***

The FDA and similar foreign governmental authorities have the authority to require the recall of commercialized products in the event of material deficiencies or defects in design or manufacture. In this case, the FDA, the authority to require a recall must be based on an FDA finding that there is reasonable probability that the device would cause serious injury or death. In addition, foreign governmental bodies have the authority to require the recall of our products in the event of material deficiencies or defects in design or manufacture. Manufacturers may, under their own initiative, recall a product if any material deficiency in a device is found. The FDA requires that certain classifications of recalls be reported to the FDA within 10 working days after the recall is initiated. A government-mandated or voluntary recall by us or one of our international distributors could occur as a result of an unacceptable risk to health, component failures, malfunctions, manufacturing errors, design or labeling defects or other deficiencies and issues. Recalls of any of our products would divert managerial and financial resources and have an adverse effect on our reputation, results of operations and financial condition, which could impair our ability to produce our products in a cost-effective and timely manner in order to meet our customers' demands. We may also be subject to liability claims, be required to bear other costs, or take other actions that may have a negative impact on our future sales and our ability to generate profits. Companies are required to maintain certain records of recalls, even if they are not reportable to the FDA or another third-country competent authority. We may initiate voluntary recalls involving our products in the future that we determine do not require notification of the FDA or another third-country competent authority. If the FDA disagrees with our determinations, they could require us to report those actions as recalls. A future recall announcement could harm our reputation with customers and negatively affect our sales. In addition, the FDA could take enforcement action for failing to report the recalls when they were.

We are also required to follow detailed recordkeeping requirements for all firm-initiated medical device corrections and removals. In addition, in December of 2012, the FDA issued a draft guidance intended to assist the FDA and industry in distinguishing medical device recalls from product enhancements. Per the guidance, if any change or group of changes to a device addresses a violation of the Federal Food, Drug, and Cosmetic Act, that change would generally constitute a medical device recall and require submission of a recall report to the FDA.

***We outsource almost all of our operational and development activities, and if any party to which we have outsourced certain essential functions fails to perform its obligations under agreements with us, the development and commercialization of our lead product candidate and any future product candidates that we may develop could be delayed or terminated.***

We generally rely on third-party consultants or other vendors to manage and implement the day-to-day conduct of our operations, including conducting clinical trials, if such are approved by the FDA, and manufacturing our current product candidates and any future product candidates that we may develop. Accordingly, we are and will continue to be dependent on the timeliness and effectiveness of their efforts. Our dependence on third parties includes key suppliers and third-party service providers supporting the development, manufacture and regulatory approval of our products as well as support for our information technology systems and other infrastructure. While our management team oversees these vendors, failure of any of these third parties to meet their contractual, regulatory and other obligations or the development of factors that materially disrupt the performance of these third parties could have a material adverse effect on our business. For example, all of the key oversight responsibilities for the development and manufacture of our lead product candidate are conducted by our management team but all activities are the responsibility of third-party vendors.

If a clinical research organization that we utilize is unable to allocate sufficient qualified personnel to our studies in a timely manner or if the work performed by it does not fully satisfy the requirements of the FDA or other regulatory agencies, we may encounter substantial delays and increased costs in completing our development efforts. Any manufacturer that we select may encounter difficulties in the manufacture of new products in commercial quantities, including problems involving product yields, product stability or shelf life, quality control, adequacy of control procedures and policies, compliance with FDA regulations and the need for further FDA approval of any new manufacturing processes and facilities. If any of these occur, the development and commercialization of our product candidates could be delayed, curtailed or terminated because we may not have sufficient financial resources or capabilities to continue such development and commercialization on our own. If we rely on only one source for the manufacture of the clinical or commercial supplies of any of our product candidates or products, any production problems or supply constraints with that manufacturer could adversely impact the development or commercialization of that product candidate or product.

***If we or our contractors or service providers fail to comply with regulatory laws and regulations, we or they could be subject to regulatory actions, which could affect our ability to develop, market and sell our product candidates and any other or future product candidates that we may develop and may harm our reputation.***

If we or our manufacturers or other third-party contractors fail to comply with applicable federal, state or foreign laws or regulations, we could be subject to regulatory actions, which could affect our ability to develop, market and sell our current product candidates or any future product candidates under development successfully and could harm our reputation and lead to reduced or nonacceptance of our proposed product candidates by the market. Even technical recommendations or evidence by the FDA through letters, site visits, and overall recommendations to academia or biotechnology companies may make the manufacturing of a clinical product extremely labor intensive or expensive, making the product candidate no longer viable to manufacture in a cost-efficient manner. The mode of administration may make the product candidate not commercially viable. The required testing of the product candidate may make that candidate no longer commercially viable. The conduct of clinical trials may be critiqued by the FDA, or a clinical trial site's Institutional Review Board or Institutional Biosafety Committee, which may delay or make impossible clinical testing of a product candidate. The Institutional Review Board for a clinical trial may stop a trial or deem a product candidate unsafe to continue testing. This may have a material adverse effect on the value of the product candidate and our business prospects.



***We have not received, and may never receive, approval from the FDA to market a medical device in the United States.***

Before a new medical device can be marketed in the U.S., it must first receive either premarket approval, or a PMA, or 510(k) clearance from the FDA, unless an exemption exists. A PMA submission, which is a higher standard than a 501(k) clearance, is used to demonstrate to the FDA that a new or modified device is safe and effective. The 510(k) is used to demonstrate that a device is “substantially equivalent” to a predicate device (one that has been cleared by the FDA). We expect that any product we seek regulatory approval for will require a PMA. The FDA approval process involves, among other things, successfully completing clinical trials and filing for and obtaining a PMA. The PMA process requires us to prove the safety and effectiveness of our products to the FDA’s satisfaction. This process, which includes preclinical studies and clinical trials, can take many years and requires the expenditure of substantial resources and may include post-marketing surveillance to establish the safety and efficacy of the product. Notwithstanding the effort and expense incurred, the process may never result in the FDA granting a PMA. Data obtained from preclinical studies and clinical trials are subject to varying interpretations that could delay, limit or prevent regulatory approval. Delays or rejections may also be encountered based upon changes in governmental policies for medical devices during the period of product development. The FDA can delay, limit or deny approval of a PMA application for many reasons, including:

- our inability to demonstrate safety or effectiveness to the FDA’s satisfaction;
- insufficient data from our preclinical studies and clinical trials to support approval;
- failure of the facilities of our third-party manufacturer or suppliers to meet applicable requirements;
- inadequate compliance with preclinical, clinical or other regulations;
- our failure to meet the FDA’s statistical requirements for approval; and
- changes in the FDA’s approval policies, or the adoption of new regulations that require additional data or additional clinical studies.

Modifications to products that are approved through a PMA application generally need FDA approval. Similarly, some modifications made to products cleared through a 510(k) may require a new 510(k). The FDA’s 510(k) clearance process usually takes from three to 12 months, but may last longer. The process of obtaining a PMA is much costlier and uncertain than the 510(k) clearance process and generally takes from one to three years, or even longer, from the time the application is submitted to the FDA until an approval is obtained. Any of our products considered to be a class III device, which are considered to pose the greatest risk and the approval of which is governed by the strictest guidelines, will require the submission and approval of a PMA in order for us to market it in the U.S. We also may design new products in the future that could require the clearance of a 510(k).

Although FDA has permitted several early-stage or feasibility clinical trials to proceed in the U.S. under an investigational device exemption (IDE), we cannot assure you that FDA will not place an IDE on clinical hold, or that any study will be successful, or that the FDA PMA approval will eventually be obtained and not withdrawn. Even if we obtain approval, the FDA or other regulatory authorities may require expensive or burdensome post-market testing or controls. Any delay in, or failure to receive or maintain, clearance or approval for our future products could prevent us from generating revenue from these products or achieving profitability. Additionally, the FDA and other regulatory authorities have broad enforcement powers. Regulatory enforcement or inquiries, or other increased scrutiny on us, could dissuade some physicians from using our products and adversely affect our reputation and the perceived safety and efficacy of our products.

***The approval requirements for medical products used to fight bioterrorism are still evolving, and we cannot be certain any products we develop for such uses would meet these requirements.***

We are advancing product candidates under governmental policies that regulate the development and commercialization of medical treatment countermeasures against certain bioterror and pandemic threats. While we intend to pursue FDA market approval or clearance to treat infectious bioterror and pandemic threats, it is often not feasible to conduct human studies against these deadly high-threat pathogens. Thus, we may not be able to demonstrate the effectiveness of our treatment countermeasures through controlled human efficacy studies. Additionally, a change in government policies could impair our ability to obtain regulatory approval, and there is no assurance that the FDA will approve any of our product candidates.

***The Hemopurifier was used to treat one patient suffering from Ebola, and we have received a supplement to our investigational device exemption to establish protocols to treat Ebola patients in the U.S.; however, you should not construe these events as demonstrating that the device is effective in treating Ebola.***

In October 2014, physicians at the Frankfurt University Hospital in Frankfurt, Germany administered Hemopurifier therapy in a 6.5-hour treatment session to a patient infected with Ebola. This treatment was made on an emergency basis. The patient was administered Hemopurifier therapy through special approval from The Federal Institute for Drugs and Medical Devices (Bundesinstitut für Arzneimittel und Medizinprodukte, BfArM), an independent federal higher authority within the portfolio of the Federal Ministry of Health of Germany. While we believe the results of the treatment of the Ebola patient in Germany to be positive with respect to the usage of the Hemopurifier to combat Ebola, no medical organization or regulatory organization, inside or outside the U.S., has cleared the use of the device for Ebola treatment on a commercial basis.

In addition, although the FDA permitted a supplement to our investigational device exemption to establish a protocol for the treatment of Ebola patients in the U.S., this approval is very limited and the results of such protocol and potential treatments, if any, cannot be predicted. The usefulness of the Hemopurifier in treating Ebola is still unproven in any clinical or regulatory process in the U.S. or elsewhere. Even if we enroll patients in the Ebola protocol, the results of such treatments may not demonstrate the safety and efficacy of the device, may be equivocal or may otherwise not be sufficient to obtain approval of the Hemopurifier for any uses associated with Ebola. In addition, the approval of the supplement to our investigational device exemption does not in any way ensure clearance or approval of the Hemopurifier device for any purpose. In April 2015, we submitted a Humanitarian Use Device (HUD) submission to the FDA to support market clearance of the Hemopurifier as a treatment for Ebola virus. FDA denied the submission, because our product includes a biological product (lectin) that has been approved in another device with a different indication. If we resolve the biological issue, and the application is designated by the FDA as an HUD, we then may submit a Humanitarian Device Exemption marketing application to the Center for Devices and Radiological Health for marketing review. We cannot assure you that the Hemopurifier will be proven to be useful in the treatment of Ebola or that it will ever be approved by U.S. or foreign regulatory agencies for such use, or if approved, successfully commercialized by us for such use. We may never commercialize the Hemopurifier specifically for use in treating Ebola.

***The results of our clinical trials may not support our product candidate claims or may result in the discovery of adverse side effects.***

Any research and development, pre-clinical testing and clinical trial activities involving any products that we are or may develop will be subject to extensive regulation and review by numerous governmental authorities both in the U.S. and abroad. In the future, we may conduct clinical trials to support approval of new products. Clinical studies must be conducted in compliance with FDA regulations or the FDA may take enforcement action. The data collected from these clinical studies may ultimately be used to support market clearance for these products. Even if our clinical trials are completed as planned, we cannot be certain that their results will support our product candidate claims or that the FDA will agree with our conclusions regarding them. Success in pre-clinical studies and early clinical trials does not ensure that later clinical trials will be successful, and we cannot be sure that the later trials will replicate the results of prior trials and pre-clinical studies. The clinical trial process may fail to demonstrate that our product candidates are safe and effective for the proposed indicated uses, which could cause us to abandon a product candidate and may delay development of others. Any delay or termination of our clinical trials will delay the filing of our product submissions and, ultimately, our ability to commercialize our product candidates and generate revenues. It is also possible that patients enrolled in clinical trials will experience adverse side effects that are not currently part of the product candidate's profile.

***U.S. legislative or FDA regulatory reforms may make it more difficult and costly for us to obtain regulatory approval of our product candidates and to manufacture, market and distribute our products after approval is obtained.***

From time to time, legislation is drafted and introduced in Congress that could significantly change the statutory provisions governing the regulatory approval, manufacture and marketing of regulated products or the reimbursement thereof. In addition, FDA regulations and guidance are often revised or reinterpreted by the FDA in ways that may significantly affect our business and our products. Any new regulations or revisions or reinterpretations of existing regulations may impose additional costs or lengthen review times of future products. In addition, FDA regulations and guidance are often revised or reinterpreted by the agency in ways that may significantly affect our business and our products. It is impossible to predict whether legislative changes will be enacted or FDA regulations, guidance or interpretations changed, and what the impact of such changes, if any, may be.

***Should our products be approved for commercialization, lack of third-party coverage and reimbursement for our devices could delay or limit their adoption.***

In both the U.S. and international markets, the use of medical devices is dependent in part on the availability of reimbursement from third-party payors, such as government and private insurance plans. Healthcare providers that use medical devices generally rely on third-party payors to pay for all or part of the costs and fees associated with the medical procedures being performed or to compensate them for their patient care services. Should our products be approved for commercialization by the FDA, we cannot assure you that our future products will be considered cost-effective, that reimbursement will be available in other sites or in other countries, including the U.S., if approved, or that reimbursement will be sufficient to allow sales of our future products on a profitable basis. The coverage decisions of third-party payors will be significantly influenced by the assessment of our future products by health technology assessment bodies. Such assessments are outside our control and we cannot assure you that such evaluations will be conducted or that they will have a favorable outcome.

If approved for use in the U.S., we expect that any products that we develop will be purchased primarily by medical institutions, which will in turn bill various third-party payors for the health care services provided to patients at their facility. Payors may include the Centers for Medicare & Medicaid Services, or CMS, which administers the Medicare program and works in partnership with state governments to administer Medicaid, other government programs and private insurance plans. The process involved in applying for coverage and incremental reimbursement from CMS is lengthy and expensive. Further, Medicare coverage is based on our ability to demonstrate the treatment is “reasonable and necessary” for Medicare beneficiaries. Even if products utilizing our Aethlon Hemopurifier technology receive FDA and other regulatory clearance or approval, they may not be granted coverage and reimbursement by any payor, including by CMS. For some governmental programs, such as Medicaid, coverage and reimbursement differ from state to state and some state Medicaid programs may not pay adequate amounts for the procedure necessary to utilize products utilizing our technology system, or any payment at all. Moreover, many private payors use coverage decisions and payment amounts determined by CMS as guidelines in setting their coverage and reimbursement policies and amounts. If CMS or other agencies limit coverage or decrease or limit reimbursement payments for doctors and hospitals, this may affect coverage and reimbursement determinations by many private payors.

***Should our products be approved for commercialization, adverse changes in reimbursement policies and procedures by payors may impact our ability to market and sell our products.***

Healthcare costs have risen significantly over the past decade, and there have been and continue to be proposals by legislators, regulators and third-party payors to decrease costs. Third-party payors are increasingly challenging the prices charged for medical products and services and instituting cost containment measures to control or significantly influence the purchase of medical products and services.

For example, in the U.S., the Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act, as amended by the Health Care and Education Reconciliation Act of 2010, or collectively, PPACA, among other things, reduced and/or limited Medicare reimbursement to certain providers. The Budget Control Act of 2011, as amended by subsequent legislation, further reduces Medicare’s payments to providers by 2 percent through fiscal year 2024. These reductions may reduce providers’ revenues or profits, which could affect their ability to purchase new technologies. Furthermore, the healthcare industry in the U.S. has experienced a trend toward cost containment as government and private insurers seek to control healthcare costs by imposing lower payment rates and negotiating reduced contract rates with service providers. Legislation could be adopted in the future that limits payments for our products from governmental payors. In addition, commercial payors such as insurance companies, could adopt similar policies that limit reimbursement for medical device manufacturers’ products. Therefore, we cannot be certain that our product or the procedures or patient care performed using our product will be reimbursed at a cost-effective level. We face similar risks relating to adverse changes in reimbursement procedures and policies in other countries where we may market our products. Reimbursement and healthcare payment systems vary significantly among international markets. Our inability to obtain international reimbursement approval, or any adverse changes in the reimbursement policies of foreign payors, could negatively affect our ability to sell our products and have a material adverse effect on our business and financial condition.

***Should our products be approved for commercialization, our financial performance may be adversely affected by medical device tax provisions in the healthcare reform laws.***

PPACA currently imposes, among other things, an excise tax of 2.3% on any entity that manufactures or imports medical devices offered for sale in the U.S. Under these provisions, the Congressional Research Service predicts that the total cost to the medical device industry may be up to \$20 billion over the next decade. The Internal Revenue Service issued final regulations implementing the tax in December 2012, which requires, among other things, bi-monthly payments and quarterly reporting.

The Consolidated Appropriations Act, 2016 (Pub. L. 114-113), signed into law on Dec. 18, 2015, includes a two-year moratorium on the medical device excise tax imposed by Internal Revenue Code section 4191. Thus, the medical device excise tax does not apply to the sale of a taxable medical device by the manufacturer, producer, or importer of the device during the period beginning on January 1, 2016, and ending on December 31, 2017.

If we are successful in marketing any products, if this regulation is not repealed, we will be subject to this or any future excise tax on our sales of certain medical devices in the U.S. We anticipate that primarily all of our sales, once commenced, of medical devices in the U.S. will be subject to this 2.3% excise tax following December 31, 2017.

## Risks Related to Our Intellectual Property and Related Litigation

***We rely upon licenses and patent rights from third parties which are subject to termination or expiration.***

We rely upon third-party licenses and ownership rights assigned from third parties for the development of specific uses for our Hemopurifier devices. For example, we are researching, developing and testing cancer-related applications for our devices under patents assigned from the London Health Science Center Research, Inc. Should any of our licenses be prematurely terminated for any reason, or if the patents and intellectual property assigned to us or owned by such entities that we have licensed should be challenged or defeated by third parties, our research efforts could be materially and adversely affected. We cannot assure you that any of our licenses or patents assigned to us will continue in force for as long as we require for our research, development and testing of cancer treatments. We cannot assure you that, should our licenses terminate, should the underlying patents and intellectual property be challenged or defeated, or should patents and intellectual property assigned to us be challenged or defeated, suitable replacements can be obtained or developed on terms acceptable to us, if at all. There is also the related risk that we may not be able to make the required payments under any patent license or assignment agreement, in which case we may lose to ability to use one or more of the licensed or assigned patents.

***We could become subject to intellectual property litigation that could be costly, result in the diversion of management's time and efforts, require us to pay damages, prevent us from selling our commercially available products and/or reduce the margins we may realize from our products.***

The medical devices industry is characterized by extensive litigation and administrative proceedings over patent and other intellectual property rights. Whether a product infringes a patent involves complex legal and factual issues, and the determination is often uncertain. There may be existing patents of which we are unaware that our products under development may inadvertently infringe. The likelihood that patent infringement claims may be brought against us increases as the number of participants in the infectious market increases and as we achieve more visibility in the market place and introduce products to market.

Any infringement claim against us, even if without merit, may cause us to incur substantial costs, and would place a significant strain on our financial resources, divert the attention of management from our core business, and harm our reputation. In some cases, litigation may be threatened or brought by a patent holding company or other adverse patent owner who has no relevant product revenues and against whom our patents may provide little or no deterrence. If we were found to infringe any patents, we could be required to pay substantial damages, including triple damages if an infringement is found to be willful. We also could be required to pay royalties and could be prevented from selling our products unless we obtain a license or are able to redesign our products to avoid infringement. We may not be able to obtain a license enabling us to sell our products on reasonable terms, or at all, and we cannot assure you that we would be able to redesign our products in a way that would not infringe those patents. If we fail to obtain any required licenses or make any necessary changes to our technologies or the products that incorporate them, we may be unable to commercialize one or more of our products or may have to withdraw products from the market, all of which would have a material adverse effect on our business, financial condition and results of operations.

***If the combination of patents, trade secrets and contractual provisions upon which we rely to protect our intellectual property is inadequate, our ability to commercialize our products successfully will be harmed.***

Our success depends significantly on our ability to protect our proprietary rights to the technologies incorporated in our products. We currently have four issued U.S. patents and seven pending U.S. patent applications. We also have eighteen issued foreign patents and have applied for eight additional international patents. Our issued patents begin to expire in 2019, with the last of these patents expiring in 2029, although terminal disclaimers, patent term extension or patent term adjustment can shorten or lengthen the patent term. We rely on a combination of patent protection, trade secret laws and nondisclosure, confidentiality and other contractual restrictions to protect our proprietary technology. However, these may not adequately protect our rights or permit us to gain or keep any competitive advantage.

The issuance of a patent is not conclusive as to its scope, validity or enforceability. The scope, validity or enforceability of our issued patents can be challenged in litigation or proceedings before the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office or foreign patent offices where our applications are pending. The U.S. Patent and Trademark Office or foreign offices may deny or require significant narrowing of claims in our pending patent applications. Patents issued as a result of the pending patent applications, if any, may not provide us with significant commercial protection or be issued in a form that is advantageous to us. Proceedings before the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office or foreign offices could result in adverse decisions as to the priority of our inventions and the narrowing or invalidation of claims in issued patents. The laws of some foreign countries may not protect our intellectual property rights to the same extent as the laws of the U.S., if at all. Some of our patents may expire before we receive FDA approval to market our products in the U.S. or we receive approval to market our products in a foreign country. Although we believe that certain patent applications and/or other patents issued more recently will help protect the proprietary nature of the Hemopurifier treatment technology, we cannot assure you that this protection will be sufficient to protect us during the development of that technology.

Our competitors may successfully challenge and invalidate or render unenforceable our issued patents, including any patents that may issue in the future, which could prevent or limit our ability to market our products and could limit our ability to stop competitors from marketing products that are substantially equivalent to ours. In addition, competitors may be able to design around our patents or develop products that provide outcomes that are comparable to our products but that are not covered by our patents.

We have also entered into confidentiality and assignment of intellectual property agreements with all of our employees, consultants and advisors directly involved in the development of our technology as one of the ways we seek to protect our intellectual property and other proprietary technology. However, these agreements may not be enforceable or may not provide meaningful protection for our trade secrets or other proprietary information in the event of unauthorized use or disclosure or other breaches of the agreements.

In the event a competitor infringes upon any of our patents or other intellectual property rights, enforcing our rights may be difficult, time consuming and expensive, and would divert management's attention from managing our business. We cannot assure you that we will be successful on the merits in any enforcement effort. In addition, we may not have sufficient resources to litigate, enforce or defend our intellectual property rights.

***We may rely on licenses for new technology, which may affect our continued operations with respect thereto.***

As we develop our technology, we may need to license additional technologies to optimize the performance of our products. We may not be able to license these technologies on commercially reasonable terms or at all. In addition, we may fail to successfully integrate any licensed technology into our proposed products. Our inability to obtain any necessary licenses could delay our product development and testing until alternative technologies can be identified, licensed and integrated. The inability to obtain any necessary third-party licenses could cause us to abandon a particular development path, which could seriously harm our business, financial position and results of our operations.

***If we are unable to protect our proprietary technology and preserve our trade secrets, we will increase our vulnerability to competitors which could materially adversely impact our ability to remain in business.***

Our ability to successfully commercialize our products will depend on our ability to protect those products and our technology with domestic and foreign patents. We will also need to continue to preserve our trade secrets. The issuance of a patent is not conclusive as to its validity or as to the enforceable scope of the claims of the patent. The patent positions of technology companies, including us, are uncertain and involve complex legal and factual issues. We cannot assure you that our patents will prevent other companies from developing similar products or products which produce benefits substantially the same as our products, or that other companies will not be issued patents that may prevent the sale of our products or require us to pay significant licensing fees in order to market our products.

From time to time, we may need to obtain licenses to patents and other proprietary rights held by third parties in order to develop, manufacture and market our products. If we are unable to timely obtain these licenses on commercially reasonable terms, our ability to commercially exploit such products may be inhibited or prevented. Additionally, we cannot assure investors that any of our products or technology will be patentable or that any future patents we obtain will give us an exclusive position in the subject matter claimed by those patents. Furthermore, we cannot assure investors that our pending patent applications will result in issued patents, that patent protection will be secured for any particular technology, or that our issued patents will be valid or enforceable or provide us with meaningful protection.

***If we are required to engage in expensive and lengthy litigation to enforce our intellectual property rights, such litigation could be very costly and the results of such litigation may not be satisfactory.***

Although we have entered into invention assignment agreements with our employees and with certain advisors, and we routinely enter into confidentiality agreements with our contract partners, if those employees, advisors or contract partners develop inventions or processes independently that may relate to products or technology under development by us, disputes may arise about the ownership of those inventions or processes. Time-consuming and costly litigation could be necessary to enforce and determine the scope of our rights under these agreements. In addition, we may be required to commence litigation to enforce such agreements if they are violated, and it is certainly possible that we will not have adequate remedies for breaches of our confidentiality agreements as monetary damages may not be sufficient to compensate us. In addition, we may be unable to fund the costs of such litigation to a satisfactory conclusion, which could leave us without recourse to enforce contracts that protect our intellectual property rights.

***Other companies may claim that our technology infringes on their intellectual property or proprietary rights and commence legal proceedings against us which could be time-consuming and expensive and could result in our being prohibited from developing, marketing, selling or distributing our products.***

Because of the complex and difficult legal and factual questions that relate to patent positions in our industry, we cannot assure you that our products or technology will not be found to infringe upon the intellectual property or proprietary rights of others. Third parties may claim that our products or technology infringe on their patents, copyrights, trademarks or other proprietary rights and demand that we cease development or marketing of those products or technology or pay license fees. We may not be able to avoid costly patent infringement litigation, which will divert the attention of management away from the development of new products and the operation of our business. We cannot assure investors that we would prevail in any such litigation. If we are found to have infringed on a third-party's intellectual property rights, we may be liable for money damages, encounter significant delays in bringing products to market or be precluded from manufacturing particular products or using particular technology.

Other parties may challenge certain of our foreign patent applications. If such parties are successful in opposing our foreign patent applications, we may not gain the protection afforded by those patent applications in particular jurisdictions and may face additional proceedings with respect to similar patents in other jurisdictions, as well as related patents. The loss of patent protection in one jurisdiction may influence our ability to maintain patent protection for the same technology in other jurisdictions.

#### **Risks Related to U.S. Government Contracts**

***We may not obtain additional U.S. Government contracts to further develop our technology.***

Our prior contract with DARPA has been completed. We can give no assurances that we will be successful in obtaining additional government grants or contracts. The process of obtaining government contracts is lengthy. Accordingly, we cannot be certain that we will be awarded any additional U.S. Government grants or contracts utilizing our Hemopurifier platform technology.

***U.S. Government agencies have special contracting requirements including a right to audit us which create additional risks a negative audit would be detrimental to us.***

Our business plan to utilize the Aethlon Hemopurifier technology may continue to involve contracts with the U.S. Government. Such contracts typically contain unfavorable termination provisions and are subject to audit and modification by the government at its sole discretion, which subjects us to additional risks. These risks include the ability of the U.S. Government to unilaterally:

- suspend or prevent us for a period of time from receiving new contracts or extending existing contracts based on violations or suspected violations of laws or regulations;
- audit and object to our contract-related costs and fees, including allocated indirect costs;
- control and potentially prohibit the export of our products; and
- change certain terms and conditions in our contracts.

As a U.S. Government contractor, we would be required to comply with applicable laws, regulations and standards relating to our accounting practices and would be subject to periodic audits and reviews. As part of any such audit or review, the U.S. Government may review the adequacy of, and our compliance with, our internal control systems and policies, including those relating to our purchasing, property, estimating, compensation and management information systems. Based on the results of its audits, the U.S. Government may adjust our contract-related costs and fees, including allocated indirect costs. In addition, if an audit or review uncovers any improper or illegal activity, we would possibly be subject to civil and criminal penalties and administrative sanctions, including termination of our contracts, forfeiture of profits, suspension of payments, fines and suspension or prohibition from doing business with the U.S. Government. We could also suffer serious harm to our reputation if allegations of impropriety were made against us. Although we have not had any government audits and reviews to date, future audits and reviews could cause adverse effects. In addition, under U.S. Government purchasing regulations, some of our costs, including most financing costs, amortization of intangible assets, portions of our research and development costs, and some marketing expenses, would possibly not be reimbursable or allowed under such contracts. Further, as a U.S. Government contractor, we would be subject to an increased risk of investigations, criminal prosecution, civil fraud, whistleblower lawsuits and other legal actions and liabilities to which purely private sector companies are not.

*As a U.S. Government contractor, we would be subject to a number of procurement rules and regulations.*

Government contractors must comply with specific procurement regulations and other requirements. These requirements, although customary in government contracts, could impact our performance and compliance costs. In addition, current U.S. Government budgetary constraints could lead to changes in the procurement environment, including the Department of Defense's recent initiative focused on efficiencies, affordability and cost growth and other changes to its procurement practices. If and to the extent such changes occur, they could impact our results of operations and liquidity, and could affect whether and, if so, how we pursue certain opportunities and the terms under which we are able to do so.

In addition, failure to comply with these regulations and requirements could result in reductions of the value of contracts, contract modifications or termination, and the assessment of penalties and fines, which could negatively impact our results of operations and financial condition. Our failure to comply with these regulations and requirements could also lead to suspension or debarment, for cause, from government contracting or subcontracting for a period of time. Among the causes for debarment are violations of various statutes, including those related to procurement integrity, export control, government security regulations, employment practices, protection of the environment, accuracy of records and the recording of costs, and foreign corruption. The termination of our government contract as a result of any of these acts could have a negative impact on our results of operations and financial condition and could have a negative impact on our reputation and ability to procure other government contracts in the future.

#### **Risks Relating to Our Common Stock and Our Corporate Governance**

*We have never paid dividends on our common stock, and we do not anticipate paying any cash dividends in the foreseeable future.*

We have never paid cash dividends on our common stock. We intend to retain our future earnings, if any, to fund operational and capital expenditure needs of our business, and do not anticipate paying any cash dividends in the foreseeable future. Furthermore, future financing instruments may do the same. As a result, capital appreciation, if any, of our common stock will be the sole source of gain for our common stockholders in the foreseeable future.

*Our stock price is speculative, and there is a risk of litigation.*

The trading price of our common stock has in the past and may in the future be subject to wide fluctuations in response to factors such as the following:

- our future clinical results, or lack thereof;
- revenue or results of operations in any quarter failing to meet the expectations, published or otherwise, of the investment community;
- reduced investor confidence in equity markets, due in part to corporate collapses in recent years;
- speculation in the press or analyst community;
- wide fluctuations in stock prices, particularly with respect to the stock prices for other medical device companies;
- announcements of technological innovations by us or our competitors;
- new products or the acquisition of significant customers by us or our competitors;
- changes in interest rates;
- changes in investors' beliefs as to the appropriate price-earnings ratios for us and our competitors;
- changes in recommendations or financial estimates by securities analysts who track our common stock or the stock of other medical device companies;

- changes in management;
- sales of common stock by directors and executive officers;
- rumors or dissemination of false or misleading information, particularly through Internet chat rooms, instant messaging, and other rapid-dissemination methods;
- conditions and trends in the medical device industry generally;
- the announcement of acquisitions or other significant transactions by us or our competitors;
- adoption of new accounting standards affecting our industry;
- general market conditions;
- domestic or international terrorism and other factors; and
- the other factors described in this section.

Fluctuations in the price of our common stock may expose us to the risk of securities class action lawsuits. Although no such lawsuits are currently pending against us and we are not aware that any such lawsuit is threatened to be filed in the future, there is no assurance that we will not be sued based on fluctuations in the price of our common stock. Defending against such suits could result in substantial cost and divert management's attention and resources. In addition, any settlement or adverse determination of such lawsuits could subject us to significant liability.

***If at any time our common stock is subject to the Securities and Exchange Commission's penny stock rules, broker-dealers may experience difficulty in completing customer transactions and trading activity in our securities may be adversely affected.***

If at any time our common stock is not listed on a national securities exchange or we have net tangible assets of \$5,000,000 or less and our common stock has a market price per share of less than \$5.00, transactions in our common stock will be subject to the Securities and Exchange Commission's, or SEC's, "penny stock" rules. If our common stock is subject to the "penny stock" rules promulgated under the Exchange Act, broker-dealers may find it difficult to effectuate customer transactions and trading activity in our securities may be adversely affected. For any transaction involving a penny stock, unless exempt, the rules require:

- that a broker or dealer approve a person's account for transactions in penny stocks; and
- the broker or dealer receive from the investor a written agreement to the transaction, setting forth the identity and quantity of the penny stock to be purchased.

In order to approve a person's account for transactions in penny stocks, the broker or dealer must:

- obtain financial information and investment experience objectives of the person; and
- make a reasonable determination that the transactions in penny stocks are suitable for that person and the person has sufficient knowledge and experience in financial matters to be capable of evaluating the risks of transactions in penny stocks.

The broker or dealer must also deliver, prior to any transaction in a penny stock, a disclosure schedule prescribed by the Securities and Exchange Commission relating to the penny stock market, which, in highlight form:

- sets forth the basis on which the broker or dealer made the suitability determination; and
- that the broker or dealer received a signed, written agreement from the investor prior to the transaction.



Generally, brokers may be less willing to execute transactions in securities subject to the “penny stock” rules. This may make it more difficult for investors to dispose of our common stock and cause a decline in the market value of our stock.

Disclosure also has to be made about the risks of investing in penny stocks in both public offerings and in secondary trading and about the commissions payable to both the broker-dealer and the registered representative, current quotations for the securities and the rights and remedies available to an investor in cases of fraud in penny stock transactions. Finally, monthly statements have to be sent disclosing recent price information for the penny stock held in the account and information on the limited market in penny stocks.

***Our common stock has had an unpredictable trading volume which means you may not be able to sell our shares at or near trading prices or at all.***

Trading in our common shares historically has been volatile and often has been thin, meaning that the number of persons interested in purchasing our common shares at or near trading prices at any given time may be relatively small or non-existent. This situation is attributable to a number of factors, including the fact that we are a small company which is relatively unknown to stock analysts, stock brokers, institutional investors and others in the investment community that generate or influence sales volume, and that even if we came to the attention of such persons, they tend to be risk-averse and would be reluctant to follow an unproven company such as ours or purchase or recommend the purchase of our shares until such time as we became more seasoned and viable. As a consequence, there may be periods of several days or more when trading activity in our shares is minimal, as compared to a seasoned issuer which has a large and steady volume of trading activity that will generally support continuous sales without an adverse effect on share price. We cannot give you any assurance that a broader or more active public trading market for our common shares will develop or be sustained, or that current trading levels will be sustained.

***The market price for our common stock is volatile; you may not be able to sell our common stock at or above the price you have paid for them, which may result in losses to you.***

The market for our common shares is characterized by significant price volatility when compared to seasoned issuers, and we expect that our share price will continue to be more volatile than a seasoned issuer for the indefinite future. In fact, during the 52-week period ended March 31, 2017, the high and low closing sale prices of a share of our common stock were \$7.70 and \$3.19, respectively. The volatility in our share price is attributable to a number of factors. First, as noted above, trading in our common shares often has been thin. As a consequence of this lack of liquidity, the trading of relatively small quantities of shares by our stockholders may disproportionately influence the price of those shares in either direction. The price for our shares could, for example, decline precipitously in the event that a large number of our common shares are sold on the market without commensurate demand, as compared to a seasoned issuer which could better absorb those sales without adverse impact on its share price. Secondly, we are a speculative investment due to our limited operating history, limited amount of revenue, lack of profit to date, and the uncertainty of future regulatory approval or market acceptance for our potential products. As a consequence of this enhanced risk, more risk-averse investors may, under the fear of losing all or most of their investment in the event of negative news or lack of progress, be more inclined to sell their shares on the market more quickly and at greater discounts than would be the case with the stock of a seasoned issuer. The following factors may add to the volatility in the price of our common shares: actual or anticipated variations in our quarterly or annual operating results; acceptance of our proprietary technology as a viable method of augmenting the immune response of clearing viruses and toxins from human blood; government regulations, announcements of significant acquisitions, strategic partnerships or joint ventures; our capital commitments and additions or departures of our key personnel. Many of these factors are beyond our control and may decrease the market price of our common shares regardless of our operating performance. We cannot make any predictions or projections as to what the prevailing market price for our common shares will be at any time, including as to whether our common shares will sustain their current market prices, or as to what effect the sale of shares or the availability of common shares for sale at any time will have on the prevailing market price.

***We cannot assure you that we will be able to comply with the continued listing standards of the NASDAQ Capital Market.***

We cannot assure you that we will be able to comply with the listing standards that we are required to meet in order to maintain a listing of our common stock on the NASDAQ Capital Market. Our failure to meet those requirements may result in our common stock being delisted from the NASDAQ Capital Market.

Franklyn S. Barry, Jr, formerly one of our directors as well as a member of our Audit Committee, for health reasons declined to stand for re-election at the Annual Meeting of Shareholders held on March 30, 2017. As a result, we have two independent directors and members of our Audit Committee and thus no longer comply with Nasdaq’s independent director and audit committee requirements as set forth in Listing Rule 5605. We received a notification letter from Nasdaq on April 3, 2017 regarding this noncompliance.

Under Listing Rules 5605(b)(1)(A) and 5605(c)(4), Nasdaq shall provide us with time to regain compliance either until the earlier of our next annual meeting or March 30, 2018; or if the next annual meeting is before September 26, 2017, until September 26, 2017.

In order to regain compliance, the Company must submit to Nasdaq documentation, including biographies of any new directors, evidencing compliance with the rules no later than the applicable date set forth above. We are currently evaluating new candidates to join our board of directors; however, if this does not occur within the time periods proscribed we could be delisted.

The National Securities Markets Improvement Act of 1996, which is a federal statute, prevents or preempts the states from regulating the sale of certain securities, which are referred to as "covered securities." Because our common stock is listed on the NASDAQ Capital Market, we believe such securities will be covered securities. Although the states would be preempted from regulating the sale of our securities, in that event, the federal statute does allow the states to investigate companies if there is a suspicion of fraud, and, if there is a finding of fraudulent activity, then the states can regulate or bar the sale of covered securities in a particular case. Further, if our common stock is no longer listed on the NASDAQ Capital Market, our securities would not be covered securities, and we would be subject to regulation in each state in which we offer our securities.

***The Depository Trust Company imposed restrictions upon electronic trading of our common stock, which negatively affected liquidity of the stock and our ability to raise capital.***

In September 2011, The Depository Trust Company placed a "chill" on the electronic clearing of trades in our shares which led to some brokerage firms being unwilling to accept certificates and/or electronic deposits of our stock. We have since been successful in lifting the restrictions and our shares now clear electronically making more brokers willing to trade in our common stock. We cannot assure you that The Depository Trust Company will not again place a chill on our common stock. A chill, if placed on our common stock, would affect the liquidity of our shares which may make it difficult to purchase or sell shares in the open market. It may also have an adverse effect on our ability to raise capital since investors may be unable to resell shares into the market. Our inability to raise capital on terms acceptable to us, if at all, could have a material and adverse effect on our business and operations.

***A large number of our common shares are issuable upon exercise of outstanding convertible securities which, if exercised or converted, would be dilutive to your holdings.***

As of June 30, 2017, there are outstanding purchase options and warrants entitling the holders to purchase 2,942,284 common shares at a weighted average exercise price of \$4.60 per share. This includes 26,105 warrants that are conditional upon the exercise of other warrants. As of June 30, 2017, there are 443,644 shares underlying promissory notes convertible into common stock at a weighted average exercise price of \$3.00. Additionally, as of June 30, 2017, we had reserved 507,375 shares of common stock for issuance under our restricted stock unit program.

The exercise price for all of our outstanding options and warrants, or the conversion price of our convertible notes, may be less than your cost to acquire our common shares. In the event of the exercise or conversion of these securities, you could suffer substantial dilution of your investment in terms of your percentage ownership in us as well as the book value of your common shares. In addition, the holders of the convertible notes, common share purchase options or warrants may sell common shares in tandem with their exercise or conversion of those securities to finance that exercise or conversion, or may resell the shares purchased in order to cover any income tax liabilities that may arise from their exercise of the options or warrants or conversion of the notes.

***Our issuance of additional common shares, or convertible securities, would be dilutive to your holdings.***

We are entitled under our Articles of Incorporation to issue up to 30,000,000 shares of common stock. We have reserved for issuance 3,893,303 shares of common stock for existing restricted stock units, options, warrants and convertible notes. As of June 30, 2017, we have issued and outstanding 8,869,571 shares of common stock. As a result, as of June 30, 2017 we had 17,237,126 common shares available for issuance to new investors or for use to satisfy indebtedness or pay service providers.

Our Board of Directors may generally issue shares of common stock, restricted stock units or options or warrants to purchase those shares, without further approval by our stockholders based upon such factors as our Board of Directors may deem relevant at that time. It is likely that we will be required to issue a large amount of additional securities to raise capital to further our development. It is also likely that we will be required to issue a large amount of additional securities to directors, officers, employees and consultants as compensatory grants in connection with their services, both in the form of stand-alone grants or under our stock plans. We cannot give you any assurance that we will not issue additional shares of common stock, or options or warrants to purchase those shares, under circumstances we may deem appropriate at the time.

***Our directors and officers own or control approximately 10.6% of our outstanding common shares which may limit your ability to propose new management or influence the overall direction of the business; this concentration of control may also discourage potential takeovers that could otherwise provide a premium to you.***

As of September 7, 2017, our officers and directors beneficially own or control approximately 10% of our outstanding common shares (assuming the exercise of all outstanding options, restricted stock units and warrants held by our officers and directors). These persons will have the ability to substantially influence all matters submitted to our stockholders for approval and to control our management and affairs, including extraordinary transactions such as mergers and other changes of corporate control, and going private transactions.

***Our issuance of additional shares of common stock in satisfaction of services, or to repay indebtedness, would be dilutive to your holdings.***

Our Board of Directors may generally issue shares of common stock to pay for debt or services, without further approval by our stockholders based upon such factors that our Board of Directors may deem relevant at that time. For the past four fiscal years (ending March 31, 2017), we issued a total of 1,193,300 shares for debt to reduce our obligations. In the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017 we issued 33,091 shares of common stock at an average price discount of 13% weighted by the number of shares issued for debt in that period. We did not issue any shares as payment for services in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2016.

While we did not issue any shares as payment for services in the fiscal years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016, it is likely that we will issue additional securities to pay for services and to reduce debt in the future. We cannot give you any assurance that we will not issue additional shares of common stock at various discounts under circumstances we may deem appropriate at the time.

***Our officers and directors are entitled to indemnification from us for liabilities under our articles of incorporation, which could be costly to us and may discourage the exercise of stockholder rights.***

Our Articles of Incorporation contains provisions which eliminate the liability of our directors for monetary damages to our company and stockholders. Our by-laws also require us to indemnify our officers and directors. We may also have contractual indemnification obligations under our agreements with our directors, officers and employees. The foregoing indemnification obligations could result in our company incurring substantial expenditures to cover the cost of settlement or damage awards against directors, officers and employees that we may be unable to recoup. These provisions and resultant costs may also discourage our company from bringing a lawsuit against directors, officers and employees for breaches of their fiduciary duties, and may similarly discourage the filing of derivative litigation by our stockholders against our directors, officers and employees even though such actions, if successful, might otherwise benefit our company and stockholders.

***Our by-laws and Nevada law may discourage, delay or prevent a change of control of our company or changes in our management, would have the result of depressing the trading price of our common stock.***

Provisions of Nevada anti-takeover law (NRS 78.378 *et seq.*) could have the effect of delaying or preventing a third-party from acquiring us, even if the acquisition arguably could benefit our stockholders. Various provisions of our by-laws may delay, defer or prevent a tender offer or takeover attempt of us that a stockholder might consider in his or her best interest. Our by-laws may be adopted, amended or repealed by the affirmative vote of the holders of at least a majority of our outstanding shares of capital stock entitled to vote for the election of directors, and except as provided by Nevada law, our Board of Directors shall have the power to adopt, amend or repeal the bylaws by a vote of not less than a majority of our directors. The interests of these stockholders and directors may not be consistent with your interests, and they may make changes to the by-laws that are not in line with your concerns.

Our authorized but unissued shares of common stock are available for our Board or Directors to issue without stockholder approval. We may use these additional shares for a variety of corporate purposes, however, faced with an attempt to obtain control of us by means of a proxy contest, tender offer, merger or other transaction our Board of Directors acting alone and without approval of our stockholders can issue large amounts of capital stock as part of a defense to a take-over challenge.

The existence of the foregoing provisions and other potential anti-takeover measures could limit the price that investors might be willing to pay in the future for shares of our common stock. They could also deter potential acquirers of our company, thereby reducing the likelihood that you could receive a premium for your common stock in an acquisition.

***We incur substantial costs as a result of being a public company and our management expects to devote substantial time to public company compliance programs.***

As a public company, we incur significant legal, insurance, accounting and other expenses, including costs associated with public company reporting. We intend to invest resources to comply with evolving laws, regulations and standards, and this investment will result in increased general and administrative expenses and may divert management's time and attention from product development and commercialization activities. If our efforts to comply with new laws, regulations and standards differ from the activities intended by regulatory or governing bodies due to ambiguities related to practice, regulatory authorities may initiate legal proceedings against us, and our business may be harmed. These laws and regulations could make it more difficult and costly for us to obtain director and officer liability insurance for our directors and officers, and we may be required to accept reduced coverage or incur substantially higher costs to obtain coverage. These factors could also make it more difficult for us to attract and retain qualified executive officers and qualified members of our Board of Directors, particularly to serve on our audit and compensation committees. In addition, if we are unable to continue to meet the legal, regulatory and other requirements related to being a public company, we may not be able to maintain the quotation of our common stock on the Nasdaq Capital Market or on any other senior market to which we may apply for listing, which would likely have a material adverse effect on the trading price of our common stock.

***If securities or industry analysts do not publish research or reports about our business, or if they change their recommendations regarding our stock adversely, our stock price and trading volume could decline.***

The trading market for our common stock will be influenced by the research and reports that industry or securities analysts publish about us or our business. Our research coverage by industry and financial analysts is currently limited. Even if our analyst coverage increases, if one or more of the analysts who cover us downgrade our stock, our stock price would likely decline. If one or more of these analysts cease coverage of our company or fail to regularly publish reports on us, we could lose visibility in the financial markets, which in turn could cause our stock price or trading volume to decline.

#### **Risks Relating to this Offering**

***There is no minimum offering amount required to consummate this offering.***

There is no minimum offering amount which must be raised in order for us to consummate this offering. Accordingly, the amount of money raised may not be sufficient for us to meet our business objectives. Moreover, if only a small amount of money is raised, all or substantially all of the offering proceeds may be applied to cover the offering expenses and we will not otherwise benefit from the offering. In addition, because there is no minimum offering amount required, investors will not be entitled to a return of their investment if we are unable to raise sufficient proceeds to meet our business objectives.

***Management will have broad discretion as to the use of the net proceeds from this offering, and we may not use these proceeds effectively.***

We have not designated any portion of the net proceeds from this offering to be used for any particular purposes. Our management will have broad discretion in the application of the net proceeds from this offering and could spend the proceeds in ways that do not improve our results of operations or enhance the value of our common stock. Accordingly, you will be relying on the judgment of our management with regard to the use of these net proceeds, and you will not have the opportunity, as part of your investment decision, to assess whether the proceeds are being used appropriately. Our failure to apply these funds effectively could have a material adverse effect on our business, delay the development of our product candidates and cause the price of our common stock to decline.

***You will experience immediate and substantial dilution in the net tangible book value per share of the common stock you purchase.***

Since the public offering price per share of our common stock and related warrant being offered is expected to be substantially higher than the net tangible book value per share of our common stock, you will suffer substantial dilution in the net tangible book value of the common stock you purchase in this offering. Our net tangible book value as of June 30, 2017 was approximately \$(1,033,000), or \$(0.12) per share. After giving effect to the assumed sale of shares of our common stock in this offering at an assumed combined public offering price of \$1.57 per share of common stock and related warrant (the closing bid price of our common stock on September 7, 2017), and after deducting the estimated placement agent fees and estimated offering expenses payable by us, and attributing no value to the warrants sold in this offering, if you purchase shares of our common stock in this offering, you will suffer immediate and substantial dilution of \$0.11 per share in the net tangible book value of the common stock you acquire. In the event that you exercise your warrants, you will experience additional dilution to the extent that the exercise price of the warrants is higher than the tangible book value per share of our common stock. See the section titled "Dilution" below for a more detailed discussion of the dilution you would incur if you purchase shares of our common stock in this offering.

In addition, we have a significant number of stock options, common stock underlying convertible notes, and warrants outstanding. To the extent that outstanding stock options or warrants, including the warrants offered in this prospectus, have been or may be exercised or other shares issued, including shares underlying convertible notes, you may experience further dilution.

***Holders of our warrants will have no rights as a common stockholder until they acquire our common stock.***

Until you acquire shares of our common stock upon exercise of your warrants, you will have no rights with respect to shares of our common stock issuable upon exercise of your warrants. Upon exercise of your warrants, you will be entitled to exercise the rights of a common stockholder only as to matters for which the record date occurs after the exercise date.

***A large number of shares issued in this offering may be sold in the market following this offering, which may depress the market price of our common stock.***

A large number of shares issued in this offering may be sold in the market following this offering, which may depress the market price of our common stock. Sales of a substantial number of shares of our common stock in the public market following this offering could cause the market price of our common stock to decline. If there are more shares of common stock offered for sale than buyers are willing to purchase, then the market price of our common stock may decline to a market price at which buyers are willing to purchase the offered shares of common stock and sellers remain willing to sell the shares. All of the shares of common stock issued in the offering will be freely tradable without restriction or further registration under the Securities Act of 1933.

***The warrants issued in this offering may not have any value.***

Each warrant will have an exercise price equal to \$\_\_\_\_\_ and will expire on the fifth anniversary of the date they first become exercisable. In the event our common stock price does not exceed the exercise price of the warrants during the period when the warrants are exercisable, the warrants may not have any value.

***If our common stock is not listed on a national securities exchange, U.S. holders of the warrants may not be able to exercise their warrants without compliance with applicable state securities laws and the value of your warrants may be significantly reduced.***

If our common stock is not approved for listing on the NASDAQ Capital Market, or if our common stock is subsequently delisted from the NASDAQ Capital Market and is not eligible to be listed on another national securities exchange, the exercise of the warrants by U.S. holders may not be exempt from state securities laws. As a result, depending on the state of residence of a holder of the warrants, a U.S. holder may not be able to exercise its warrants unless we comply with any state securities law requirements necessary to permit such exercise or an exemption applies. Although we plan to use our reasonable efforts to assure that U.S. holders will be able to exercise their warrants under applicable state securities laws if no exemption exists, there is no assurance that we will be able to do so. As a result, in the event that our common stock is not approved for listing on the NASDAQ Capital Market or our common stock is delisted from the NASDAQ Capital Market and is not eligible to be listed on another securities exchange, your ability to exercise your warrants may be limited. The value of the warrants may be significantly reduced if U.S. holders are not able to exercise their warrants under applicable state securities laws.

***There is no public market for the common warrants or the pre-funded warrants to purchase shares of our common stock included in the units and the pre-funded units being offered by us in this offering.***

There is no established public trading market for the common warrants or the pre-funded warrants included in the units and the pre-funded units being offered in this offering, and we do not expect a market to develop. In addition, we do not intend to apply to list the common warrants or the pre-funded warrants on any national securities exchange or other nationally recognized trading system, including The NASDAQ Capital Market. Without an active market, the liquidity of the common warrants and the pre-funded warrants will be limited.

## SPECIAL NOTE REGARDING FORWARD-LOOKING STATEMENTS

This prospectus contains forward-looking statements that are based on our management's beliefs and assumptions and on information currently available to us. The forward-looking statements are contained principally in, but not limited to, the sections entitled "Prospectus Summary," "Risk Factors," "Management's Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations" and "Business." These statements relate to future events or to our future financial performance and involve known and unknown risks, uncertainties, and other factors that may cause our or our industry's actual results, levels of activity, performance or achievements to be materially different from any future results, levels of activity, performance or achievements expressed or implied by these forward-looking statements. Forward-looking statements include, but are not limited to, statements about:

- Our ability to continue as a going concern;
- our ability to achieve sufficient market acceptance of any of our products or product candidates;
- our perception of the growth in the size of the potential market for our products and product candidates;
- our estimate of the advantages of our products;
- our ability to become a profitable company;
- our estimates regarding our needs for additional financing and our ability to obtain such additional financing on suitable terms;
- our ability to succeed in obtaining FDA clearance or approvals for our product candidates;
- the timing, costs and other limitations involved in obtaining regulatory clearance or approval for any of our product candidates and, thereafter, continued compliance with governmental regulation of our existing products and activities;
- our ability to protect our intellectual property and operate our business without infringing upon the intellectual property rights of others;
- our ability to obtain sufficient quantities and satisfactory quality of raw materials to meet our manufacturing needs;
- our ability to secure manufacturing capacity to meet future demand;
- the timing of and our ability to conduct clinical trials;
- our ability to perform under our government contracts and accurately estimate our fixed costs under such contracts;
- our ability to attract and retain a qualified management team, research team, scientific advisors and other qualified personnel; and
- our liquidity.

In some cases, you can identify forward-looking statements by terms such as "may," "could," "will," "should," "would," "expect," "plan," "intend," "anticipate," "believe," "estimate," "predict," "potential," "project" or "continue" or the negative of these terms or other comparable terminology. These statements are only predictions. You should not place undue reliance on forward-looking statements because they involve known and unknown risks, uncertainties and other factors, which are, in some cases, beyond our control and which could materially affect results. Factors that may cause actual results to differ materially from current expectations include, among other things, those listed under the heading "Risk Factors" and elsewhere in this prospectus. If one or more of these risks or uncertainties occur, or if our underlying assumptions prove to be incorrect, actual events or results may vary significantly from those implied or projected by the forward-looking statements.

Any forward-looking statement in this prospectus reflects our current views with respect to future events and is subject to these and other risks, uncertainties and assumptions relating to our operations, results of operations, industry and future growth. Except as required by law, we assume no obligation to publicly update or revise any forward-looking statements contained in this prospectus, whether as a result of new information, future events or otherwise. The Private Securities Litigation Reform Act of 1995 and Section 27A of the Securities Act of 1933 do not protect any forward-looking statements that we make in connection with this offering.

## USE OF PROCEEDS

We estimate the net proceeds from this offering will be approximately \$6.8 million, from the sale of our securities in this offering, based on an assumed offering price of \$1.57 per unit and assuming the sale of 4,777,070 units and no sale of any pre-funded units in this offering, after deducting estimated placement agent's fees and expenses and our estimated offering expenses. We do not intend to pay any proceeds of this offering to any of our affiliates. The public offering price per unit and pre-funded unit will be determined between us and the placement agent based on market conditions at the time of pricing, and may be at a discount to the current market price of our common stock. This estimate excludes the proceeds, if any, from the exercise of common warrants in this offering. If all of the common warrants sold in this offering were to be exercised in cash at an assumed exercise price of \$1.96 per share, we would receive additional net proceeds of approximately \$7.0 million. We cannot predict when or if these common warrants will be exercised. It is possible that these common warrants may expire and may never be exercised. A \$1.00 increase (decrease) in the assumed combined public offering price of \$1.57 per share of our common stock would increase (decrease) the expected net cash proceeds of this offering to us by approximately \$4.4/\$(4.4) million assuming the number of shares and warrants remains the same. An increase (decrease) of 1,000,000 in the assumed number of shares sold in this offering would increase (decrease) the expected net cash proceeds of the offering to us by approximately \$1.5/\$(1.5) million, assuming a combined public offering price of \$1.57 per share. We intend to use the net proceeds of this offering to continue the clinical development of our product candidates and for working capital and other general corporate purposes. We cannot state with specificity the amount of funds raised which will be utilized for clinical development. The cost of completing an efficacy trial for our device is almost entirely a function of the number of patients and sites the FDA decides is necessary for our device. We do not expect to receive that guidance from the FDA for a number of months. Should the FDA decide to approve our device for certain highly virulent viruses for which clinical trials cannot be conducted, then we will not incur clinical trial costs related to those indications.

Pending these uses, we intend to invest the net proceeds of this offering primarily in investment grade, interest-bearing instruments. As of the date of this prospectus, we cannot specify with certainty all of the particular uses for the net proceeds we will have upon completion of the offering. Accordingly, we will retain broad discretion over the use of these proceeds.

## MARKET PRICE FOR COMMON EQUITY AND RELATED STOCKHOLDER MATTERS

Our common stock is listed on the Nasdaq Capital Market under the trading symbol "AEMD." Trading in our common stock historically has been volatile and often has been thin. On July 7, 2015, The NASDAQ Stock Market LLC approved our application for listing our common stock on the Nasdaq Capital Market under the symbol "AEMD," and we commenced trading on the Nasdaq Capital Market on July 13, 2015. Previously, our common stock was quoted on the OTCQB Marketplace under the trading symbol "AEMD."

The following table sets forth for the calendar periods indicated the quarterly high and low closing or bid prices, as applicable, for our common stock as reported by the Nasdaq Capital Market and/or the OTCQB Marketplace. The prices represent quotations between dealers, without adjustment for retail markup, mark down or commission, and do not necessarily represent actual transactions.

PERIOD	CLOSING/BID PRICE	
	HIGH	LOW
Calendar 2017:		
First Quarter	\$ 4.75	\$ 3.19
Calendar 2016:		
Fourth Quarter	5.14	4.11
Third Quarter	7.70	4.77
Second Quarter	6.14	4.70
First Quarter	7.01	4.34
Calendar 2015:		
Fourth Quarter	8.20	6.17
Third Quarter	11.38	6.58
Second Quarter	14.00	6.51
First Quarter	19.50	8.50

There were approximately 84 record holders of our common stock at September 7, 2017. The number of registered stockholders includes any beneficial owners of common shares held in street name.

On April 14, 2015, we completed a 1-for-50 reverse stock split. Accordingly, authorized common stock was reduced from 500,000,000 shares to 10,000,000 shares, and each 50 shares of outstanding common stock held by stockholders were combined into one share of common stock. The accompanying consolidated financial statements and accompanying notes have been retroactively revised to reflect such reverse stock split as if it had occurred on April 1, 2014. All shares and per share amounts have been revised accordingly.

The transfer agent and registrar for our common stock is Computershare Investor Services, located at 350 Indiana Street, Suite 800, Golden, Colorado 80401.



EQUITY COMPENSATION PLANS  
SUMMARY EQUITY COMPENSATION PLAN DATA

**Equity Compensation Plans**

***Summary equity compensation plan data***

The following table sets forth information, as of June 30, 2017, about our equity compensation plans (including the potential effect of debt instruments convertible into common stock) in effect as of that date:

Plan category	(a) Number of securities to be issued upon exercise of outstanding options, warrants and rights (1)(2)	(b) Weighted-average exercise price of outstanding options	(c) Number of securities remaining available for future issuance under equity compensation plans (excluding securities reflected in column (a))
Equity compensation plans approved by security holders (3)(5)	787,296	\$ —	2,212,704
Equity compensation plans not approved by security holders (1)(3)(4)	466,547	\$ 10.30	28,845
<b>Totals</b>	<b>1,253,843</b>	<b>\$ 10.30</b>	<b>2,241,549</b>

(1) The description of the material terms of non-plan issuances of equity instruments is discussed in Note 5 to the accompanying consolidated financial statements.

(2) Net of equity instruments forfeited, exercised or expired.

(3) Includes restricted 787,296 restricted stock unit grants to our officers and directors in August 2016.

(4) On June 30, 2017 we had 2,241,549 shares available under our 2010 Stock Incentive Plan.

(5) 3,000,000 share increase to the 2010 Stock Incentive Plan approved by shareholders.

***2000 Stock Option Plan***

Our 2000 Stock Option Plan provides for the grant of incentive stock options to our full-time employees (who may also be directors) and nonstatutory stock options to non-employee directors, consultants, customers, vendors or providers of significant services. The exercise price of any incentive stock option may not be less than the fair market value of the common stock on the date of grant or, in the case of an optionee who owns more than 10% of the total combined voting power of all classes of our outstanding stock, not be less than 110% of the fair market value on the date of grant. The exercise price, in the case of any nonstatutory stock option, must not be less than 75% of the fair market value of the common stock on the date of grant. The amount reserved under the 2000 Stock Option Plan is 10,000 options.

At June 30, 2017, all of the grants previously made under the 2000 Stock Option Plan had expired and 200 common shares had been issued under the plan, with 9,800 available for future issuance.

### ***2010 Stock Incentive Plan***

In August 2010, we adopted the 2010 Stock Incentive Plan, which provides incentives to attract, retain and motivate employees and directors whose present and potential contributions are important to our success by offering them an opportunity to participate in our future performance through awards of options, the right to purchase common stock, stock bonuses and stock appreciation rights and other awards. We initially reserved a total of 70,000 common shares for issuance under the 2010 Stock Incentive Plan.

In August 2010, we filed a registration statement on Form S-8 for the purpose of registering 70,000 common shares issuable under this plan under the Securities Act, and in July 2012, we filed a registration statement on Form S-8 for the purpose of registering 100,000 common shares issuable under this plan under the Securities Act.

On January 26, 2016, our Board of Directors approved an amendment to the 2010 Stock Incentive Plan to increase the total number of shares of common stock reserved for issuance under the plan to 3,170,000 shares, subject to amendment of our Articles of Incorporation to increase our authorized common stock. On March 29, 2016, we held an annual stockholders meeting, at which our stockholders approved the Amended 2010 Stock Incentive Plan and an amendment of our Articles of Incorporation to increase our authorized common stock to 30,000,000 shares. On March 31, 2016, we filed a Certificate of Amendment to our Articles of Incorporation to effect the increase in our authorized common stock. As a result of such amendment, the Amended 2010 Stock Incentive Plan became effective on March 31, 2016.

At June 30, 2017, we had 2,212,704 shares available under this plan.

### ***2012 Directors Compensation Program***

In July 2012, our Board of Directors approved a board compensation program that modified and superseded the 2005 Directors Compensation Program, which was previously in effect. Under the 2012 program, in which only non-employee directors may participate, an eligible director will receive a grant of \$35,000 worth of ten-year options to acquire shares of common stock, with such grant being valued at the exercise price based on the average of the closing bid prices of the common stock for the five trading days preceding the first day of the fiscal year. In addition, under this program, eligible directors will receive cash compensation equal to \$500 for each committee meeting attended and \$1,000 for each formal board meeting attended.

At March 31, 2017, we had issued 26,757 options under the 2005 program to outside directors and 79,309 options to employee-directors, 21,756 outside directors' options had been forfeited, 5,000 outside directors' options had been exercised, 79,309 employee-directors' options had been forfeited and no options under the 2005 program remained outstanding. There were no issuances of stock options to our outside directors in the fiscal years ended March 31, 2016 and 2017.

On June 6, 2014, our Board of Directors approved certain changes to the 2012 program. Under this modified program, a new eligible director will receive an initial grant of \$50,000 worth of options to acquire shares of common stock, with such grant being valued at the exercise price based on the average of the closing bid prices of the common stock for the five trading days preceding the first day of the fiscal year. These options will have a term of ten years and will vest 1/3 upon grant and 1/3 upon each of the first two anniversaries of the date of grant. In addition, at the beginning of each fiscal year, each existing director eligible to participate in the modified 2012 program also will receive a grant of \$35,000 worth of options valued at the exercise price based on the average of the closing bid prices of the common stock for the five trading days preceding the first day of the fiscal year. Such options will vest on the first anniversary of the date of grant. In lieu of per meeting fees, eligible directors will receive an annual board retainer fee of \$30,000. The modified 2012 program also provides for the following annual retainer fees: Audit Committee Chair - \$5,000, Compensation Committee chair - \$5,000, Nominating Committee Chair - \$5,000, Audit Committee member - \$4,000, Compensation Committee member - \$4,000, Nominating Committee member \$4,000 and lead independent director - \$15,000.

On August 9, 2016, the Board approved further modifications to the program. Under the modified 2012 Program, in which only non-employee directors may participate, a new eligible director will receive an initial grant of \$50,000 worth of RSUs or, at the discretion of the Board, options to acquire shares of Common Stock. RSUs granted under this provision will be valued based on the average of the closing prices of the Common Stock for the five trading days preceding and including the date of grant and will vest at a rate determined by the Board in its discretion. Options granted under this provision will be valued at the exercise price, which will be based on the average of the closing prices of the Common Stock for the five trading days preceding and including the date of grant. Such options will have a term of ten years and will vest at a rate determined by the Board in its discretion.

At the beginning of each fiscal year, each existing director eligible to participate in the 2012 Program will receive a grant of \$35,000 worth of RSUs or, at the discretion of the Board, options to acquire shares of Common Stock. RSUs granted under this provision will be valued based on the average of the closing prices of the Common Stock for the five trading days preceding and including the first day of the fiscal year (or preceding and including the date of grant, if such grant is not made on the first day of the fiscal year) and will vest at a rate determined by the Board in its discretion. Options granted under this provision will be valued at the exercise price, which will be based on the average of the closing prices of the Common Stock for the five trading days preceding and including the first day of the fiscal year (or preceding and including the date of grant, if such grant is not made on the first day of the fiscal year). Such options will have a term of ten years and will vest at a rate determined by the Board in its discretion.

The RSU grants and the changes to the 2012 Program were approved and recommended by our Compensation Committee prior to approval by the Board.

***Stand-alone grants***

From time to time our Board of Directors grants common stock or common share purchase options or warrants to selected directors, officers, employees and consultants as equity compensation to such persons on a stand-alone basis outside of any of our formal stock plans. The terms of these grants are individually negotiated. There were no stock option grants to either employees or directors during the fiscal years ended March 31, 2017 and March 31, 2016.

## CAPITALIZATION

The following table sets forth our cash and cash equivalents and our capitalization as of June 30, 2017:

- on an actual basis; and
- on an as adjusted basis, based upon an assumed offering price of \$1.57 per share of common stock and corresponding warrant, to give effect to the sale of 4,777,070 shares of common stock in this offering, after deducting the estimated placement agent discounts and commissions and estimated offering expenses payable by us.

Based on the assumed offering price of \$1.57 per share and associated warrant. The as adjusted information below is only for illustrative purposes and our capitalization following the completion of this offering will be adjusted based on the actual offering price and other terms of this offering determined at pricing. You should read this table in conjunction with “Use of Proceeds” above as well as our “Management’s Discussion and Analysis of Financial Condition and Results of Operations” and financial statements and the related notes appearing elsewhere in this prospectus.

	June 30, 2017	
	Unaudited Actual	Unaudited As Adjusted
	(in thousands except share amounts)	
Assets:		
Cash & Cash Equivalents	\$ 327,206	\$ 7,052,206
Liabilities:		
Total Liabilities	\$ 1,459,216	\$ 1,459,216
Stockholders' Equity:		
Common Stock, par value of \$0.001	\$ 8,869	\$ 13,647
Additional Paid-in-capital	94,745,740	101,465,363
Retained Earnings (Deficit)	(95,619,939)	(95,619,939)
Total Stockholders' Equity Before Noncontrolling Interests	\$ (865,330)	\$ 5,859,071

The total number of shares of our common stock outstanding in the table above is based on 8,869,571 shares outstanding as of June 30, 2017, and excludes as of that date, the following:

- (1) The number of shares of our common stock outstanding prior to and to be outstanding immediately after this offering, as set forth in the above table, is based on 8,869,571 shares of our common stock outstanding as of June 30, 2017 and excludes as of that date:
- 466,547 shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of outstanding stock options under our stock incentive plans at a weighted average exercise price of \$10.30 per share;
  - 2,475,737 additional shares of common stock reserved for issuance under outstanding warrants with a weighted average exercise price of \$3.53 per share;
  - 507,375 additional shares of common stock reserved for future issuance under our stock incentive plans;
  - 443,644 additional shares of common stock issuable under convertible notes, which includes accrued interest through June 30, 2017;
  - shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants offered hereby; and
  - shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of warrants to be issued to the placement agent in connection with this offering.

A \$1.00 increase (decrease) in the offering price of \$1.57 per share of common stock would increase (decrease) cash and cash equivalents and total stockholders' equity by \$4,442,675 million, assuming that the number of shares offered by us, as set forth on the cover page of this prospectus, remains the same, and after deducting the estimated placement agent fee and estimated offering expenses payable by us.

## DIVIDEND POLICY

We have not paid any dividends on our common stock to date and do not anticipate that we will pay dividends in the foreseeable future. Any payment of cash dividends on our common stock in the future will be dependent upon the amount of funds legally available, our earnings, if any, our financial condition, our anticipated capital requirements and other factors that the board of directors may think are relevant. However, we currently intend for the foreseeable future to follow a policy of retaining all of our earnings, if any, to finance the development and expansion of our business and, therefore, do not expect to pay any dividends on our common stock in the foreseeable future.

## DILUTION

If you purchase shares of our securities in this offering, you will experience dilution to the extent of the difference between the price per share you pay in this offering and the net tangible book value per share of our common stock immediately after this offering, assuming no value is attributed to the warrants and such warrants are accounted for and classified as equity. Our net tangible book value as of June 30, 2017 was approximately \$(1,033,000), or approximately \$(0.12) per share. Net tangible book value per share represents our total tangible assets less total tangible liabilities, divided by the number of shares of common stock outstanding as of June 30, 2017.

After giving effect to the assumed sale by us of 4,777,070 shares of our common stock and warrants to purchase 3,582,803 shares of our common stock in this offering at an assumed combined public offering price of \$1.57 per share of our common stock and related warrant (the closing bid price of our common stock on September 7, 2017), and after deducting the estimated placement agent fees and estimated offering expenses payable by us, our as adjusted net tangible book value as of June 30, 2017 would have been approximately \$5.7 million, or approximately \$0.42 per share of common stock. This represents an immediate increase in net tangible book value of approximately \$0.50 per share to existing shareholders and an immediate dilution of approximately \$1.15 per share to new investors, attributing none of the assumed combined public offering price to the warrants offered hereby. The following table illustrates this per share dilution:

Assumed combined public offering price per share and related warrant		\$ 1.57
Net tangible book value per share as of June 30, 2017	\$ (0.12)	
Increase in net tangible book value per share attributable to new investors	<u>\$ 0.50</u>	
As adjusted net tangible book value per share as of June 30, 2017, after giving effect to this offering		\$ 0.42
Dilution per share to new investors in the offering		<u>\$ 1.15</u>

Each \$1.00 increase (decrease) in the assumed combined public offering price of \$1.57 per share and related warrant would increase (decrease) our as adjusted net tangible book value after this offering by \$1.5/\$(1.5) million, or \$0.11/\$(0.11) per share, and the dilution per share to new investors by \$2.05/\$0.26 per share, assuming that the number of shares of common stock and related warrants offered by us, as set forth above, remains the same and after deducting the estimated placement agent fees and estimated offering expenses payable by us. We may also increase or decrease the number of shares of common stock and related warrants we are offering from the assumed number of shares of common stock and related warrants set forth above. An increase (decrease) of 1,000,000 shares of common stock and related warrants in the number of shares of common stock and related warrants offered by us from the assumed number of shares of common stock and related warrants set forth above at an assumed combined public offering price of \$1.57 (the closing bid price of our common stock on September 7, 2017) would increase (decrease) our as adjusted net tangible book value after this offering by \$1.5/\$(1.5) million, or \$0.52/\$0.31 per share, and the dilution per share to new investors by \$1.05/\$1.26 per share, assuming that the assumed public offering price remains the same and after deducting the placement agent fees and estimated offering expenses payable by us. The information discussed above is illustrative only and will adjust based on the actual combined public offering price, the actual number of shares and warrants that we offer in this offering, and other terms of this offering determined at pricing.

This table does not take into account further dilution to new investors that could occur upon the exercise of outstanding options and warrants, including the warrants offered in this offering, having a per share exercise price less than the public offering price per share in this offering.

(1) The number of shares of our common stock outstanding prior to and to be outstanding immediately after this offering, as set forth in the above table, is based on 8,951,081 shares of our common stock outstanding as of September 7, 2017 and excludes as of that date:

- 466,547 shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of outstanding stock options under our stock incentive plans at a weighted average exercise price of \$10.30 per share;
- 2,464,739 additional shares of common stock reserved for issuance under outstanding warrants with a weighted average exercise price of \$3.48 per share;
- 507,375 additional shares of common stock reserved for future issuance under our stock incentive plans;
- 451,786 additional shares of common stock issuable under convertible notes, which includes accrued interest through September 8, 2017;
- shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the warrants offered hereby; and
- shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of warrants to be issued to the placement agent in connection with this offering.

## MANAGEMENT'S DISCUSSION AND ANALYSIS OF FINANCIAL CONDITION AND RESULTS OF OPERATIONS

The following discussion and analysis should be read in conjunction with the consolidated Financial Statements and Notes thereto appearing elsewhere in this registration statement.

### Overview

#### Company Overview

We are a medical technology company focused on addressing unmet needs in global health and biodefense. The Aethlon Hemopurifier® is an early clinical-stage therapeutic device designed for the single-use removal of life-threatening viruses from the circulatory system of infected individuals. We believe the Hemopurifier® can be a part of the broad-spectrum treatment of life-threatening highly glycosylated viruses that are not addressed with an already approved treatment countermeasure objectives set forth by the U.S. Government to protect citizens from bioterror and pandemic threats. In small-scale or early feasibility human studies, the Hemopurifier® has been administered to HIV, Hepatitis-C, and Ebola infected individuals. Additionally, the Hemopurifier® has also been validated to capture Zika virus, Lassa virus, MERS-CoV, Cytomegalovirus, Epstein-Barr virus, Herpes Simplex virus, Chikungunya virus, Dengue virus, West Nile virus, Smallpox-related viruses, H1N1 Swine Flu virus, H5N1 Bird Flu virus, and the reconstructed Spanish flu virus of 1918. In several cases, these validations were conducted in collaboration with leading government or non-government research institutes. In the United States, we are focused on the clinical advancement of the Hemopurifier® through investigational device exemptions (IDEs) approved by FDA. We recently concluded a feasibility study to demonstrate the safety of our device in health-compromised individuals infected with a viral pathogen. We are also the majority owner of Exosome Sciences, Inc. (ESI), a company focused on the discovery of exosomal biomarkers to diagnose and monitor life-threatening diseases. Included among ESI's endeavors is the advancement of a TauSome™ biomarker candidate to diagnose Chronic Traumatic Encephalopathy (CTE) in the living. ESI previously documented that TauSome levels in former NFL players to be 9x higher than same age-group control subjects.

On March 10, 1999, Aethlon, Inc., a California corporation, Hemex, Inc., a Delaware corporation and the accounting predecessor to Aethlon, Inc., and Bishop, Inc., a publicly-traded company, completed an Agreement and Plan of Reorganization structured to result in Bishop, Inc.'s acquisition of all of the outstanding common shares of Aethlon, Inc. and Hemex, Inc. Under the plan's terms, Bishop, Inc. issued shares of its common stock to the stockholders of Aethlon, Inc. and Hemex, Inc. such that Bishop, Inc. then owned 100% of each company. Upon completion of the transaction, Bishop, Inc. was renamed Aethlon Medical, Inc. Our executive offices are located at 9635 Granite Ridge Drive, Suite 100, San Diego, California 92123. Our telephone number is (858) 459-7800. Our website address is [www.aethlonmedical.com](http://www.aethlonmedical.com). Our website and the information contained on our website are not incorporated into this prospectus or the registration statement of which it forms a part.

#### For the Fiscal Years Ended March 31, 2017 and 2016

#### Results of Operations

##### Revenues

We recorded government contract revenue in the fiscal years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016. This revenue arose from work performed under our government contract with the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency, or DARPA, and our subcontract with Battelle Memorial Institute, or Battelle (both of which are now completed), as follows:

	Fiscal Year Ended 3/31/17	Fiscal year Ended 3/31/16	Change in Dollars
DARPA contract	\$ 387,438	\$ 863,011	\$ (475,573)
Battelle subcontract	4,635	23,561	(18,926)
Total government contract revenue	<u>\$ 392,073</u>	<u>\$ 886,572</u>	<u>\$ (494,499)</u>

##### DARPA Contract

We entered into a contract with DARPA on September 30, 2011. Under the DARPA award, we were engaged to develop a therapeutic device to reduce the incidence of sepsis, a fatal bloodstream infection that often results in the death of combat-injured soldiers. The award from DARPA was a fixed-price contract with potential total payments to us of \$6,794,389 over the course of five years. Fixed price contracts require the achievement of multiple, incremental milestones to receive the full award during each year of the contract. Under the terms of the contract, we performed certain incremental work towards the achievement of specific milestones against which we invoiced the government for fixed payment amounts.

Originally, only the base year (year one of the contract) was effective for the parties; however, DARPA subsequently exercised its option on the remaining years of the contract. The milestones were comprised of planning, engineering and clinical targets, the achievement of which in some cases required the participation and contribution of third-party participants under the contract. We commenced work under the contract in October 2011 and completed the contract in September 2016.

In February 2014, DARPA reduced the scope of our contract in years three through five of the contract. The reduction in scope focused our research on exosomes, viruses and blood processing instrumentation. This scope reduction reduced the possible payments under the contract by \$858,469 over years three through five.

In the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017, we invoiced the U.S. Government for the final two milestones under our DARPA contract in the aggregate amount of \$387,438. In the fiscal year ended March 31, 2016, we invoiced the U.S. Government for four milestones under our DARPA contract in the amount of \$863,011.

#### *Battelle Subcontract*

We entered into a subcontract agreement with Battelle in March 2013. Battelle was chosen by DARPA to be the prime contractor on the systems integration portion of the original DARPA contract, and we are one of several subcontractors on that systems integration project. The Battelle subcontract is under a time and materials basis and we began generating revenues under the subcontract in the three months ended September 30, 2013. That contract has now concluded. The Battelle subcontract was our first cost-reimbursable contract.

Our revenue under this contract was a function of cost reimbursement plus an overhead mark-up for hours devoted to the project by specific employees (with specific hourly rates for those employees), for travel expenses related to the project, for any equipment purchased for the project and for the cost of any consultants hired by us to perform work on the project. Each payment required approval by the program manager at Battelle.

#### *Operating Expenses*

Consolidated operating expenses were \$6,490,430 for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017 compared to \$5,271,406 in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2016, an increase of \$1,219,024. The net increase of \$1,219,024 was due to increases in payroll and related expenses of \$1,396,050, which was partially offset by a decrease in professional fees of \$97,504 and a decrease in general and administrative expense of \$79,522.

The \$1,396,050 increase in payroll and related expenses was principally driven by a \$1,983,465 increase in our stock-based compensation due to the vesting of restricted stock units granted during the fiscal year, which was partially offset by a \$371,041 decrease in cash payroll and related expenses of Aethlon Medical due primarily to reductions in headcount and in bonus payments and by a \$216,374 decrease in the payroll and related expenses of Exosome due to headcount reductions.

The \$97,504 decrease in our professional fees arose from a \$97,316 decrease in DARPA-related professional fees coupled with a decrease in our non-DARPA-related professional fees of \$6,230, which were partially offset by an increase in Exosome's professional fees of \$6,042. The primary factor in our \$97,316 decrease in our DARPA-related professional fees was the completion of our DARPA contract in September 2016.

The \$79,522 decrease in general and administrative expenses primarily arose from a decrease in the general and administrative expenses at Exosome of \$68,036 and a decrease in our non-DARPA-related activities of \$29,823. Those decreases were partially offset by an increase in the general and administrative expenses in our DARPA-related activities of \$18,337.

#### *Other Expense*

In the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017, we recognized other expenses of \$1,208,369 compared to \$573,782 of other expense in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2016. The following table breaks out the various components of our other expense over the fiscal years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016:

	Components of Other Expense in Fiscal Year Ended		
	March 31, 2017	March 31, 2016	Change
Loss on debt extinguishment	\$ 558,198	\$ —	\$ 558,198
Interest and other debt expenses	304,330	573,782	(269,452)
Warrant repricing expense	345,841	—	345,841
Total other expense	<u>\$ 1,208,369</u>	<u>\$ 573,782</u>	<u>\$ 634,587</u>



## Loss on Debt Extinguishment

Our aggregate loss on debt extinguishment for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017 arose from a \$616,889 loss associated with the June 2016 amendments to our November 2014 convertible notes coupled with a gain on debt extinguishment of \$58,691, which netted to an overall loss on debt extinguishment of \$558,198 - see below.

**June 2016 Amendments** - This loss on debt extinguishment arose from the Amendments (the “Amendments”) to our November 2014 convertible notes. The Amendments provided that the maturity date of the notes was extended from June 1, 2016 to July 1, 2017 and that the conversion price was reduced from \$5.60 per share of common stock to \$5.00 per share of common stock. In addition, we reduced the purchase price of warrants issued in connection with the notes from \$8.40 per share to \$5.00 per share. In connection with these modifications, each of the Investors signed a consent and waiver providing its consent under certain restrictive provisions, and waiving certain rights, including a right to participate in certain offerings made by us, under a securities purchase agreement dated June 23, 2015, (the “2015 SPA”) to which we, the Investors and certain other investors are parties, in order to facilitate an at-the-market equity program described in the liquidity and capital resources section of this report below. This loss also included an \$80,000 fee to extend the November 2014 convertible notes from June 1, 2016 to July 1, 2017. The \$80,000 amount was not a cash payment but rather was added to the principal of the notes.

**December 2016 Financing** - In connection with the issuance of the December 2016 10% Convertible Notes, the conversion price of the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes was reduced from \$5.00 to \$4.00 per share and the expiration date of the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes was extended from July 1, 2017 to July 1, 2018.

The modification of the Notes was evaluated under FASB Accounting Standards Codification (“ASC”) Topic No. 470-50-40, “Debt Modification and Extinguishments”. Therefore, according to the guidance, the instruments were determined to be substantially different, and the transaction qualified for extinguishment accounting. As a result, we recorded a gain on debt extinguishment of \$58,691, which is included in other (income) expenses in the accompanying condensed consolidated statements of operations. The recording of the modified Notes resulted in a beneficial conversion of \$233,748 which is the result of the effective conversion price of the new Notes being less than the market price of the underlying common stock on the date of modification.

## Loss on Warrant Repricing

On June 27, 2016, we and certain investors (the “Unit Investors”) entered into Consent and Waiver and Amendment agreements (the “CWAs”), relating to an aggregate of 264,000 Warrants to Purchase Common Stock (the “Unit Warrants”) we had issued to the Unit Investors on December 2, 2014 pursuant to a Securities Purchase Agreement dated November 26, 2014 (the “2014 SPA”). In the CWAs, each of the Unit Investors provided its consent under certain restrictive provisions, and waived certain rights, including a right to participate in certain offerings made by us, under the 2014 SPA in order to facilitate the at-the-market equity program described in the notes to the Financial Statements. Pursuant to the CWAs, we reduced the Exercise Price (as defined in the Unit Warrants) from \$15.00 per share of common stock to \$5.00 per share of common stock.

On June 27, 2016, each of the Unit Investors also entered into a Consent and Waiver providing its consent under certain provisions, and waiving certain rights, including a right to participate in certain offerings made by us, under the 2015 SPA in order to facilitate the at-the-market equity program described in the notes to the Financial Statements.

We measured the change in fair value that arose from the reduction in exercise price from \$15.00 to \$5.00 and recorded a charge of \$345,841 to our other expense to reflect this change.

There was no comparable loss on debt extinguishment in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2016.

## Interest and other debt expenses

Our interest and other debt expense decreased by \$269,452 from the fiscal year ended March 31, 2016 to the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017. The following table breaks out the various components of our interest expense over the fiscal years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016:

	Components of Interest Expense and Other Debt Expenses in Fiscal Year Ended		
	March 31, 2017	March 31, 2016	Change
Interest expense	\$ 83,891	\$ 56,549	\$ 27,342
Amortization of deferred financing costs	27,641	144,683	(117,042)
Amortization of note discounts	192,798	372,550	(179,752)
Total interest and other debt expenses	<u>\$ 304,330</u>	<u>\$ 573,782</u>	<u>\$ (269,452)</u>

As noted in the above table, the primary factors in the \$269,452 overall decrease in interest and other debt expenses was a \$179,752 decrease in the amortization of note discounts and a \$117,042 decrease in the amortization of deferred financing costs.

As a result of the above factors, our net loss before noncontrolling interests increased from \$4,958,616 for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2016 to \$7,306,726 for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017.

#### ***Liquidity and Capital Resources***

At March 31, 2017, we had a cash balance of \$1,559,701 and working capital of \$985,496. This compares to a cash balance of \$2,123,737 and working capital of \$1,849,891 at March 31, 2016. Significant additional financing must be obtained in order to provide a sufficient source of operating capital and to allow us to continue to operate as a going concern. In addition, we will need to raise capital to complete anticipated future human clinical trials in the U.S. We anticipate the primary source of this additional financing will be from proceeds of the Company's at-the-market offering program and other forms equity placements.

We raised \$2,759,355 in net proceeds from sales of common stock under our S-3 registration statement during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017. However, we will require significant additional financing to finalize the current and expected additional future clinical trials in the U.S., as well as fund all of our continued research and development activities for the Hemopurifier and other future products through the remainder of the fiscal year ending March 31, 2018. In addition, as we expand our activities, our overhead costs to support personnel, laboratory materials and infrastructure will increase. Should the financing we require to sustain our working capital needs be unavailable to us on reasonable terms, if at all, when we require it, we may be unable to support our research and FDA review activities including our planned clinical trials. The failure to implement our research and clearance activities would have a material adverse effect on our ability to commercialize our products.

Future capital requirements will depend upon many factors, including progress with pre-clinical testing and clinical trials, the number and breadth of our clinical programs, the time and costs involved in preparing, filing, prosecuting, maintaining and enforcing patent claims and other proprietary rights, the time and costs involved in obtaining regulatory approvals, competing technological and market developments, as well as our ability to establish collaborative arrangements, effective commercialization, marketing activities and other arrangements. We expect to continue to incur increasing negative cash flows and net losses for the foreseeable future.

#### ***Going Concern***

The accompanying consolidated financial statements have been prepared assuming that we will continue as a going concern, which contemplates, among other things, the realization of assets and satisfaction of liabilities in the ordinary course of business. We have incurred continuing losses from operations and at March 31, 2017 had an accumulated deficit of approximately \$93,778,000. These factors, among other matters, raise substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern. A significant amount of additional capital will be necessary to advance the development of our products to the point at which they may become commercially viable. We intend to fund operations, working capital and other cash requirements for the fiscal year ending March 31, 2018 through debt and/or equity financing arrangements.

We are currently addressing our liquidity issue by seeking additional investment capital through issuances of common stock under our existing S-3 registration statement and by applying for additional grants issued by government agencies in the United States. We believe that our cash on hand and funds expected to be received from additional debt and equity financing arrangements will be sufficient to meet our liquidity needs for fiscal 2018. However, no assurance can be given that we will receive any funds in addition to the funds we have received to date.

The successful outcome of future activities cannot be determined at this time and there is no assurance that, if achieved, we will have sufficient funds to execute our intended business plan or generate positive operating results.

The consolidated financial statements do not include any adjustments related to this uncertainty and as to the recoverability and classification of asset carrying amounts or the amount and classification of liabilities that might result should we be unable to continue as a going concern.

## Cash Flows

Cash flows from operating, investing and financing activities, as reflected in the accompanying Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows, are summarized as follows (in thousands):

	(In thousands) For the year ended	
	March 31, 2017	March 31, 2016
Cash (used in) provided by:		
Operating activities	\$ (3,506)	\$ (4,329)
Investing activities	(16)	(9)
Financing activities	2,958	5,607
Net (decrease) increase in cash	\$ (564)	\$ 1,269

We used cash in our operating activities due to our losses from operations. Net cash used in operating activities was approximately \$3,506,000 in fiscal 2017 compared to net cash used in operating activities of approximately \$4,329,000 in fiscal 2016, a decrease of approximately \$823,000. The \$823,000 decrease was primarily due to the combination of the change in collection of accounts receivable of approximately \$206,000, an increase in our accounts payable and other current liabilities of approximately \$369,000, and a decrease in fiscal 2017 in the cash used in operations before changes in operating assets and liabilities of approximately \$236,000.

### Net Cash from Investing Activities.

During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017, we purchased approximately \$16,000 of equipment while in March 31, 2016, we purchased approximately \$9,000 of equipment, an increase of approximately \$7,000 in our investing activities.

### Net Cash from Financing Activities.

Net cash generated from financing activities decreased from approximately \$5,607,000 in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2016 to approximately \$3,506,000 in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017. In fiscal 2017, we raised approximately \$2,759,000 from the issuance of common stock and approximately \$577,000 from the issuance of convertible notes. That source of cash from our financing activities was partially offset by the use of approximately \$379,000 to pay for the tax withholding on restricted stock units. The net cash provided by financing activities in fiscal 2016 was all from the issuance of common stock.

At the date of this filing, we plan to invest significantly into purchases of our raw materials and into our contract manufacturing arrangement.

## Current Events

In April 2017, we agreed with two individual investors to exchange 11,497 restricted shares for the cancellation of 22,993 warrants.

In April 2017, we issued 15,000 shares of restricted common stock at a price of \$2.24 per share in payment for digital communications consulting services valued at \$33,600 based on the value of the services provided.

In April 2017, 46,125 RSUs held by our executives were exchanged into the same number of shares of our common stock. As our executives elected to return a portion of their RSU's in exchange for the Company paying the related withholding taxes on the share issuance, 23,655 of the RSUs were cancelled and we issued a net 22,470 shares to our executives.

In April 2017, we terminated a previously recorded but unissued share award of 68,000 shares under a restricted stock grant to our CEO and issued to him 32,674 shares as a net settlement of shares and the Company paid the withholding taxes associated with that share issuance in return for the cancellation of 35,326 shares. The compensation cost of that restricted stock grant had been fully recorded over prior fiscal years, therefore no expense was recorded regarding this net issuance.

In the period since March 31, 2017, sold 1,000 shares of common stock under our Common Stock Sales Agreement with H.C. Wainwright. We raised aggregate net proceeds of \$1,903 (net of \$63 in commissions to H.C. Wainwright and \$133 in other offering expenses) under this agreement at an average price of \$1.90 per share of net proceeds.

In June 2017, we issued options to four of our employees to purchase 34,500 shares of common stock at a price of \$1.68 per share, the closing price on the date of the approval of the option grants by our compensation committee.

In June 2017, we entered into an Exchange Agreement with two institutional investors under which we issued 57,844 restricted shares in exchange for the cancellation of 77,125 warrants held by those investors. Additionally, we agreed with those investors that they would extend the expiration dates of convertible notes held by those investors from July 1, 2018 to July 1, 2019 in exchange for the reduction of the conversion price of those notes from \$4.00 per share to \$3.00 per share.

From April 1, 2017 through September 12, 2017, we entered into sales under our ATM facility of 601,504 shares of common stock for aggregate net proceeds to us of \$1,650,314.

### ***Critical Accounting Policies***

#### **Use of Estimates**

The preparation of consolidated financial statements in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America (“GAAP”) requires us to make a number of estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements. Such estimates and assumptions affect the reported amounts of expenses during the reporting period. On an ongoing basis, we evaluate estimates and assumptions based upon historical experience and various other factors and circumstances. We believe our estimates and assumptions are reasonable in the circumstances; however, actual results may differ from these estimates under different future conditions. We believe that the estimates and assumptions that are most important to the portrayal of our financial condition and results of operations, in that they require the most difficult, subjective or complex judgments, form the basis for the accounting policies deemed to be most critical to us. These critical accounting estimates relate to revenue recognition, stock purchase warrants issued with notes payable, beneficial conversion feature of convertible notes payable, impairment of intangible assets and long lived assets, stock compensation, deferred tax asset valuation allowance, and contingencies.

#### **Fair Value Measurements**

We measure the fair value of applicable financial and non-financial instruments based on the following fair value hierarchy:

- Level 1: Quoted market prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities.
- Level 2: Observable market based inputs or unobservable inputs that are corroborated by market data.
- Level 3: Unobservable inputs that are not corroborated by market data.

The hierarchy noted above requires us to minimize the use of unobservable inputs and to use observable market data, if available, when determining fair value.

The fair value of derivative liabilities was determined based on unobservable inputs that are not corroborated by market data, which is a Level 3 classification. We recorded derivative liabilities on our balance sheet at fair value with changes in fair value recorded in our consolidated statements of operations. At March 31, 2017, we had no derivative liabilities.

#### **Revenue Recognition**

With respect to revenue recognition, we entered into a government contract with DARPA and have recognized revenue during the fiscal years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016 of \$387,438 and \$863,011, respectively, under such contract. We adopted the Milestone method of revenue recognition for the DARPA contract under Financial Accounting Standards Board’s Accounting Standards Codification (“ASC”) 605-28 “Revenue Recognition – Milestone Method” and we believe we meet the requirements under ASC 605-28 for reporting contract revenue under the Milestone Method for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016.

We also recognize revenue for a secondary smaller contract under a time and materials non-fixed price basis where we recognize revenue as the services are performed.

#### Stock Purchase Warrants

We grant warrants in connection with the issuance of certain notes payable and other financing transactions. When such warrants are classified as equity, we measure the relative estimated fair value of such warrants which represents a discount from the face amount of the notes payable. Such discounts are amortized to interest expense over the term of the notes. We analyze such warrants for classification as either equity or derivative liabilities and value them based on binomial lattice models.

#### Beneficial Conversion Feature of Notes Payable

The convertible feature of certain notes payable provides for a rate of conversion that is below market value. Such feature is normally characterized as a "beneficial conversion feature" of which we measure the estimated fair value in circumstances in which the conversion feature is not required to be separated from the host instrument and accounted for separately, and record that value in the consolidated financial statements as a discount from the face amount of the notes. Such discounts are amortized to interest expense over the term of the notes.

#### Share-based Compensation

We account for share-based compensation awards using the fair-value method and record such expense based on the grant date fair value in the consolidated financial statements over the requisite service period.

#### Derivative Instruments

We evaluate free-standing derivative instruments (or embedded derivatives) to properly classify such instruments within equity or as liabilities in our financial statements. Our policy is to settle instruments indexed to our common shares on a first-in-first-out basis.

The classification of a derivative instrument is reassessed at each reporting date. If the classification changes as a result of events during a reporting period, the instrument is reclassified as of the date of the event that caused the reclassification. There is no limit on the number of times a contract may be reclassified.

Instruments classified as derivative liabilities are remeasured each reporting period (or upon reclassification) and the change in fair value is recorded on our consolidated statement of operations in other expense (income). We had no derivative instruments at March 31, 2017 and at March 31, 2016.

#### Income Taxes

Deferred tax assets are recognized for the future tax consequences attributable to the difference between the consolidated financial statements and their respective tax basis. Deferred income taxes reflect the net tax effects of (a) temporary differences between the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities for financial reporting purposes and the amounts reported for income tax purposes, and (b) tax credit carryforwards. We record a valuation allowance for deferred tax assets when, based on our best estimate of taxable income (if any) in the foreseeable future, it is more likely than not that some portion of the deferred tax assets may not be realized.

#### *Off-Balance Sheet Arrangements*

We have not entered into any off-balance sheet arrangements that have or are reasonably likely to have a current or future effect on our financial condition, changes in financial condition, revenues or expenses, results of operations, liquidity, capital expenditures or capital resources that is material to investors.

#### *Convertible Notes Payable and Warrants*

##### DECEMBER 2016 10% CONVERTIBLE NOTES

In December 2016, we entered into a securities purchase agreement (the "Securities Purchase Agreement") with two accredited investors (collectively, the "Holders"), pursuant to which the Holders purchased an aggregate of \$680,400 principal amount of Notes (inclusive of due diligence fee of \$30,000 deemed paid as a subscription amount in the form of a Note in the principal amount of \$32,400) for an aggregate cash subscription amount of \$600,000 and (b) warrants to purchase 127,575 shares of Common Stock (collectively, the "Warrants").

The Notes bear interest at the rate of 10% per annum, and the principal amount and all accrued and unpaid interest thereon is convertible into shares of our common stock at a \$4.00 per share conversion price, which is subject to customary adjustment provisions for stock splits, dividends, recapitalizations and the like. The Notes mature on July 1, 2018 and are subject to customary and usual terms for events of default and the like. Each Holder has contractually agreed to restrict its ability to convert its Note such that the number of shares of the Common Stock held by the Holder and its affiliates after such exercise does not exceed 4.99% of our then issued and outstanding shares of Common Stock.

The Warrants issued to the Holders are exercisable for a period of five years from the date of issuance at an exercise price of \$4.50, subject to adjustment. A Holder may exercise a Warrant by paying the exercise price in cash or by exercising the Warrant on a cashless basis. In the event a Holder exercises a Warrant on a cashless basis, we will not receive any proceeds. The exercise price of the Warrants is subject to customary adjustments provision for stock splits, stock dividends, recapitalizations and the like. Each Holder has contractually agreed to restrict its ability to exercise its Warrant such that the number of shares of the Common Stock held by the Holder and its affiliates after such exercise does not exceed 4.99% of our then issued and outstanding shares of Common Stock.

The estimated relative fair value of Warrants issued in connection with the Notes was recorded as a debt discount and is being amortized as additional interest expense over the term of the underlying debt. We recorded debt discount of \$232,718 based on the relative fair value of these Warrants. In addition, as the effective conversion price of the Notes was less than market price of the underlying common stock on the date of issuance, we recorded an additional debt discount of \$262,718 related to the beneficial conversion feature. We also recorded deferred financing costs of \$102,940, which was composed of an 8% original issue discount of \$50,400, a \$30,000 due diligence fee (which was paid in the form of a note), \$22,500 in legal fees, and a \$40 bank charge. The combination of the above items led to a combined discount against the convertible notes of \$598,376.

#### NOVEMBER 2014 10% CONVERTIBLE NOTES

In November 2014, we entered into a subscription agreement with two accredited investors providing for the issuance and sale of (i) convertible promissory notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$527,780 (the “Notes”) and (ii) five year warrants to purchase up to 47,125 shares of common stock at a fixed exercise price of \$8.40 per share (the “Warrants”). These Notes bear interest at the annual rate of 10% and originally matured on April 1, 2016.

The aggregate gross cash proceeds to us were \$415,000 after subtracting legal fees of \$35,000, a \$27,780 due diligence fee and an original issuance discount of \$50,000. We recorded deferred financing costs of \$112,780 to reflect the legal fees, due diligence fee and original issuance discount and will amortize those costs over the life of the Notes using the effective interest method.

These Notes are convertible at the option of the holders into shares of our common stock at a fixed price of \$5.60 per share, for up to an aggregate of 94,246 shares of common stock. There are no registration requirements with respect to the shares of common stock underlying the Notes or the Warrants.

The estimated relative fair value of Warrants issued in connection with the Notes was recorded as a debt discount and is amortized as additional interest expense over the term of the underlying debt. We recorded debt discount of \$240,133 based on the relative fair value of these Warrants. In addition, as the effective conversion price of the Notes was less than market price of the underlying common stock on the date of issuance, we recorded an additional debt discount of \$287,647 related to the beneficial conversion feature.

#### Initial Amendment of the November 2014 10% Convertible Note Terms

On November 12, 2015, we entered into an amendment of terms (“Amendment of Terms”) with the two investors that participated in the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes. The Amendment of Terms modified the terms of the subscription agreement, Notes and Warrants held by those investors to, among other things, extended the maturity date of the Notes from April 1, 2016 to June 1, 2016, temporarily reduced the number of shares that we must reserve with respect to conversion of the Notes, and temporarily suspended the time period during which one of the investors may exercise its Warrants. In exchange for the investors’ agreements in the Amendment of Terms, we paid one of the investors a cash fee of \$90,000, which we recorded as deferred financing costs and amortized over the remaining term of the notes.

#### Second Amendment and Extension of the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes

On June 27, 2016, we and certain investors entered into further Amendments (the “Amendments”) to the Notes and the Warrants. The Amendments provide that the Maturity Date (as defined in the Notes) was extended from June 1, 2016 to July 1, 2017 and that the conversion price per share of the Notes was reduced from \$5.60 per share of common stock to \$5.00 per share of common stock. In addition, we reduced the purchase price (as defined in the Warrants) from \$8.40 per share to \$5.00 per share of common stock. In connection with these modifications, each of the investors signed a Consent and Waiver providing its consent under certain restrictive provisions, and waiving certain rights, including a right to participate in certain offerings made by us, under a Securities Purchase Agreement dated June 23, 2015, (the “2015 SPA”) to which we, the investors and certain other investors are parties, in order to facilitate an at-the-market equity program (see Note 6).

The Amendments also increase the principal amount of the Notes to \$692,811 (in the aggregate) to (i) include accrued and unpaid interest through June 15, 2016, and (ii) increase the principal amount by \$80,000 (in the aggregate) as an extension fee for the extended maturity date of the Notes. With respect to each Note, we entered into an Allonge to Convertible Promissory Note (each, an “Allonge”) reflecting the changes in the principal amount, Maturity Date and conversion price of the Note.

We also issued to the investors new warrants (the “New Warrants”) to purchase an aggregate of 30,000 shares of common stock with a Purchase Price (as defined in the New Warrants) of \$5.00 per share of common stock. We issued the New Warrants in substantially the same form as the prior Warrants, and the New Warrants will expire on November 6, 2019, the same date on which the prior Warrants will expire.

The modification of the Notes was evaluated under FASB Accounting Standards Codification (“ASC”) Topic No. 470-50-40, “Debt Modification and Extinguishments”. Therefore, according to the guidance, the instruments were determined to be substantially different, and the transaction qualified for extinguishment accounting. As a result, we recorded a loss on debt extinguishment of \$536,889 and recognized an extension fee expense of \$80,000, which are included in other (income) expenses in the accompanying condensed consolidated statements of operations. The debt extinguishment is comprised from the fair value of prior warrants issued in connection with the Notes of \$287,676, as well as \$325,206 related to beneficial conversion feature and offset by debt discount of \$75,993. The beneficial conversion feature is a result of the effective conversion price of the new Notes being less than the market price of the underlying common stock on the date of modification.

### **Third Amendment and Extension of the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes**

In connection with the issuance of the December 2016 10% Convertible Notes, the conversion price of the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes was reduced from \$5.00 to \$4.00 per share and the expiration date of the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes was extended from July 1, 2017 to July 1, 2018.

The modification of the Notes was evaluated under FASB Accounting Standards Codification (“ASC”) Topic No. 470-50-40, “Debt Modification and Extinguishments”. Therefore, according to the guidance, the instruments were determined to be substantially different, and the transaction qualified for extinguishment accounting. As a result, we recorded a gain on debt extinguishment of \$58,691, which is included in other (income) expenses in the accompanying condensed consolidated statements of operations. The recording of the modified Notes resulted in a beneficial conversion of \$233,748 which is the result of the effective conversion price of the new Notes being less than the market price of the underlying common stock on the date of modification.

### **March 2017 Registered Direct Offering**

On March 22, 2017, we entered into a Securities Purchase Agreement (the “Purchase Agreement”) with certain institutional investors (the “Investors”) for the sale of 575,000 shares of our common stock, par value \$0.001 per share (the “Common Stock”), at a purchase price of \$3.50 per share, in a registered direct offering. Concurrently with the sale of the Common Shares, pursuant to the Purchase Agreement, we also sold in a private placement warrants to purchase 575,000 shares of Common Stock (the “Warrants”). The aggregate gross proceeds for the sale of the Common Shares and Warrants will be approximately \$2 million. Subject to certain ownership limitations, the Warrants will be initially exercisable commencing six months from the issuance date at an exercise price equal to \$3.95 per share of Common Stock, subject to adjustments as provided under the terms of the Warrants. The Warrants will be exercisable for five years from the initial exercise date.

The net proceeds to us from the transactions, after deducting the placement agent’s fees and expenses (not including the Wainwright Warrants, as defined below), our estimated offering expenses, and excluding the proceeds, if any, from the exercise of the Warrants, were \$1,804,250. We intend to use the net proceeds from the transactions for general corporate purposes.

The Common Shares (but not the Warrants or shares issuable upon exercise of the Warrant) were sold by us pursuant to an effective shelf registration statement on Form S-3, which was filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”) on May 5, 2016 and subsequently declared effective on May 12, 2016 (File No. 333-211151) (the “Registration Statement”), and the base prospectus dated as of May 12, 2016 contained therein. We filed a prospectus supplement and the accompanying prospectus with the SEC in connection with this sale of the Common Shares.

We also reduced the dollar amount of our current at the market offering to \$9,532,294 as a result of this offering and prior sales under the at the market offering.

The purchase agreement also covered the exchange of 264,000 warrants issued to the purchasers thereunder in December 2014 for 198,000 shares of our common stock. Further, in exchange for certain waivers given by the purchasers and certain other investors in a private placement of the Company in June 2015, the warrants issued in such private placement were amended to (i) reduce the exercise price to \$3.95 per share, (ii) make the warrants non-exercisable for a period of six months from the date of amendment, and (iii) extend the term of those warrants by six months.

The Warrants and the shares issuable upon exercise of the Warrants were sold and issued without registration under the Securities Act of 1933 (the “Securities Act”) in reliance on the exemptions provided by Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act as transactions not involving a public offering and Rule 506 promulgated under the Securities Act as sales to accredited investors, and in reliance on similar exemptions under applicable state laws.

We also entered into an engagement letter (the “Engagement Letter”) with Rodman & Renshaw, a unit of H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC (“Rodman”), pursuant to which Rodman agreed to serve as exclusive placement agent for the issuance and sale of the Common Shares and Warrants. We paid Rodman an aggregate fee equal to 6% of the gross proceeds received by us from the sale of the securities in the transactions. Pursuant to the Engagement Letter, we also agreed to grant to Rodman or its designees warrants to purchase up to 3% of the aggregate number of shares sold in the transaction (the “Rodman Warrants”). The Engagement Letter has a nine month tail and right of first offer periods, indemnity and other customary provisions for transactions of this nature. The Rodman Warrants have substantially the same terms as the Warrants, except that the exercise price is 125% of \$3.50. The Rodman Warrants and the shares issuable upon exercise of the Rodman Warrants were issued in reliance on the exemption from registration provided by Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act as transactions not involving a public offering and in reliance on similar exemptions under applicable state laws. We also paid Rodman a reimbursement for non-accountable expenses in the amount of \$50,000.

#### ***Securities Issued for Debt***

Historically, we have issued securities for debt to reduce our obligations to avoid using our cash resources. In the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017 we issued 33,091 unregistered common shares for repayment in full of notes, including accrued interest, in the aggregate amount of \$144,718. In the fiscal year ended March 31, 2016 we did not issue any securities for debt. The average price discount of the common stock issued for debt in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017 was approximately 13%.

#### ***For the Three Months Ended June 30, 2017 and 2016***

#### **RESULTS OF OPERATIONS**

#### **THREE MONTHS ENDED JUNE 30, 2017 COMPARED TO THE THREE MONTHS ENDED JUNE 30, 2016**

#### **Revenues**

We did not record any government contract revenue in the three months ended June 30, 2017 and we recorded government contract revenue in the three months ended June 30, 2016. This revenue arose from work performed under our government subcontract with Battelle Memorial Institute as follows:

	Three Months Ended 6/30/17	Three Months Ended 6/30/16	Change in Dollars
Battelle Subcontract	–	4,635	(4,635)
Total Government Contract Revenue	\$ –	\$ 4,635	\$ (4,635)



## DARPA Contract

Previously, we generated contract revenue under a contract with DARPA that we entered into on September 30, 2011. Under the DARPA award, we were engaged to develop a therapeutic device to reduce the incidence of sepsis, a fatal bloodstream infection that often results in the death of combat-injured soldiers. That contract was completed on September 30, 2016 and the related subcontract with Battelle was completed in March 2017.

## Operating Expenses

Consolidated operating expenses for the three months ended June 30, 2017 were \$1,160,249 in comparison with \$1,136,287 for the comparable period a year ago. This increase of \$23,962, or 2.1%, was due to increases in payroll and related expenses of \$285,240, which was partially offset by a \$224,726 decrease in professional fees and a \$36,552 decrease in general and administrative expenses.

The \$285,240 increase in payroll and related expenses was primarily due to a \$230,200 increase in stock-based compensation. The increase in stock-based compensation was due to the RSU grants to our officers and directors in August 2016. Our cash-based payroll and related expenses increased by \$55,040 due to headcount additions in our scientific staff.

The \$224,726 decrease in our professional fees was due to decreases in our non-DARPA-related professional fees of \$208,236, in our DARPA-related professional fees of \$11,600 and in our professional fees at ESI of \$4,890. The \$208,236 decrease in our non-DARPA-related professional fees was due to a \$189,247 decrease in our legal fees, a \$34,000 decrease in business development expenses, and a \$25,993 decrease in our investor relations fees.

The \$36,552 decrease in general and administrative expenses was primarily due to decreases of \$21,264 in our DARPA-related general and administrative expenses and \$14,706 in the general and administrative expenses at ESI.

## Other Expense

Other expense during the three months ended June 30, 2017 and 2016 consisted of losses on debt extinguishment, warrant repricing expense, losses on share for warrant exchanges and interest expense. Other expense for the three months ended June 30, 2017 was other expense of \$685,302 in comparison with other expense of \$1,004,897 for the three months ended June 30, 2016.

The following table breaks out the various components of our other expense for both periods:

	Three Months Ended 6/30/17	Three Months Ended 6/30/16	Change
Loss on Debt Extinguishment	\$ 376,909	\$ 616,889	\$ (239,980)
Loss on Warrant Repricing	–	345,841	(345,841)
Loss on Share for Warrant Exchanges	119,789	–	119,789
Interest Expense	188,604	42,167	146,437
Total Other Expense	<u>\$ 685,302</u>	<u>\$ 1,004,897</u>	<u>\$ (319,595)</u>

## Loss on Debt Extinguishment

Our loss on debt extinguishment for the three months ended June 30, 2017 arose from a \$376,909 loss associated with the June 2017 amendments to our convertible notes. This compared to a loss of debt extinguishment of \$616,889 for the three months ended June 30, 2016 - see below for additional information.

June 2017 Amendments – The \$376,909 loss on debt extinguishment in the three months ended June 30, 2017 arose from an Exchange Agreement with two institutional investors under which we issued 57,844 restricted shares in exchange for the cancellation of 77,125 warrants held by those investors (see Loss on Share for Warrant Exchanges below). Additionally, we agreed with those investors that they would extend the expiration dates of the convertible notes held by those investors from July 1, 2018 to July 1, 2019 in exchange for the reduction of the conversion price of those notes from \$4.00 per share to \$3.00 per share. The modification of the notes was evaluated under FASB Accounting Standards Codification (“ASC”) Topic No. 470-50-40, “Debt Modification and Extinguishments”. Therefore, according to the guidance, the instruments were determined to be substantially different, and the transaction qualified for extinguishment accounting.

June 2016 Amendments - This loss on debt extinguishment arose from the Amendments (the “Amendments”) to our November 2014 convertible notes. The Amendments provided that the maturity date of the notes was extended from June 1, 2016 to July 1, 2017 and that the conversion price was reduced from \$5.60 per share of common stock to \$5.00 per share of common stock. In addition, we reduced the purchase price of warrants issued in connection with the notes from \$8.40 per share to \$5.00 per share. In connection with these modifications, each of the Investors signed a consent and waiver providing its consent under certain restrictive provisions, and waiving certain rights, including a right to participate in certain offerings made by us, under a securities purchase agreement dated June 23, 2015, (the “2015 SPA”) to which we, the Investors and certain other investors are parties, in order to facilitate an at-the-market equity program described in the liquidity and capital resources section of this report below. This loss also included an \$80,000 fee to extend the November 2014 convertible notes from June 1, 2016 to July 1, 2017. The \$80,000 amount was not a cash payment but rather was added to the principal of the notes.

This modification of the notes was also evaluated under ASC Topic No. 470-50-40, “Debt Modification and Extinguishments”. Therefore, according to the guidance, the instruments were determined to be substantially different, and the transaction qualified for extinguishment accounting.

#### Loss on Warrant Repricing

On June 27, 2016, we and certain investors (the “Unit Investors”) entered into Consent and Waiver and Amendment agreements (the “CWAs”), relating to an aggregate of 264,000 Warrants to Purchase Common Stock (the “Unit Warrants”) we had issued to the Unit Investors on December 2, 2014 pursuant to a Securities Purchase Agreement dated November 26, 2014 (the “2014 SPA”). In the CWAs, each of the Unit Investors provided its consent under certain restrictive provisions, and waived certain rights, including a right to participate in certain offerings made by us, under the 2014 SPA in order to facilitate the at-the-market equity program described in the notes to the Financial Statements. Pursuant to the CWAs, we reduced the Exercise Price (as defined in the Unit Warrants) from \$15.00 per share of common stock to \$5.00 per share of common stock.

On June 27, 2016, each of the Unit Investors also entered into a Consent and Waiver providing its consent under certain provisions, and waiving certain rights, including a right to participate in certain offerings made by us, under the 2015 SPA in order to facilitate the at-the market equity program described in the notes to the Financial Statements.

We measured the change in fair value that arose from the reduction in exercise price from \$15.00 to \$5.00 and recorded a charge of \$345,841 to our other expense to reflect this change.

#### Loss on Share for Warrant Exchanges

During the three months ended June 30, 2017, we agreed with two individual investors to exchange 11,497 restricted shares for the cancellation of 22,993 warrants. Additionally, during the period, we entered into an Exchange Agreement with two institutional investors under which we issued 57,844 restricted shares in exchange for the cancellation of 77,125 warrants held by those investors. We measured the fair value of the shares issued and the fair value of the warrants exchanged for those shares and recorded losses for each of those exchanges based on the changes in fair value between the instruments exchanged.

#### Interest Expense

Interest expense was \$188,604 for the three months ended June 30, 2017 compared to \$42,167 in the corresponding prior period, an increase of \$146,437. The various components of our interest expense are shown in the following table:

	Three Months Ended 6/30/17	Three Months Ended 6/30/16	Change
Interest Expense	\$ 33,802	\$ 14,526	\$ 19,276
Amortization of Deferred Financing Costs	—	27,641	(27,641)
Amortization of Note Discounts	154,802	—	154,802
Total Interest Expense	<u>\$ 188,604</u>	<u>\$ 42,167</u>	<u>\$ 146,437</u>

As noted in the above table, the most significant factor in the \$146,437 increase in interest expense was the \$154,802 increase in the amortization of note discounts, which related to the amortization against the discount on our convertible notes. Other smaller factors in the change in our total interest were a \$27,641 decrease in the amortization of deferred financing costs and a \$19,276 increase in our contractual interest expense.

## Net Loss

As a result of the changes in revenues and expenses noted above, our net loss before noncontrolling interests decreased from approximately \$2,137,000 in the three month period ended June 30, 2016 to \$1,846,000 in the three month period ended June 30, 2017.

Basic and diluted loss attributable to common stockholders were (\$0.21) for the three month period ended June 30, 2017 compared to (\$0.28) for the period ended June 30, 2016.

## LIQUIDITY AND CAPITAL RESOURCES

At June 30, 2017, we had a cash balance of \$327,206 and negative working capital of \$42,649. This compares to a cash balance of \$1,559,701 and working capital of \$985,496 at March 31, 2017.

Significant additional financing must be obtained in order to provide a sufficient source of operating capital and to allow us to continue to operate as a going concern. In addition, we will need to raise capital to complete the approved human clinical trial in the U.S. We anticipate the primary sources of this additional financing will be from an equity offering of up to \$7.5 million based on a registration statement on Form S-1 that we filed with the SEC on July 31, 2017, proceeds from sales of common stock under our at-the-market offering program, from registered direct equity placements from our S-3 registration statement and from convertible debt financing.

On March 22, 2017, we entered into a Securities Purchase Agreement (the "Purchase Agreement") with certain institutional investors (the "Investors") for the sale of 575,000 shares (the "Common Shares") of our common stock, par value \$0.001 per share (the "Common Stock"), at a purchase price of \$3.50 per share, in a registered direct offering. Concurrently with the sale of the Common Shares, pursuant to the Purchase Agreement, we also sold in a private placement warrants to purchase 575,000 shares of Common Stock (the "Warrants"). The aggregate gross proceeds for the sale of the Common Shares and Warrants were approximately \$2 million. Subject to certain ownership limitations, the Warrants will be initially exercisable commencing six months from the issuance date at an exercise price equal to \$3.95 per share of Common Stock, subject to adjustments as provided under the terms of the Warrants. The Warrants will be exercisable for five years from the initial exercise date.

The net proceeds to us from the transactions, after deducting the placement agent's fees and expenses (not including the Wainwright Warrants, as defined below), our estimated offering expenses, and excluding the proceeds, if any, from the exercise of the Warrants, were \$1,804,250. We intend to use the net proceeds from the transactions for general corporate purposes.

During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017, we also raised \$955,105 from sales of our common stock under our ATM financing facility and subsequent to March 31, 2017 through the date of this filing, we have raised \$42,279 from sales of our common stock under our ATM financing facility.

Those financings, coupled with previously existing funds on hand and revenues from our previous government contracts, have financed our operations through the first quarter of the fiscal year ending March 31, 2018. However, we will require significant additional financing to complete the current and expected additional future clinical trials in the U.S., as well as fund all of our continued research and development activities for the Hemopurifier through the twelve month period from the issuance date of these interim financial statements. In addition, as we expand our activities, our overhead costs to support personnel, laboratory materials and infrastructure will increase. Should the financing we require to sustain our working capital needs be unavailable to us on reasonable terms, if at all, when we require it, we may be unable to support our research and U.S. Food and Drug Administration, or FDA, clearance activities including our planned clinical trials. The failure to implement our research and clearance activities would have a material adverse effect on our ability to commercialize our products.

Future capital requirements will depend upon many factors, including progress with pre-clinical testing and clinical trials, the number and breadth of our clinical programs, the time and costs involved in preparing, filing, prosecuting, maintaining and enforcing patent claims and other proprietary rights, the time and costs involved in obtaining regulatory approvals, any continued delays in completing our clinical trials, competing technological and market developments, as well as our ability to establish collaborative arrangements, effective commercialization, marketing activities and other arrangements. We expect to continue to incur increasing negative cash flows and net losses for the foreseeable future.

## Going Concern

Management does not expect existing cash as of June 30, 2017 to be sufficient to fund the Company's operations for at least twelve months from the issuance date of these interim financial statements. These financial statements have been prepared on a going concern basis which assumes the Company will continue to realize its assets and discharge its liabilities in the normal course of business. As of June 30, 2017, the Company has incurred losses totaling approximately \$95,620,000 since inception, has not yet generated material revenue from operations, and will require additional funds to maintain its operations. These factors raise substantial doubt regarding the Company's ability to continue as a going concern within one year after the consolidated financial statements are issued. The Company's ability to continue as a going concern is dependent upon its ability to generate future profitable operations and obtain the necessary financing to meet its obligations and repay its liabilities arising from normal business operations when they become due. The Company intends to finance operating costs over the next twelve months through its existing financial resources and we may also raise additional capital through equity offerings, including an equity offering of up to \$7.5 million based on a preliminary S-1 registration statement that we filed with the SEC on July 31, 2017, debt financings, collaborations and/or licensing arrangements. If adequate funds are not available on acceptable terms, we may be required to delay, reduce the scope of, or curtail, our operations. The accompanying consolidated financial statements do not include any adjustments to the recoverability and classification of recorded asset amounts and classification of liabilities that might be necessary should the Company be unable to continue as a going concern.

## Cash Flows

Cash flows from operating, investing and financing activities, as reflected in the accompanying Condensed Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows, are summarized as follows:

	(In thousands)	
	For the three months ended	
	June 30, 2017	June 30, 2016
Cash used in:		
Operating activities	\$ (1,075)	\$ (828)
Investing activities	(24)	(2)
Financing activities	(134)	—
Net decrease in cash	<u>\$ (1,233)</u>	<u>\$ (830)</u>

NET CASH USED IN OPERATING ACTIVITIES. We used cash in our operating activities due to our losses from operations. Net cash used in operating activities was approximately \$1,075,000 in the three months ended June 30, 2017 compared to \$828,000 in the three months ended June 30, 2016, an increase of \$247,000.

NET CASH USED IN INVESTING ACTIVITIES. We used approximately \$24,000 of cash to purchase laboratory and office equipment in the three months ended June 30, 2017 compared to approximately \$2,000 in the three months ended June 30, 2016.

NET CASH USED IN FINANCING ACTIVITIES. In the three months ended June 30, 2017 we used approximately \$134,000 in our financing activities primarily due to the payment of approximately \$136,000 for tax withholding on vested rights.

At the date of this filing, we plan to invest significantly into purchases of our raw materials and into our contract manufacturing arrangement subject to successfully raising additional capital.

## CRITICAL ACCOUNTING POLICIES

The preparation of condensed consolidated financial statements in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America requires us to make a number of estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the financial statements. Such estimates and assumptions affect the reported amounts of expenses during the reporting period. On an ongoing basis, we evaluate estimates and assumptions based upon historical experience and various other factors and circumstances. We believe our estimates and assumptions are reasonable in the circumstances; however, actual results may differ from these estimates under different future conditions.

We believe that the estimates and assumptions that are most important to the portrayal of our financial condition and results of operations, in that they require the most difficult, subjective or complex judgments, form the basis for the accounting policies deemed to be most critical to us. These critical accounting policies relate to revenue recognition, measurement of stock purchase warrants issued with notes payable, beneficial conversion feature of convertible notes payable, impairment of intangible assets and long lived assets, stock compensation, and the classification of warrant obligations, and evaluation of contingencies. We believe estimates and assumptions related to these critical accounting policies are appropriate under the circumstances; however, should future events or occurrences result in unanticipated consequences, there could be a material impact on our future financial condition or results of operations.

There have been no changes to our critical accounting policies as disclosed in our Form 10-K for the year ended March 31, 2017.

## OFF-BALANCE SHEET ARRANGEMENTS

We have no obligations required to be disclosed herein as off-balance sheet arrangements.

## BUSINESS

### Overview and Corporate History

We are a medical technology company focused on addressing unmet needs in global health and biodefense. The Aethlon Hemopurifier® is a clinical-stage therapeutic device designed for the single-use removal of life-threatening viruses from the circulatory system of infected individuals. We believe the Hemopurifier® can fulfill the studied for the broad-spectrum treatment of life-threatening highly glycosylated viruses that are not addressed with an already approved treatment countermeasure objectives set forth by the U.S. Government to protect citizens from bioterror and pandemic threats. In human studies, the Hemopurifier® has been administered to HIV, Hepatitis-C and Ebola infected individuals. Additionally, the Hemopurifier® has also been validated to capture Zika virus, Lassa virus, MERS-CoV, Cytomegalovirus, Epstein-Barr virus, Herpes Simplex virus, Chikungunya virus, Dengue virus, West Nile virus, Smallpox related viruses, H1N1 Swine Flu virus, H5N1 Bird Flu virus, and the reconstructed Spanish flu virus of 1918. In several cases, these validations were conducted in collaboration with leading government or non-government research institutes. In the United States, we are focused on the clinical advancement of the Hemopurifier® through FDA-reviewed clinical studies. We recently concluded an FDA reviewed feasibility study to demonstrate safety of our device in health compromised individuals infected with a viral pathogen. We are also the majority owner of Exosome Sciences, Inc. (ESI), a company focused on the discovery of exosomal biomarkers to diagnose and monitor life-threatening diseases. Included among ESI's endeavors is the advancement of a TauSome™ biomarker candidate to diagnose Chronic Traumatic Encephalopathy (CTE) in the living. ESI previously documented that TauSome levels in former NFL players to be 9x higher than same age-group control subjects.

On March 10, 1999, Aethlon, Inc., a California corporation, Hemex, Inc., a Delaware corporation and the accounting predecessor to Aethlon, Inc., and Bishop, Inc., a publicly traded company, completed an Agreement and Plan of Reorganization structured to result in Bishop, Inc.'s acquisition of all of the outstanding common shares of Aethlon, Inc. and Hemex, Inc. Under the plan's terms, Bishop, Inc. issued shares of its common stock to the stockholders of Aethlon, Inc. and Hemex, Inc. such that Bishop, Inc. then owned 100% of each company. Upon completion of the transaction, Bishop, Inc. was renamed Aethlon Medical, Inc. Our executive offices are located at 9635 Granite Ridge Drive, Suite 100, San Diego, California 92123. Our telephone number is (858) 459-7800. All references to "us" or "we" are references to Aethlon Medical, Inc., combined with its subsidiary.

### Target Market and Strategy

Our primary therapeutic business segment is directed toward commercializing our Hemopurifier® to address a significant unmet need in global health; the broad-spectrum treatment of life-threatening highly glycosylated viruses that are not addressed with an already approved antiviral drug agent. Of the approximate 300 viruses known to be infectious to man, only 9 are addressed with approved antiviral drugs. We also believe our device can serve as a first-line countermeasure against newly emerging viruses or those that have been genetically engineered to be agents of bioterrorism. We are not aware of an antiviral drug strategy to combat such threats. We have also demonstrated that our Hemopurifier® can combine to improve the benefit of an antiviral drug regimen.

In oncology indications, we have been exploring the ability of the Hemopurifier® to capture tumor-derived exosomes, which promote cancer progression and seed the spread of metastasis.

The second facet of our business is conducted through ESI, which is our diagnostic business segment that is advancing the validation of exosomal biomarkers to diagnose and monitor life-threatening disease conditions that may be current or future therapeutic targets of Aethlon Medical.

We also pursue grants or contracts with the U.S. Government. We recently completed two Department of Defense (DOD) contracts with the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA) that involved the advancement of a device to treat sepsis. In these programs, we completed 29 of 29 milestone tasks, which resulted in the generation of approximately \$5,936,000 in revenue from our primary contract with DARPA over the period October 1, 2011 through September 30, 2016. While both of those contracts are now complete, we intend to conduct further government contract business in the future.

## **Our Lead Device: The Aethlon Hemopurifier**

The Aethlon Hemopurifier is a device that selectively targets the rapid elimination of circulating viruses and tumor-secreted exosomes that promote cancer progression. More specifically, the Hemopurifier addresses antiviral drug-resistance in Hepatitis C virus and Human Immunodeficiency Virus-infected individuals; serves as a countermeasure against viral pathogens not addressed by drug or vaccine therapies; and, we believe, represents the first therapeutic strategy to address cancer promoting exosomes. In clinical studies conducted in India, safety and efficacy observations of Hemopurifier therapy have been observed in both Hepatitis C virus and Human Immunodeficiency Virus-infected individuals. We have recently completed the treatment of eight patients in our first U.S. Food and Drug Administration, or FDA, approved study of Hemopurifier therapy in the U.S. and are preparing our final report on that study for submission to the FDA, as part of our study reporting responsibilities. The feasibility study was conducted on Hepatitis C virus (HCV) infected dialysis patients, which reported that an average capture of 154 million HCV viruses (in International Units, I.U.) within the Hemopurifier during the four-hour treatments. Early feasibility studies allow for prompt clinical evaluation of devices to provide proof of principle and initial clinical safety data. This early feasibility study was suggested, because nonclinical methods were not viewed as adequate to advance the development process and many of the viruses and exomes that the Hemopurifier has the potential to provide clinical benefit cannot be studied due to ethical reasons. We were granted entry into FDA's Expedited Access Pathway (EAP) Program on September 8, 2017 which is allowing us to obtain input from FDA as to what indication(s) and studies we should include in our clinical program to obtain an initial approval of the Hemopurifier as a medical device. The EAP program is a voluntary program for certain medical devices that demonstrate the potential to address unmet medical needs for life threatening or irreversibly debilitating diseases or conditions that are subject to premarket approval applications (PMA), premarket notification (510[k]) or requests for De Novo designation. The Hemopurifier is being studied for the treatment of life-threatening broad-spectrum highly glycosylated viruses that are not addressed with an already approved treatment. It has not yet been established, however, whether such reduction in viral load will result in an improvement in patient mortality or other clinically- beneficial endpoints for any disease or condition to meet the criteria for the EAP program.

## **The Scientific Mechanism of the Hemopurifier**

The Hemopurifier is an extracorporeal device designed for the single-use removal of viruses, viral toxins, and deleterious exosomes from the circulatory system of treated patients. Delivery of Hemopurifier therapy can occur through the established infrastructure of continuous renal replacement therapy and dialysis instruments routinely found in hospitals and clinics worldwide. Many extracorporeal techniques, such as dialysis or plasmapheresis, are designed to remove circulating particles solely by molecule size. However, the Hemopurifier incorporates a lectin affinity agent that is designed to bind to a unique high mannose signature that is abundant on the surface of tumor-derived exosomes and glycoproteins that reside on the outer membrane of infectious viruses. The Hemopurifier is designed to provide a broad-spectrum treatment against life-threatening highly glycosylated viruses that are not addressed with an already approved treatment to inhibit the presence of certain cancer and infectious disease related particles. A single treatment with the Hemopurifier can last from three to six and one half hours in duration.

## **The Hemopurifier - U.S. Clinical Trials**

On March 13, 2017, we disclosed that we concluded an FDA approved feasibility study of Hemopurifier therapy, which demonstrated safety of our device in health - compromised individuals infected with a viral pathogen as a model to suggest the potential of our device as a broad-spectrum treatment against life-threatening highly glycosylated viruses that are not addressed with an already approved treatment countermeasure against infectious viral pathogens, where a reduction in viral load would be deemed beneficial to improve patient mortality or another clinically-beneficial endpoint. More specifically, the feasibility study was conducted on Hepatitis C virus (HCV) - infected dialysis patients at DaVita MedCenter Dialysis in Houston, Texas. The principal investigator of the study was Dr. Ronald Ralph. We reported that there were no device-related adverse events in the eight enrolled subjects who met the study inclusion-exclusion criteria. We also reported that an average capture of 154 million HCV viruses (in International Units, I.U.) within the Hemopurifier® during 4-hour treatments.

On August 11, 2017, we submitted an Expedited Access Pathway (EAP) program submission to the FDA, which included a request for a "Breakthrough Technology" designation, which was established under the 21<sup>st</sup> Century Cures Act signed into law in 2016. The proposed indications for use includes "The Hemopurifier is a single-use device indicated for the treatment of life-threatening highly glycosylated viruses that are not addressed with an approved treatment," and on September 8, 2017, we received a letter from the FDA informing us that our combination product and proposed indication for use meets the criteria and has been granted EAP designation. Through this program, we will work collaboratively with FDA to design a data development plan and regulatory pathway intended to achieve FDA-approval of the device, and through this process, we believe the regulatory advancement of our device with the FDA will be accelerated.

Additionally, we are advancing the Hemopurifier® for the broad-spectrum treatment of life-threatening highly glycosylated viruses that are not addressed with an already approved treatment to fulfill the treatment objectives of the 2016 Public Health Emergency Medical Countermeasure Enterprise (PHEMCE), which defines the plan of the U.S. government to protect citizens against bioterror and pandemic threats. Based on preclinical and early-phase or feasibility clinical studies, we believe the Hemopurifier® has the potential to treat broad-spectrum life-threatening highly glycosylated viruses that are not addressed with an already approved treatment as a treatment countermeasure. Our goal would be for our device to be procured by the U.S. government for the strategic national stockpile. Currently, we have not begun discussions for inclusion in the strategic national stockpile.

## **The Hemopurifier - Antiviral Studies in India**

Previously, we conducted Hepatitis C virus treatment studies at the Apollo Hospital, Fortis Hospital, and most recently the Medanta Medicity Institute in India.

In the Medanta Medicity Institute study, twelve Hepatitis C virus-infected individuals were enrolled to receive three six-hour Hemopurifier treatments during the first three days of a 48-week peginterferon+ribavirin treatment regimen. The study was conducted under the leadership of Dr. Vijay Kher at the Medanta Medicity Institute, a multi-specialty medical institute established to be a premier center for medical tourism in India. Dr. Kher's staff reported that Hemopurifier therapy was well tolerated and without device-related adverse events in the twelve treated patients.

Of these twelve patients, ten completed the Hemopurifier-peginterferon+ribavirin treatment protocol, including eight genotype-1 patients and two genotype-3 patients. Eight of the ten patients achieved a sustained virologic response, which is the clinical definition of treatment cure and is defined as undetectable Hepatitis C virus in the blood 24 weeks after the completion of the 48-week peginterferon+ribavirin drug regimen. Both genotype-3 patients achieved a sustained virologic response, while six of the eight genotype-1 patients achieved a sustained virologic response.

Of the ten patients who completed the full treatment protocol, five also achieved a rapid virologic response, defined as undetectable Hepatitis C virus in the blood at day 30 of therapy. Rapid virologic response represents the clinical endpoint that best predicts sustained virologic response cure rates resulting from peginterferon+ribavirin therapy. As a point of reference, the landmark Individualized Dosing Efficacy vs Flat Dosing to Assess Optimal Pegylated Interferon Therapy study of 3,070 Hepatitis C virus genotype-1 patients documented that 10.35% (n=318/3070) of peginterferon+ribavirin-treated patients achieved a rapid virologic response. Patients who achieved a rapid virologic response had sustained virologic response rates of 86.2% (n=274/318) versus sustained virologic response rates of 32.5% (n=897/2752) in non-rapid virologic response patients. Two of the genotype-1 patients who achieved a rapid virologic response also achieved an immediate virologic response, defined as undetectable Hepatitis C virus in the blood seven days after initiation of Hemopurifier-peginterferon+ribavirin treatment protocol. The earliest measured report of undetectable Hepatitis C virus in blood in the Individualized Dosing Efficacy vs Flat Dosing to Assess Optimal Pegylated Interferon Therapy study was on day 14 of the study.

Data from two patients was not included in the reported Hemopurifier-peginterferon+ribavirin dataset. One of these patients was a genotype-5 patient who discontinued peginterferon+ribavirin therapy at day 180, yet still achieved a sustained virologic response. The second patient was a genotype-3 patient who also achieved a sustained virologic response, yet was unable to tolerate peginterferon+ribavirin therapy and discontinued therapy at day-90. Overall, ten of the twelve patients who enrolled in the study achieved a sustained virologic response and seven of the twelve patients achieved a rapid virologic response.

## **EBOLA Virus**

Time Magazine named the Hemopurifier® to be a "Top 25 Invention" as the result of treating an ebola-infected physician at Frankfurt University Hospital in Germany. The physician was comatose with multiple organ failure at the time of treatment with the Hemopurifier®. At the American Society of Nephrology Annual Meeting, Dr. Helmut Geiger, Chief of Nephrology at Frankfurt University Hospital reported that the patient received a single 6.5 hour Hemopurifier® treatment. Prior to treatment, viral load was measured at 400,000 c/ml. Post-treatment viral load at reported to be 1,000 c/ml. Dr. Geiger also reported that 242 million copies of Ebola virus were measured to be captured within the Hemopurifier® during treatment. The patient made a full recovery.

## **Hemopurifier - Human Immunodeficiency Virus; Single Proof Study**

In addition to treating Hepatitis C virus-infected individuals, we have conducted a single proof-of-principle treatment study related to the treatment of Human Immunodeficiency Virus. In the study, Hemopurifier therapy reduced viral load by 93% in a Human Immunodeficiency Virus-Acquired Immunodeficiency Syndrome-infected individual without the administration of antiviral drug therapy. The study protocol provided for 12 Hemopurifier treatments, each four hours in duration, which were administered over the course of one month.

Researchers at the Morehouse School of Medicine have since discovered that the Hemopurifier is able to capture exosomes that transport negative regulatory factor protein, which is reported to suppress the immune response in Human Immunodeficiency Virus-infected individuals.

## **Exosome Sciences, Inc. - Diagnostic Candidates**

Through our majority-owned subsidiary Exosome, which is our diagnostic product-oriented business segment, we are developing exosome-based product candidates to diagnose and monitor neurological disorders and cancer. Since it began operations in 2013, Exosome researchers have disclosed that they have isolated brain-specific biomarkers associated with Alzheimer's Disease and Chronic Traumatic Encephalopathy (CTE). Specific to CTE, Exosome is participating in a research collaboration with The Boston University CTE Center to study the correlation of a biomarker known as tauosome with CTE.

In January 2017, Exosome announced plans to initiate a clinical study involving retired NFL players and a data-supported biomarker candidate to detect and monitor CTE in living individuals. CTE is a neurodegenerative disease that has often been found in American football players, boxers and other individuals with a history of repetitive head trauma. At present, CTE diagnosis is determined after death through an analysis of brain tissue.

The goal of the study is to establish a clinical collaboration with up to 200 former professional football players and clinical investigators at multiple U.S. locations. If fully enrolled, the study would be the largest to date in former NFL players, who are at a high risk of suffering from CTE. The goal of the study will be to further validate a CTE biomarker candidate known as plasma exosomal tau, or a TauSome™.

Kendall Van Keuren-Jensen, Ph.D., Co-Director of the Translational Genomics Research Institute's (TGen) Center for Noninvasive Diagnostics in Phoenix, will serve as principal investigator for the study. Dr. Van Keuren-Jensen is neurodegenerative disease thought leader whose research includes discovery and detection of biomarkers for central nervous system disorders.

### **U.S. Government Contract with the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency**

On September 30, 2011, we entered into a \$6.8 million multi-year contract with the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency, or DARPA, part of the Department of Defense, resulting from our response to a program entitled "Dialysis-Like Therapeutics." Under this contract, our tasks include the development of a dialysis-like device to prevent sepsis, a fatal bloodstream infection that is often the cause of death in combat-injured soldiers.

The initial award from DARPA was a fixed-price contract with potential total payments to us of \$6,794,389 over the course of five years. As noted below, such contract was subsequently reduced by \$858,469. Fixed price contracts require the achievement of multiple, incremental milestones to receive the full award during each year of the contract. Under the terms of the contract, we are required to perform certain incremental work towards the achievement of specific milestones against which we will invoice the government for fixed payment amounts.

Originally, only the base year (year one of the contract) was effective for the parties, however, DARPA subsequently exercised the option on the second, third and fourth years of the contract. DARPA has the option to enter into the contract for year five. The milestones are comprised of planning, engineering and clinical targets, the achievement of which in some cases will require the participation and contribution of third party participants under the contract. We cannot assure you that we alone, or with third party participants, will meet such milestones to the satisfaction of the government and in compliance with the terms of the contract or that we will be paid the full amount of the contract revenues during any year of the remaining contract term. We cannot assure you that DARPA will exercise its option to continue the contract for year five. We commenced work under the contract in October 2011.

In February 2014, DARPA reduced the scope of our contract in years three through five of the contract. The reduction in scope focused our research on exosomes, viruses and blood processing instrumentation. This scope reduction will reduce the possible payments under the contract by \$858,469 over years three through five.

The DARPA contract required us to perform certain scientific research and development activities geared toward the achievement of specific milestones set forth in the contract. In the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017, we invoiced the U.S. Government for the final two milestones under our DARPA contract in the aggregate amount of \$387,438. In the fiscal year ended March 31, 2016, we invoiced the U.S. Government for four milestones under our DARPA contract in the amount of \$863,011. As the DARPA contract was completed on September 30, 2016, we do not expect to record any future revenue related to that contract.



## Subcontract with Battelle Memorial Institute

We entered into a subcontract agreement with Battelle in March 2013. Battelle was chosen by DARPA to be the prime contractor on the systems integration portion of the original DARPA contract, and we were one of several subcontractors on that systems integration project. The Battelle subcontract was under a time and materials basis, and we began generating revenues under the subcontract in the three months ended September 30, 2013. That contract has now concluded. The Battelle subcontract was our first cost-reimbursable contract.

Our revenue under this contract was a function of cost reimbursement plus an overhead mark-up for hours devoted to the project by specific employees (with specific hourly rates for those employees), for travel expenses related to the project, for any equipment purchased for the project and for the cost of any consultants hired by us to perform work on the project. Each payment required approval by the program manager at Battelle.

## Research and Development Costs

A substantial portion of our operating budget is used for research and development activities. The cost of research and development, all of which has been charged to operations, amounted to approximately \$673,000 and \$782,000 in the fiscal years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

## Intellectual Property

We currently own or have license rights to a number of U.S. and foreign patents and patent applications and endeavor to continually improve our intellectual property position. We consider the protection of our technology, whether owned or licensed, to the exclusion of use by others, to be vital to our business. While we intend to focus primarily on patented or patentable technology, we may also rely on trade secrets, unpatented property, know-how, regulatory exclusivity, patent extensions and continuing technological innovation to develop our competitive position. We also own certain trademarks.

### Patents

We have been exclusively assigned all rights and title to and interest in an invention and related worldwide patent rights for a method to treat cancer under an assignment agreement with the London Health Science Center Research, Inc. The invention provides for the "Depression of anticancer immunity through extracorporeal removal of microvesicular particles" (including exosomes) for which the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office issued a patent in 2012 (patent #8,288,172) and for which we have filed additional patent applications domestically and abroad (patent applications #US13/623662, #US14/180093, #US14/185033, #EP7,752,778.6, #HK9,104,740.6, #IN8139/DELNP/2008 and #CA2644855). Please see the tables below for more information regarding these patents and patent applications.

The agreement provides for an upfront payment of 800 shares of restricted common stock and a 2% royalty on any future net sales. We are also responsible for paying certain patent application and filing costs. Under the assignment agreement, the London Health Science Center Research, Inc. sold and assigned all of its rights, title and interest in the worldwide patents to us.

The following table lists all of our issued patents and patent applications, including their ownership status:

### Patents Issued in the United States

PATENT #	PATENT NAME	ISSUANCE DATE	OWNED OR LICENSED	EXPIRATION DATE
9,707,333	Extracorporeal removal of microvesicular particles	7/18/17	Owned	10/2/29
9,364,601	Extracorporeal removal of microvesicular particles	6/14/16	Owned	10/2/29
8,288,172	Extracorporeal removal of microvesicular particles (exosomes) (method patent)	10/16/12	Owned	3/30/29
7,226,429	Method for removal of viruses from blood by lectin affinity hemodialysis	6/5/07	Owned	1/20/24
6,528,057	Method for removal of HIV and other viruses from blood	3/4/03	Licensed	8/30/19

## Patent Applications in the United States

APPLICATION #	APPLICATION NAME	FILING DATE	OWNED OR LICENSED
15/121736	Brain specific exosome based diagnostics and extracorporeal therapies	8/25/16	Owned
62/541538	Multiplex cerebrospinal fluid processing system	8/04/17	Owned
14/856361	Device and method for purifying virally infected blood	9/16/15	Owned
14/790684	Affinity capture of circulating biomarkers	7/02/15	Owned
14/490418	Method for removal of viruses from blood by lectin affinity hemodialysis	9/18/14	Owned
14/185033	Extracorporeal removal of microvesicular particles	2/20/14	Owned
13/808561	Methods and compositions for quantifying exosomes	8/14/13	Owned

## Foreign Patents

PATENT #	PATENT NAME	ISSUANCE DATE	OWNED OR LICENSED	EXPIRATION DATE
2353399	Method for removal of viruses from blood by lectin affinity hemodialysis (Russia)	4/27/09	Owned	1/20/24
770344	Method for removal of HIV and other viruses from blood (Australia)	6/3/04	Licensed	8/30/19
DE69929986	Method for removal of HIV and other viruses from blood (Germany)	2/22/06	Licensed	8/30/19
1109564	Method for removal of HIV and other viruses from blood (France)	2/22/06	Licensed	8/30/19
1109564	Method for removal of HIV and other viruses from blood (Great Britain)	2/22/06	Licensed	8/30/19
1109564	Method for removal of HIV and other viruses from blood (Italy)	2/22/06	Licensed	8/30/19
2342203	Method for removal of HIV and other viruses from blood (Canada)	3/1/11	Licensed	8/30/19
1624785	Method for removal of viruses from blood by lectin affinity hemodialysis (Belgium)	7/17/13	Owned	1/20/24
1624785	Method for removal of viruses from blood by lectin affinity hemodialysis (Ireland)	7/17/13	Owned	1/20/24
1624785	Method for removal of viruses from blood by lectin affinity hemodialysis (Italy)	7/17/13	Owned	1/20/24
1624785	Method for removal of viruses from blood by lectin affinity hemodialysis (Great Britain)	7/17/13	Owned	1/20/24
1624785	Method for removal of viruses from blood by lectin affinity hemodialysis (France)	7/17/13	Owned	1/20/24
1624785	Method for removal of viruses from blood by lectin affinity hemodialysis (Germany)	7/17/13	Owned	1/20/24
2516403	Method for removal of viruses from blood by lectin affinity hemodialysis (Canada)	8/12/14	Owned	1/20/24
2591359	Methods for quantifying exosomes (Germany)	3/01/17	Owned	7/07/31
2591359	Methods for quantifying exosomes (France)	3/01/17	Owned	7/07/31
2591359	Methods for quantifying exosomes (Great Britain)	3/01/17	Owned	7/07/31
2591359	Methods for quantifying exosomes (Spain)	3/01/17	Owned	7/07/31

## Foreign Patent Applications

APPLICATION #	APPLICATION NAME	FILING DATE	OWNED OR LICENSED
EP20070752778	Extracorporeal removal of microvesicular particles (exosomes) (Europe)	3/9/07	Owned
9,104,740.6	Extracorporeal removal of microvesicular particles (exosomes) (Hong Kong)	3/9/07	Owned
8139/DELNP/2008	Extracorporeal removal of microvesicular particles (exosomes) (India)	3/9/07	Owned
2644855	Extracorporeal removal of microvesicular particles (Canada)	3/9/07	Owned
EP20110804372	Methods and compositions for quantifying exosomes (Europe)	7/7/11	Owned

## International Patent Applications

APPLICATION #	APPLICATION NAME	FILING DATE	OWNED OR LICENSED
PCT/US2016/062194	Exosomal tau as a biomarker for brain disorders	11/16/16	Owned
PCT/US2016/ 028482	Methods for delivering regional citrate anticoagulation during extracorporeal blood treatments	4/20/16	Owned

We expect that our ability to enforce our patents and proprietary rights in many countries will be adversely impacted due to possible changes in law, our lack of familiarity with foreign law, or our lack of professional resources in jurisdictions outside the U.S. We cannot guarantee that any patents issued or licensed to us, including within the U.S., will provide us with competitive advantages or will not be challenged by others, or will not expire prior to our successful commercialization of our products. Furthermore, we cannot be certain that others will not independently develop similar products or will not design around patents issued or licensed to us. We cannot guarantee that patents that are issued will not be challenged, invalidated or infringed upon or designed around by others, or that the claims contained in such patents will not infringe the patent claims of others, or provide us with significant protection against competitive products, or otherwise be commercially valuable. We may need to acquire licenses under patents belonging to others for technology potentially useful or necessary to us. If any such licenses are required, we cannot be certain that they will be available on terms acceptable to us, if at all. To the extent that we are unable to obtain patent protection for our products or technology, our business may be materially adversely affected by competitors who develop substantially equivalent technology.

## Trademarks

We have obtained registered trademarks in the U.S. for the marks Exosome Sciences®, Hemopurifier and Aethlon Medical, Inc. and have applied for the Tausome trademark in the U.S., which application is currently pending. We have applied for trademark protection on Hemopurifier in India and that application is currently pending. We also have common law trademark rights in Aethlon ADAPTTM and ELLSATM.

## Licensing and Assignment Agreements

Effective January 1, 2000, we entered into an agreement with a related party (HEMEX) under which an invention and related patent rights for a method of removing Human Immunodeficiency and other viruses from the blood using the Hemopurifier were assigned to us by the inventors in exchange for an 8.75% royalty to be paid on future net sales of the patented product or process and shares of our common stock. On March 4, 2003, the related patent (patent #6,528,057) was issued and we issued 3,922 shares of restricted common stock to that related party. The license runs for the life of the patent, which expires in August 2019.

On November 7, 2006, we entered into an exclusive assignment agreement with the London Health Science Center Research, Inc. under which an invention and related patent rights for a method to treat cancer were assigned to us. The invention provides for the "Extracorporeal removal of microvesicular particles" for which the U.S. Patent and Trademark Office allowed a patent (patent #8,288,172) in the U.S. as of October 2012. The agreement provides for an upfront payment of 800 shares of restricted common stock and a 2% royalty on any future net sales. We are also responsible for paying certain patent application and filing costs. Under the assignment agreement, we own the patents outright for the life of the patent, which expires in March 2029. Under certain circumstances, ownership of the patents may revert back to the London Health Science Center Research, Inc. if there is an uncured substantial breach of the assignment agreement.

## **Industry**

The industry for treating infectious disease and cancer is extremely competitive, and companies developing new treatment procedures face significant capital and regulatory challenges. Additionally, as the Hemopurifier is a new device, we have the additional challenge of establishing medical industry support, which will be driven by treatment data resulting from clinical studies of each disease condition that we pursue. The industry includes pharmaceutical companies and medical device companies competing to treat illnesses on a worldwide basis.

## **Competition**

We are advancing our Hemopurifier as a treatment strategy to enhance and prolong current drug therapies by removing the viral strains that cause drug resistance. We are also advancing the Hemopurifier as a tool for cancer treatment in conjunction with existing, and to be developed, cancer therapies. The Hemopurifier also may prolong life for infected patients who have become drug resistant or have been infected with a viral pathogen for which there is no drug or vaccine therapy. We believe our Hemopurifier augments the benefit of drug therapies and should not be considered a competitor to such treatments. However, if the industry considered the Hemopurifier to be a potential replacement for drug therapy, or a device that limited the need or volume of existing drug therapies, then the marketplace for the Hemopurifier would be extremely competitive. We believe our Hemopurifier is the sole therapeutic device able to selectively remove viruses and immunosuppressive proteins from circulation. However, we are aware that Asahi Kasei Kurary Medical based in Japan has created a double filtration plasmapheresis system that indiscriminately removes particles from blood in a certain molecule range that includes Hepatitis C virus. Asahi Kasei Kurary Medical is now marketing this device in Japan as an adjunct therapy for Hepatitis C virus. We may also face competition from producers of antiviral drugs and vaccines.

## **Government Regulation of Medical Devices**

The Hemopurifier is subject to regulation by numerous regulatory bodies, primarily the FDA, and comparable international regulatory agencies. These agencies require manufacturers of medical devices to comply with applicable laws and regulations governing the development, testing, manufacturing, labeling, marketing, storage, distribution, advertising and promotion, and post-marketing surveillance reporting of medical devices. Devices are generally subject to varying levels of regulatory control, the most comprehensive of which requires that a clinical evaluation program be conducted before a device receives approval for commercial distribution. Failure to obtain approval or clearance to market our product and products under development and to meet the ongoing requirements of these regulatory authorities could prevent us from commercializing the Hemopurifier and future products in the U.S. and elsewhere.

## ***Hemopurifier Investigational Device Exemption and Supplement***

In 2013, the FDA approved our investigational device exemption to initiate human clinical studies in the U.S. as a feasibility study. We were required to reach agreement with the internal review board of DaVita MedCenter Dialysis prior to beginning our U.S. clinical trial. We are also required to obtain patients' informed consent that complies with both FDA requirements and state and federal privacy regulations. We, the FDA or the internal review board at each site at which a clinical trial is being performed may suspend a clinical trial at any time for various reasons, including a belief that the risks to study subjects outweigh the benefits. Even if a trial is completed, the results of clinical testing may not demonstrate the safety and efficacy of the device, may be equivocal or may otherwise not be sufficient to obtain approval of the product. The investigational device exemption is part of the FDA's approval process. This process is discussed in detail in the "Pre-Marketing Regulations in the U.S." section below.

In December 2014, the FDA approved our request for a supplement to our investigational device exemption to establish a protocol to clinically investigate the use of the Hemopurifier for the treatment of Ebola-infected patients in the U.S. Under the supplement, we may treat up to 20 Ebola-infected persons, at no more than 10 institutions in the U.S., using the supplement protocol; however, this is not a clinical trial. We must clearly distinguish data collected in the supplement protocol from data collected in our chronic Hepatitis C virus clinical trial (discussed above). Prior to treating Ebola-infected patients, we must comply with specified patient protection procedures established by the applicable institution including its institutional review board. Also, we must report any unanticipated adverse events resulting from the supplement protocol to the FDA within 10 working days. Even if the protocol is established, and patients are treated, the results of such treatments may not demonstrate the safety and efficacy of the device. In addition, we cannot assure you that any Ebola-infected individuals will be treated under this protocol.

DaVita MedCenter Dialysis treated a total of eight patients per the protocol under our clinical trial and then notified us that it was unlikely that they would be able to locate additional HCV patients undergoing dialysis to treat as part of the trial. Therefore on April 11, 2017, we notified the FDA that we were concluding the trial with the eight patients treated. The FDA accepted that decision to terminate the trial with eight patients completed. We have six months to complete and submit the final report on the trial to the FDA.

#### ***Pre-Marketing Regulations in the U.S.***

Unless an exemption applies, each medical device distributed commercially in the United States requires either prior 510(k) clearance or premarket approval, or PMA, from the FDA. The FDA classifies medical devices into one of three classes. Class I devices are subject to only general controls, such as establishment registration and device listing, labeling, medical device reporting, and prohibitions against adulteration and misbranding. Class II medical devices generally require prior 510(k) clearance before they may be commercially marketed in the United States. Devices deemed by the FDA to pose the greatest risk, such as life-sustaining, life-supporting or implantable devices, or devices deemed not substantially equivalent to a predicate device, are placed in Class III, generally requiring submission of a PMA supported by clinical trial data. Our Hemopurifier is a Class III product, and we believe that products utilizing our Aethlon ADAPTTM system will be considered to be Class III products and thus will require submission and approval of a PMA. In the future, we may develop new products that are considered to be Class II and require the clearance of a 510(k).

##### *510(k) Clearance Pathway*

To obtain 510(k) clearance, a premarket notification must be submitted to FDA demonstrating that the proposed device is substantially equivalent to a previously cleared 510(k) device or a device that was in commercial distribution before May 28, 1976 for which the FDA has not yet called for the submission of premarket approval applications. FDA's 510(k) clearance pathway usually takes from three to twelve months, but it can take significantly longer. The FDA may require additional information, including clinical data, to make a determination regarding substantial equivalence.

After a device receives 510(k) clearance, any modification that could significantly affect its safety or effectiveness, or that would constitute a new or major change in its intended use, will require a new 510(k) clearance or, depending on the modification, require premarket approval. The FDA requires each manufacturer to determine whether the proposed change requires submission of a 510(k), or a premarket approval, but the FDA can review any such decision and can disagree with a manufacturer's determination. If the FDA disagrees with a manufacturer's determination, the FDA can require the manufacturer to cease marketing and/or recall the modified device until 510(k) clearance or premarket approval is obtained. If the FDA requires a 510(k) holder to seek 510(k) clearance or premarket approval for any modifications to a previously cleared product, the 510(k) holder also may be required to cease marketing or recall the modified device until this clearance or approval is obtained.

##### *Premarket Approval Pathway*

A PMA must be supported by extensive data, including but not limited to data obtained from technical, preclinical and clinical studies and relating to manufacturing and labeling to demonstrate to the FDA's satisfaction the safety and effectiveness of the device.

After a PMA submission is sufficiently complete, the FDA will accept the application and begin an in-depth review, which generally takes between one and three years, but may take significantly longer. During this review period, the FDA will typically request additional information or clarification of the information already provided. Also, an advisory panel of experts from outside the FDA may be convened to review and evaluate the application and provide recommendations to the FDA as to the approvability of the device. The FDA may or may not accept the panel's recommendation. In addition, the FDA will conduct a pre-approval inspection of the manufacturing facility to ensure compliance with Quality System Regulation, or QSR. New PMA applications or PMA supplements are required for modifications that affect the safety or effectiveness of the device, including, for example, certain types of modifications to the device's indication for use, manufacturing process, labeling and design. PMA supplements often require submission of the same type of information as a PMA application, except that the supplement is limited to information needed to support any changes from the device covered by the original PMA application and may not require as extensive clinical data or the convening of an advisory panel.

##### *Clinical Trials*

Clinical trials are almost always required to support a PMA. To perform a clinical trial in the United States for a significant risk device, FDA requires the device sponsor to file an Investigational Device Exemption, or IDE, application with the FDA and obtain IDE approval prior to commencing the human clinical trial. An IDE amendment or supplement must also be submitted before initiating a significant change to the clinical protocol or device under an existing IDE. The IDE application must be supported by appropriate data, such as animal and laboratory testing results, and any available data on human clinical experience, showing that it is safe to test the device in humans and that the testing protocol is scientifically sound.

The IDE must be approved in advance by the FDA for a specific number of patients. Clinical trials conducted in the U.S. for significant risk devices may begin once the IDE application is approved by the FDA and the appropriate institutional review boards, or IRBs, overseeing the welfare of the research subjects and responsible for that particular clinical trial. Under its regulations, the FDA responds to an IDE or an IDE amendment within 30 days. The FDA may approve the IDE or amendment, grant an approval with certain conditions, or identify deficiencies and request additional information. It is common for the FDA to require additional information before approving an IDE or amendment for a new trial, and thus final FDA approval on a submission may require more than the initial 30 days. The FDA may also require that a small-scale feasibility study be conducted before a pivotal trial may commence. In a feasibility trial, the FDA limits the number of patients, sites and investigators that may participate. Feasibility trials are typically structured to obtain information on safety and to help determine how large a pivotal trial should be to obtain statistically significant results.

Clinical trials are subject to extensive recordkeeping and reporting requirements. Our clinical trials must be conducted under the oversight of an IRB for the relevant clinical trial sites and must comply with FDA regulations, including but not limited to those relating to good clinical practices. We are also required to obtain the patients' informed consent in form and substance that complies with both FDA requirements and state and federal privacy and human subject protection regulations. We, the FDA or the IRB may suspend a clinical trial at any time for various reasons, including a belief that the risks to study subjects outweigh the anticipated benefits. Even if a trial is completed, the results of clinical testing may not adequately demonstrate the safety and effectiveness of the device or may otherwise not be sufficient to obtain FDA approval to market the product in the U.S.

#### ***Expedited Access Pathway***

On August 11, 2017, we submitted an Expedited Access Pathway (EAP) program submission to the FDA, which included a request for a "Breakthrough Technology" designation, which was established under the 21<sup>st</sup> Century Cures Act signed into law in 2016. The proposed indications for use includes "The Hemopurifier is a single-use device indicated for the treatment of life-threatening highly glycosylated viruses that are not addressed with an approved treatment," and on September 8, 2017, we received a letter from the FDA informing us that our combination product and proposed indication for use meets the criteria and has been granted EAP designation. Through this program, we will work collaboratively with FDA to design a data development plan and regulatory pathway intended to achieve FDA-approval of the device, and through this process, we believe the regulatory advancement of our device with the FDA will be accelerated. The EAP program is a voluntary program for certain medical devices that demonstrate the potential to address unmet medical needs for life threatening or irreversibly debilitating diseases or conditions that are subject to PMAs, premarket notification (510[k]) or requests for De Novo designation. Under EAP, the FDA works with device sponsors to try to reduce the time and cost from development to marketing decision without changing the FDA's PMA approval standard of reasonable assurance of safety and effectiveness, the standards for granting De Novo requests, or any other standards of valid scientific evidence we should include in our clinical program to obtain an initial approval of the Hemopurifier as a medical device. The Hemopurifier is being studied for the treatment of life-threatening broad-spectrum highly glycosylated viruses that are not addressed with an already approved treatment. It has not yet been established, however, whether such reduction in viral load will result in an improvement in patient mortality or other clinically- beneficial endpoints for any disease or condition to meet the criteria for the EAP program.

#### ***Post-Marketing Regulations in the U.S.***

Should our Hemopurifier device be approved for market use in the U.S. by the FDA, numerous regulatory requirements continue to apply. These include:

- the FDA's Quality System Regulation which requires manufacturers, including third-party manufacturers, to follow stringent design, testing, control, documentation and other quality assurance procedures during all aspects of the manufacturing process;
- labeling regulations and FDA prohibitions against the promotion of products for un-cleared, unapproved or off-label uses;
- clearance or approval of product modifications that could significantly affect safety or efficacy or that would constitute a major change in intended use;
- medical device reporting regulations, which require that manufacturers report to the FDA if their device may have caused or contributed to a death or serious injury or malfunctioned in a way that would likely cause or contribute to a death or serious injury if the malfunction were to recur;
- product listing and establishment registration, which helps facilitate FDA inspections and other regulatory action; and
- post-market surveillance regulations, which apply when necessary to protect the public health or to provide additional safety and effectiveness data for the device.

The regulations also require that we report to the FDA any incident in which our product may have caused or contributed to a death or serious injury or in which our product malfunctioned and, if the malfunction were to recur, would likely cause or contribute to death or serious injury.

We will also be required to register with FDA as a medical device manufacturer within 30 days of commercial distribution of our products and must obtain all necessary state permits or licenses to operate our business. As a manufacturer, we are subject to announced and unannounced inspections by FDA to determine our compliance with quality system regulation and other regulations, and these inspections may include the manufacturing facilities of our suppliers. Failure by us or by our suppliers to comply with applicable regulatory requirements can result in enforcement action by the FDA or state authorities, which may include any of the following sanctions:

- untitled letters, warning letters, fines, injunctions, consent decrees and civil penalties;
- unanticipated expenditures to address or defend such actions;
- customer notifications for repair, replacement, refunds;
- recall, detention or seizure of our products;
- operating restrictions or partial suspension or total shutdown of production;
- refusing or delaying our requests for premarket approval of new products or modified products;
- operating restrictions;
- withdrawing PMA approvals that have already been granted;
- refusal to grant export approval for our products; or
- criminal prosecution.

#### **Compliance with U.S. Health Care Laws**

We must comply with various U.S. federal and state laws, rules and regulations pertaining to healthcare fraud and abuse, including anti-kickback regulations, as well as other healthcare laws in connection with the commercialization of our products. Fraud and abuse laws are interpreted broadly and enforced aggressively by various state and federal agencies, including the U.S. Department of Justice, the U.S. Office of Inspector General for the Department of Health and Human Services and various state agencies.

The U.S. federal Anti-Kickback Statute, 42 U.S.C. § 1320a-7b, prohibits persons, including a medical device manufacturer (or a party acting on its behalf), from knowingly or willfully soliciting, receiving, offering or paying remuneration, directly or indirectly, in exchange for or to induce either the referral of an individual for a service or product or the purchasing, ordering, arranging for, or recommending the ordering of, any service or product for which payment may be made by Medicare, Medicaid or any other federal healthcare program. This statute has been interpreted to apply to arrangements between medical device manufacturers on one hand and healthcare providers on the other. The term “remuneration” is not defined in the federal Anti-Kickback Statute and has been broadly interpreted to include anything of value, such as cash payments, gifts or gift certificates, discounts, waiver of payments, credit arrangements, ownership interests, the furnishing of services, supplies or equipment, and the provision of anything at less than its fair market value. Courts have broadly interpreted the scope of the law, holding that it may be violated if merely one purpose of an arrangement is to induce referrals, irrespective of the existence of other legitimate purposes. The Anti-Kickback Statute prohibits many arrangements and practices that are lawful in businesses outside of the healthcare industry. Although there are a number of statutory exemptions and regulatory safe harbors protecting certain business arrangements from prosecution, the exemptions and safe harbors are drawn narrowly, and practices that involve remuneration intended to induce prescribing, purchasing or recommending may be subject to scrutiny if they do not qualify for an exemption or safe harbor. Our practices may not in all cases meet all of the criteria for safe harbor protection from federal Anti-Kickback Statute liability. The reach of the Anti-Kickback Statute was broadened by the recently enacted Patient Protection and Affordable Care Act of 2010 and the Health Care and Education Affordability Reconciliation Act of 2010, collectively, the Affordable Care Act or ACA, which, among other things, amends the intent requirement of the federal Anti-Kickback Statute such that a person or entity no longer needs to have actual knowledge of the statute or specific intent to violate it in order to have committed a violation. In addition, the ACA provides that the government may assert that a claim including items or services resulting from a violation of the federal Anti-Kickback Statute constitutes a false or fraudulent claim for purposes of the federal False Claims Act (discussed below) or the civil monetary penalties statute, which imposes fines against any person who is determined to have presented or caused to be presented claims to a federal healthcare program that the person knows or should know is for an item or service that was not provided as claimed or is false or fraudulent. In addition to the federal Anti-Kickback Statute, many states have their own anti-kickback laws. Often, these laws closely follow the language of the federal law, although they do not always have the same scope, exceptions, safe harbors or sanctions. In some states, these anti-kickback laws apply not only to payments made by government healthcare programs but also to payments made by other third-party payors, including commercial insurance companies.

We may also be subject to various federal and state marketing laws, such as the federal Physician Payments Sunshine Act, which generally require certain types of expenditures in the United States and the particular states to be tracked and reported. The federal Physician Payment Sunshine Act, being implemented as the Open Payments Program, requires certain pharmaceutical and medical device manufacturers to engage in extensive tracking of payments or transfers of value to physicians and teaching hospitals, maintenance of a payments database, and public reporting of the payment data. Device manufacturers with products for which payment is available under Medicare, Medicaid or the State Children's Health Insurance Program are required to track and report such payments. Moreover, several states have enacted legislation requiring pharmaceutical and medical device companies to establish marketing compliance programs or even prohibit providing meals to prescribers or other marketing related activities. Compliance with such requirements may require investment in infrastructure to ensure that tracking and reporting is performed properly. Although compliance programs can mitigate the risk of investigation and prosecution for violations of these laws, the risks cannot be entirely eliminated.

### **International Regulation**

International development and sales of medical devices are subject to foreign government regulations, which vary substantially from country to country. The time required to obtain approval by a foreign country may be longer or shorter than that required for FDA approval, and the requirements may differ. For example, the primary regulatory authority with respect to medical devices in Europe is that of the European Union. The unification of these countries into a common market has resulted in the unification of laws, standards and procedures across these countries, which may expedite the introduction of medical devices like those we are offering and developing.

The European Union has adopted numerous directives and standards regulating the design, manufacture, clinical trials, labeling and adverse event reporting for medical devices. Devices that comply with the requirements of relevant directives will be entitled to bear CE Conformity Marking, indicating that the device conforms to the essential requirements of the applicable directives and, accordingly, can be commercially distributed throughout the European Union. Actual implementation of these directives, however, may vary on a country-by-country basis.

To date, we have not begun any process to obtain the CE Mark and have no immediate plans to test or commercialize the Hemopurifier in any European Union countries.

### **Manufacturing**

Manufacturing of our Hemopurifier occurs in collaboration with a contract manufacturer based in San Diego, California that is compliant with the Good Manufacturing Practice regulations promulgated by the FDA. Our contract manufacturer is registered with the FDA. We also have received an export license from the FDA that allows the export our Hemopurifier for commercial purposes to India. To date, our manufacture of the Hemopurifier has been limited to quantities necessary to support our clinical studies.

### **Sources and Suppliers**

We are not dependent on any specific vendors for the materials used in our Hemopurifier. The key raw materials in the Hemopurifier include the affinity lectin *Galanthus nivalis* agglutinin, pharmaceutical grade diatomaceous earth, plasmapheresis cartridges and certain chemical binding agents. The affinity lectin is available from several life science supply companies in the U.S. Diatomaceous earth is available from several life science supply companies in the U.S. To date, we have purchased plasmapheresis cartridges from one vendor in Europe however similar cartridges are commercially available from vendors on a worldwide basis should that European vendor cease to be available for any reason, including prohibitive pricing. The chemical binding agents are available from a number of life science supply companies on a worldwide basis. We typically purchase our raw materials on purchase order basis. Therefore, we remain subject to risks of supply shortages and price increases that potentially could materially adversely affect our financial condition and operating results if and when we begin large scale manufacture of the Hemopurifier.

The key raw materials used by Exosome Sciences, Inc. in its research are blood samples supplied by research partners and a number of chemical and lab products commercially available from vendors on a worldwide basis. Exosome Sciences, Inc. is not dependent on any specific vendors for the materials used in its research activities.



## **Sales and Marketing**

We do not currently have any sales and marketing capability. With respect to commercialization efforts in the future, we intend to build or contract for distribution, sales and marketing capabilities for any product candidate that is approved. From time to time, we have had and are having strategic discussions with potential collaboration partners for our product candidates, although no assurance can be given that we will be able to enter into one or more collaboration agreements for our product candidates on acceptable terms, if at all.

## **Product Liability**

The risk of product liability claims, product recalls and associated adverse publicity is inherent in the testing, manufacturing, marketing and sale of medical products. We have limited clinical trial liability insurance coverage. We cannot assure you that future insurance coverage will be adequate or available. We may not be able to secure product liability insurance coverage on acceptable terms or at reasonable costs when needed. Any liability for mandatory damages could exceed the amount of our coverage. A successful product liability claim against us could require us to pay a substantial monetary award. Moreover, a product recall could generate substantial negative publicity about our products and business and inhibit or prevent commercialization of other future product candidates.

## **Employees**

We have six full-time employees consisting of our Chief Executive Officer, our President, our Chief Financial Officer, two research scientists and an executive assistant. We utilize, whenever appropriate, consultants in order to conserve cash and resources.

We believe our employee relations are good. None of our employees are represented by a labor union or are subject to collective-bargaining agreements.

## **Description of Properties**

We currently lease approximately 2,576 square feet of executive office space at 9635 Granite Ridge Drive, Suite 100, San Diego, California 92123 under a 39-month gross plus utilities lease that commenced on December 1, 2014 with an initial rental rate of \$6,054 per month. Such lease expires in March 2018. We believe this leased facility will be satisfactory for our office needs over the term of the lease.

We also lease approximately 1,700 square feet of laboratory space at 11585 Sorrento Valley Road, Suite 109, San Diego, California 92121 at the rate of \$4,838 per month on a one-year lease that expires in November 2017. We presently intend to renew this lease as we believe this leased facility will be satisfactory for our laboratory needs over the near term.

Our Exosome Sciences, Inc. subsidiary previously rented approximately 2,055 square feet of office and laboratory space at 11 Deer Park Drive, South Brunswick, New Jersey at the rate of \$3,917 per month on a one-year lease that expired in October 2015. In October 2015, Exosome Sciences, Inc. relocated to a different suite at the same office complex. Exosome Sciences leased that suite, comprised of approximately 541 square feet of office and laboratory space located at 9 Deer Park Drive, South Brunswick, New Jersey, at the rate of \$1,352 per month on a month-to-month lease basis. In January 2016, we exercised our 30-day notice to terminate the Exosome Sciences' lease in New Jersey prior to consolidating our laboratory operations in San Diego.

## **Legal Proceedings**

We may be involved from time to time in various claims, lawsuits, and/or disputes with third parties or breach of contract actions incidental to the normal course of our business operations. We are currently not involved in any litigation or any pending legal proceedings.

## DIRECTORS AND EXECUTIVE OFFICERS

The names, ages and positions of our directors and executive officers as of September 8, 2017 are listed below:

NAMES	TITLE OR POSITION	AGE
James A. Joyce (1)	Chairman, Chief Executive Officer and Secretary	55
Rodney S. Kenley (2)	President and Director	67
James B. Frakes (3)	Chief Financial Officer and Senior Vice President - Finance	60
Edward G. Broenniman	Director	80
Chetan S. Shah, MD	Director	48

- (1) Effective June 1, 2001, Mr. Joyce was appointed our President and Chief Executive Officer, replacing Mr. Barry, who served as a member of the Board of Directors until March 30, 2017. Mr. Joyce resigned from the position of President upon the appointment of Mr. Kenley to such position on October 27, 2010.
- (2) Effective October 27, 2010, Mr. Kenley was appointed as our President.
- (3) Effective September 27, 2010, Mr. Frakes was appointed as our Chief Financial Officer.

Certain additional information concerning the individuals named above is set forth below. This information is based on information furnished us by each individual noted.

### ***James A. Joyce, Chairman, CEO and Secretary***

Mr. Joyce is the founder of Aethlon Medical, Inc. and has been the Chairman of the Board and Secretary since March 1999. On June 1, 2001, our Board of Directors appointed Mr. Joyce to the additional role of CEO. Mr. Joyce also serves as the Executive Chairman of Exosome Sciences, Inc. In 1992, Mr. Joyce founded and was the sole stockholder of James Joyce & Associates, an organization that provided management consulting and corporate finance advisory services to CEOs and CFOs of publicly traded companies. Previously, from 1989 to 1991, Mr. Joyce was Chairman and Chief Executive Officer of Mission Labs, Inc. Prior to that Mr. Joyce was a principal in charge of U.S. operations for London Zurich Securities, Inc. Mr. Joyce is a graduate of the University of Maryland. We believe that Mr. Joyce is qualified to serve as our director because of his role in founding our company and his prior experience, including his experience in the extracorporeal industry and in the financial markets.

### ***Rodney S. Kenley, President and Director***

Mr. Kenley has been President and a Director since October 2010. He has 38 years of experience in healthcare, most of which have been spent in the extracorporeal blood purification arena. Mr. Kenley held several positions at Baxter Healthcare (Travenol) from 1977 through 1990 including International Marketing Manager, Business Unit Manager for Peritoneal and Hemodialysis products, Manager of New Business Development, Director of Worldwide Product Planning, Director of Advanced Product Development, and VP of Electronic Drug Infusion. Mr. Kenley founded Aksys Ltd. in January 1991 to develop and commercialize his concept of a daily home hemodialysis system which was commercially launched in 2002 as the PHD system. In 2004, Mr. Kenley initiated the development of a second-generation home hemodialysis system in partnership with DEKA Research & Development Corporation in Manchester, New Hampshire. In 2007, the assets of Aksys Ltd. were acquired by DEKA, where Mr. Kenley was employed prior to joining Aethlon Medical, Inc. Mr. Kenley received his Bachelor of Arts degree in Biology and Chemistry from Wabash College, a Master's of Science degree in Molecular Biology from Northwestern University and a Masters of Management from the Kellogg School of Management, also at Northwestern University. We believe that Mr. Kenley is qualified to serve as our director as a result of his experience in developing extracorporeal blood purification products.

***James B. Frakes, Chief Financial Officer and Senior Vice President – Finance***

Mr. Frakes joined Aethlon Medical, Inc. in January 2008 and brought 16 consecutive years of financial responsibility for publicly traded companies, as well as specific knowledge and experience in equity and debt transactions, acquisitions, public reporting and Sarbanes-Oxley Section 404 internal control requirements. Mr. Frakes also serves as the Chief Financial Officer of Exosome Sciences, Inc. He previously served as the CFO for Left Behind Games Inc., a start-up video game company. Prior to 2006, he served as CFO of NTN Buzztime, Inc., an interactive entertainment company. Mr. Frakes received an MBA from the University of Southern California and completed his BA with Honors at Stanford University.

***Edward G. Broenniman, Director***

Mr. Broenniman became a director of Aethlon Medical, Inc. in March 1999. He has been the Managing Director of The Piedmont Group, LLC, a venture advisory firm, since 1978. Mr. Broenniman recently served on the Board of Directors of publicly traded QuesTech (acquired by CACI International), and currently serves on the Boards of two privately held firms. His nonprofit Boards are the Dingman Center for Entrepreneurship's Board of Advisors at the University of Maryland, the National Association of Corporate Directors, National Capital Chapter and the Board of the Association for Corporate Growth, National Capital Chapter. We believe that Mr. Broenniman is qualified to serve as our director because of his extensive management experience.

***Chetan S. Shah, MD, Director***

Dr. Shah became a director of Aethlon Medical, Inc. in June 2013. Dr. Shah is a board-certified Otolaryngologist. He is an Advisory Board Member at The Bank of Princeton, and a partner and Board member of the Surgery Center at Hamilton as well as Physician Management Systems and Princeton Eye & Ear, which he founded in 2009. Dr. Shah serves on the board of two other private companies. He holds teaching positions and serves on multiple hospital committees in the area and is on the Audiology and Speech Language Pathology Committee for the State of New Jersey. He also served as vice-president of the Board of Medical Examiners for the State of New Jersey. Dr. Shah received his Bachelor's degree and Medical Degree from Rutgers University and Robert Wood Johnson Medical School. We believe that Dr. Shah is qualified to serve as our director because of his medical background as both a board-certified Otolaryngologist and a member of various medical boards and hospital committees in New Jersey.

**Board of Directors**

Our Board of Directors has the responsibility for establishing broad corporate policies and for overseeing our overall performance. Members of the Board of Directors are kept informed of our business activities through discussions with the CEO, President and other officers, by reviewing analyses and reports sent to them, and by participating in Board and committee meetings. Our bylaws provide that each of the directors serves for a term that extends to our next annual meeting of stockholders. Our Board of Directors presently has an Audit Committee, a Compensation Committee and a Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee, on each of which Mr. Broenniman and Dr. Shah serve. Mr. Broenniman is Chairman of the Audit Committee and the Nominating and Corporate Governance Committee, and Dr. Shah is Chairman of the Compensation Committee.

**2012 DIRECTORS COMPENSATION PROGRAM**

In July 2012, our Board of Directors approved a board compensation program that modified and superseded the 2005 Directors Compensation Program, which was previously in effect. Under the 2012 program, in which only non-employee directors may participate, an eligible director will receive a grant of \$35,000 worth of ten-year options to acquire shares of common stock, with such grant being valued at the exercise price based on the average of the closing bid prices of the common stock for the five trading days preceding the first day of the fiscal year. In addition, under this program, eligible directors will receive cash compensation equal to \$500 for each committee meeting attended and \$1,000 for each formal board meeting attended.

At March 31, 2017, we had issued 26,757 options under the 2005 program to outside directors and 79,309 options to employee-directors, 21,756 outside directors' options had been forfeited, 5,000 outside directors' options had been exercised, 79,309 employee-directors' options had been forfeited and no options under the 2005 program remained outstanding. There were no issuances of stock options to our outside directors in the fiscal years ended March 31, 2016 and 2017.

On June 6, 2014, our Board of Directors approved certain changes to the 2012 program. Under this modified program, a new eligible director will receive an initial grant of \$50,000 worth of options to acquire shares of common stock, with such grant being valued at the exercise price based on the average of the closing bid prices of the common stock for the five trading days preceding the first day of the fiscal year. These options will have a term of ten years and will vest 1/3 upon grant and 1/3 upon each of the first two anniversaries of the date of grant. In addition, at the beginning of each fiscal year, each existing director eligible to participate in the modified 2012 program also will receive a grant of \$35,000 worth of options valued at the exercise price based on the average of the closing bid prices of the common stock for the five trading days preceding the first day of the fiscal year. Such options will vest on the first anniversary of the date of grant. In lieu of per meeting fees, eligible directors will receive an annual board retainer fee of \$30,000. The modified 2012 program also provides for the following annual retainer fees: Audit Committee Chair - \$5,000, Compensation Committee chair - \$5,000, Nominating Committee chair - \$5,000, Audit Committee member - \$4,000, Compensation Committee member - \$4,000, Nominating Committee member - \$4,000 and lead independent director - \$15,000.

On August 9, 2016, the Board approved further modifications to the program. Under the modified 2012 Program, in which only non-employee directors may participate, a new eligible director will receive an initial grant of \$50,000 worth of RSUs or, at the discretion of the Board, options to acquire shares of Common Stock. RSUs granted under this provision will be valued based on the average of the closing prices of the Common Stock for the five trading days preceding and including the date of grant and will vest at a rate determined by the Board in its discretion. Options granted under this provision will be valued at the exercise price, which will be based on the average of the closing prices of the Common Stock for the five trading days preceding and including the date of grant. Such options will have a term of ten years and will vest at a rate determined by the Board in its discretion.

At the beginning of each fiscal year, each existing director eligible to participate in the 2012 Program will receive a grant of \$35,000 worth of RSUs or, at the discretion of the Board, options to acquire shares of Common Stock. RSUs granted under this provision will be valued based on the average of the closing prices of the Common Stock for the five trading days preceding and including the first day of the fiscal year (or preceding and including the date of grant, if such grant is not made on the first day of the fiscal year) and will vest at a rate determined by the Board in its discretion. Options granted under this provision will be valued at the exercise price, which will be based on the average of the closing prices of the Common Stock for the five trading days preceding and including the first day of the fiscal year (or preceding and including the date of grant, if such grant is not made on the first day of the fiscal year). Such options will have a term of ten years and will vest at a rate determined by the Board in its discretion.

The RSU grants and the changes to the 2012 Program were approved and recommended by our Compensation Committee prior to approval by the Board.

#### **Family Relationships**

There are no family relationships between or among the directors, executive officers or persons nominated or chosen by us to become directors or executive officers.

There are no arrangements or understandings between any two or more of our directors or executive officers or between any of our directors or executive officers and any other person pursuant to which any director or officer was or is to be selected as a director or officer, and there is no arrangement, plan or understanding as to whether non-management stockholders will exercise their voting rights to continue to elect the current Board of Directors. There are also no arrangements, agreements or understandings between non-management stockholders that may directly or indirectly participate in or influence the management of our affairs.

#### **Involvement in Legal Proceedings**

To the best of our knowledge, during the past ten years, none of the following occurred with respect to a present or former director or executive officer of our company: (1) any bankruptcy petition filed by or against such person or any business of which such person was a general partner or executive officer either at the time of the bankruptcy or within two years prior to that time; (2) any conviction in a criminal proceeding or being subject to a pending criminal proceeding (excluding traffic violations and other minor offenses); (3) being subject to any order, judgment or decree, not subsequently reversed, suspended or vacated, of any court of any competent jurisdiction, permanently or temporarily enjoining, barring, suspending or otherwise limiting his involvement in any type of business, securities or banking activities; (4) being found by a court of competent jurisdiction (in a civil action), the Securities and Exchange Commission or the Commodities Futures Trading Commission to have violated a federal or state securities or commodities law, and the judgment has not been reversed, suspended or vacated; and (5) being the subject of, or a party to, any federal or state judicial or administrative order, judgment, decree or finding, not subsequently reversed, suspended or vacated, relating to an alleged violation of any federal or state securities or commodities law or regulation, law or regulation respecting financial institutions or insurance companies or law or regulation prohibiting mail or wire fraud or fraud in connection with any business entity; or (6) being the subject of, or a party to, any sanction or order, not subsequently reversed, suspended or vacated, of any self-regulatory organization (as defined in Section 3(a)(26) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934), any registered entity (as defined in Section 1(a)(29) of the Commodity Exchange Act), or any equivalent exchange, association, entity or organization that has disciplinary authority over its members or associated persons.

## Code of Ethics

On February 23, 2005, the Board of Directors approved a "Code of Business Conduct and Ethics," which applies to our principal executive officer, our principal financial officer, our principal accounting officer and persons performing similar tasks. Our Code of Business Conduct and Ethics is available on our company website at [www.aethlonmedical.com](http://www.aethlonmedical.com).

## Audit Committee and Audit Committee Financial Expert

Our Board of Directors formed an Audit Committee in May of 1999. Mr. Edward Broenniman (the Chairman of the Audit Committee) and Dr. Chetan S. Shah serve as members of the Audit Committee. The Board of Directors has determined that Mr. Broenniman is an "audit committee financial expert" as that term is defined by Item 407 of Regulation S-K. Mr. Broenniman and Dr. Shah meet the NASDAQ Stock Market's independence standards for members of such audit committees.

## EXECUTIVE COMPENSATION

The following executive compensation disclosure reflects all compensation awarded to, earned by or paid to the executive officers below for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2017 and March 31, 2016. The following table summarizes all compensation for fiscal years 2017 and 2016 received by our Chief Executive Officer, and our three most highly compensated executive officers who earned more than \$100,000 in fiscal year 2017.

### SUMMARY COMPENSATION TABLE FOR 2017 AND 2016 FISCAL YEARS

NAMED EXECUTIVE OFFICER AND PRINCIPAL POSITION	YEAR	STOCK SALARY	BONUS (\$)	AWARDS (\$)	OPTION AWARDS (\$) (\$)	NON- EQUITY INCENTIVE PLAN COMPEN- SATION (\$)	NON- QUALIFIED DEFERRED COMPEN- SATION EARNINGS(\$)	ALL OTHER COMP (\$)	TOTAL (\$)
James A. Joyce (1) CHIEF EXECUTIVE OFFICER	2017	\$ 385,000	\$ —	\$ 678,380	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 1,063,380
	2016	\$ 370,417	\$ 275,000	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 645,417
Richard H. Tullis, PhD (2) VICE PRESIDENT AND CHIEF SCIENCE OFFICER	2017	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —
	2016	\$ 188,000	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 188,000
James B. Frakes (3) CHIEF FINANCIAL OFFICER AND SVP- FINANCE	2017	\$ 235,000	\$ —	\$ 55,640	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 290,640
	2016	\$ 226,429	\$ 125,500	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 351,929
Rodney S. Kenley (4) PRESIDENT	2017	\$ 275,000	\$ —	\$ 55,640	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 330,640
	2016	\$ 268,750	\$ 50,000	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ —	\$ 318,750

(1) The aggregate number of stock awards and stock option awards issued to Mr. Joyce and outstanding as of March 31, 2017 is 158,500 and 210,000, respectively. In September 2015, Mr. Joyce received a \$35,000 salary increase from \$350,000 to \$385,000.

(2) The aggregate number of stock awards and stock option awards issued to Dr. Tullis and outstanding as of March 31, 2017 is zero and 46,000, respectively. In January 2015, we paid Dr. Tullis \$93,377 in payment of accrued salary. Dr. Tullis resigned as an employee effective February 9, 2016 and is now a consultant to the Company.

(3) Mr. Frakes was appointed as Chief Financial Officer on September 27, 2010 after previously serving as Senior Vice President-Finance on a part-time basis. The aggregate number of stock awards and stock option awards issued to Mr. Frakes and outstanding as of March 31, 2017 is 13,000 and 25,000, respectively. In September 2015, Mr. Frakes received a \$25,000 salary increase from \$210,000 to \$235,000.

(4) Mr. Kenley was appointed President on October 27, 2011. The aggregate number of stock awards and stock option awards issued to Mr. Kenley and outstanding as of March 31, 2017 is 13,000 and 35,000, respectively. In September 2015, Mr. Kenley received a \$15,000 salary increase from \$260,000 to \$275,000.

(5) See note 5 to our financial statements for the years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016 regarding the assumptions made in valuing the restricted stock unit awards in the above table.

## EMPLOYMENT CONTRACTS

We entered into an employment agreement with Mr. Joyce effective April 1, 1999. The agreement, which is cancelable by either party upon sixty days' notice, will be in effect until the Chairman retires or ceases to be employed by us. Under the terms of the agreement, if Mr. Joyce is terminated he may become eligible to receive a salary continuation payment in the amount of at least twelve months' base salary, which was increased to \$385,000 per year in September 2015.

During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2016, Mr. Joyce earned bonuses totaling \$100,000 from us, excluding a retention bonus (see below) and bonuses totaling \$75,000 from Exosome Sciences, Inc. That bonus was based upon targets established by our compensation committee. Aethlon did not pay any bonuses during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017. Mr. Joyce received bonuses totaling \$60,000 from Exosome during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017.

Mr. Joyce's employment agreement provides for medical insurance and disability benefits, and one year of severance pay if his employment is terminated by us without cause or due to change in our control before the expiration of the agreement, and allows for bonus compensation and stock option grants as determined by our Board of Directors. The agreement also contains restrictive covenants preventing competition with us and the use of confidential business information, except in connection with the performance of his duties for us, for a period of two years following the termination of his employment with us.

In February 2016, we entered into a part-time consulting agreement with Tullis, who was previously our CSO (formerly with an employment agreement with a \$195,000 salary and a termination continuation payment equal to one year's base salary). Under that agreement, Tullis continued to provide services under the terms of a consulting agreement with us. In connection with the change in his employment, Tullis resigned as our Vice President. Under the consulting agreement, Tullis rendered approximately twenty (20) hours per week of such services, for which we paid him a consulting fee of \$10,000 per month. The term of the consulting agreement was for an initial sixty-day period and, unless terminated earlier by either party, shall automatically extend for additional one-month periods. Either party to the consulting agreement may terminate it upon 30 day's prior written notice to the other party. Concurrently with the entry into the consulting agreement, Tullis and the Company mutually agreed to terminate his employment agreement with us.

In November 2016, the scope of the consulting agreement was amended to reduce the hours from 20 hours per week to 20 hours per month with a reduction in monthly consulting fees from the original \$10,000 per month to \$4,000 per month. Then in February 2017, the scope of the consulting agreement was further amended to reduce the hours from 20 hours per month to 10 hours per month with a reduction in monthly consulting fees from \$4,000 per month to \$2,000 per month.

On September 27, 2010, Mr. Frakes was appointed our Chief Financial Officer. We have not entered into a written employment agreement with Mr. Frakes. As Chief Financial Officer, Mr. Frakes received an annual salary initially set at \$180,000 and medical insurance benefits. In June 2014, his salary was increased from \$180,000 to \$210,000 per year. In September 2015, Mr. Frakes received a \$25,000 salary increase from \$210,000 to \$235,000.

During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2016, Mr. Frakes earned bonuses totaling \$75,000 from us, excluding a retention bonus (see below). That bonus was based upon targets established by our compensation committee. Aethlon did not pay any bonuses during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017.

Mr. Kenley was appointed our President on October 27, 2010. Pursuant to a written offer of employment executed by us and Mr. Kenley, he received an annual salary initially set at \$240,000 and medical insurance benefits. In June 2014, his salary was increased from \$240,000 to \$260,000 per year. In September 2015, Mr. Kenley received a \$15,000 salary increase from \$260,000 to \$275,000.

During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2016, Mr. Kenley received a retention bonus (see below). Aethlon did not pay any bonuses during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017.

## Retention Agreements

On October 16, 2015, following a recommendation of our Compensation Committee, we approved retention bonus grants to three of our executive officers under a newly established Aethlon Senior Management Retention Program to maintain management stability going forward. The Board approved a \$100,000 retention bonus for Mr. James A. Joyce, our Chief Executive Officer, a \$50,000 retention bonus for Mr. Rodney S. Kenley, our President, and a \$50,000 retention bonus for Mr. James B. Frakes, our Chief Financial Officer.

In connection with the bonus granted to Mr. Joyce, we entered into an amendment of Mr. Joyce's Employment Agreement dated April 1, 1999. Pursuant to the amendment, if within two years of the effective date of the amendment, we terminate Mr. Joyce's employment with us for "Cause" (as defined in his employment agreement) or Mr. Joyce terminates his employment with us other than for "Good Reason" (as defined in his employment agreement), Mr. Joyce must repay in full the amount of the bonus received from us. In the event of his death or disability or termination by us other than for "Cause" or termination by Mr. Joyce for "Good Reason," Mr. Joyce will not be required to repay any portion of the bonus received by him.

In connection with the bonus granted to Mr. Kenley, we entered into an amendment of Mr. Kenley's Offer Letter dated October 27, 2010. Pursuant to the amendment, if within two years of the effective date of the amendment, we terminate Mr. Kenley's employment with us for "Cause" (as defined in the amendment) or Mr. Kenley terminates his employment with us other than for "Good Reason" (as defined in the amendment), Mr. Kenley must repay in full the amount of the bonus received from us. In the event of his death or disability or termination by us other than for "Cause" or termination by Mr. Kenley for "Good Reason," Mr. Kenley will not be required to repay any portion of the bonus received by him.

In connection with the bonus granted to Mr. Frakes, we entered into a Retention Bonus Agreement with Mr. Frakes. Pursuant to the agreement, if within two years of the effective date of the agreement, we terminate Mr. Frakes' employment with us for "Cause" (as defined in the agreement) or Mr. Frakes terminates his employment with us other than for "Good Reason" (as defined in the agreement), Mr. Frakes must repay in full the amount of the bonus received from us. In the event of his death or disability or termination by us other than for "Cause" or termination by Mr. Frakes for "Good Reason," Mr. Frakes will not be required to repay any portion of the bonus received by him.

## Outstanding Equity Awards at 2017 Fiscal Year-End

The following table sets forth certain information concerning stock option awards granted to our named executive officers.

### OUTSTANDING EQUITY AWARDS AT 2017 FISCAL YEAR

#### END OPTIONS AWARDS

NAME	NUMBER OF SECURITIES UNDERLYING UNEXERCISED OPTIONS EXERCISABLE (#)	RESTRICTED STOCK UNITS EXERCISED (#)	RESTRICTED STOCK UNITS UNEXERCISABLE (#)	OPTION EXERCISE PRICE (\$)	DATE OF OPTION EXPIRATION
James A. Joyce	50,000(1)	—	—	\$ 18.00	09/21/17
	40,000(2)	—	—	\$ 12.50	02/21/19
	50,000(3)	—	—	\$ 12.50	09/27/20
	40,000(4)	—	—	\$ 5.00	07/01/23
	30,000(7)	—	—	\$ 9.50	06/06/24
		158,500	475,500	N/A	N/A
Richard H. Tullis	15,000(5)	—	—	\$ 20.50	06/14/18
(former CSO)	20,000(6)	—	—	\$ 12.50	09/27/20
	10,000(4)	—	—	\$ 5.00	07/01/23
	1,000(7)	—	—	\$ 9.50	06/06/24
James B. Frakes	10,000(6)	—	—	\$ 12.50	09/27/20
	10,000(4)	—	—	\$ 5.00	07/01/23
	5,000(7)	—	—	\$ 9.50	06/06/24
		13,000	39,000	N/A	N/A
Rodney S. Kenley	20,000(6)	—	—	\$ 12.50	10/27/20
	10,000(4)	—	—	\$ 5.00	7/01/23
	5,000(7)	—	—	\$ 9.50	06/06/24
		13,000	39,000	N/A	N/A

Note: All our stock options are fully vested or will completely vest within 60 days of this report.

(1) This option was fully vested as of June 13, 2010.

(2) This option was fully vested as of December 15, 2010.

(3) This option was fully vested as of September 27, 2013.

(4) This option vests ratably on July 1, 2014, July 1, 2015, July 1, 2016 and July 1, 2017.

(5) This option was fully vested as of December 15, 2011.

(6) This option was fully vested as of October 27, 2014.

(7) This option was fully vested as of June 6, 2016.



## Director Compensation for 2017 Fiscal Year

The following director compensation disclosure reflects all compensation awarded to, earned by or paid to the directors below for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017.

	Fees Earned or Paid in Cash (\$)	Stock Awards (\$)	Option Awards (\$)	Non-Equity Incentive Plan Compensation (\$)	Nonqualified Deferred Compensation Earnings (\$)	All Other Compensation (\$)	Total (\$)
James A. Joyce (1)	\$ —	—	—	—	—	—	\$ —
Rodney S. Kenley (2)	\$ —	—	—	—	—	—	\$ —
Edward G. Broenniman (3)	\$ 39,000	94,438	—	—	—	—	\$ 133,438
Franklyn S. Barry, Jr. (4)	\$ 39,000	94,438	—	—	—	—	\$ 133,438
Chetan S. Shah, MD (5)	\$ 39,000	94,438	—	—	—	—	\$ 133,438

(1) All compensation received by Mr. Joyce in fiscal year 2017 is disclosed in the Summary Compensation Table above. Mr. Joyce received no compensation as a director in fiscal year 2017.

(2) All compensation received by Mr. Kenley in fiscal year 2017 is disclosed in the Summary Compensation Table above. Mr. Kenley received no compensation as a director in fiscal year 2017.

(3) The aggregate number of stock awards and options awards issued and outstanding as of March 31, 2017 are 16,432 and 43,431, respectively. Mr. Broenniman received stock option grants of 3,684 shares on June 6, 2014, 8,537 shares on March 14, 2014, and 9,211 shares on July 24, 2012 for his service as an outside director. The June 2014 option vested 3,684 shares on March 31, 2015, the March 2014 option vested all 8,537 shares at grant and the 2012 option vested 3,961 at grant, with 5,250 vesting in the June 2013 quarter. In January 2016, we paid \$39,000 to Mr. Broenniman in payment of accrued Board of Directors fees for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2015 and in April 2016 we paid \$38,000 to Mr. Broenniman in payment of accrued Board of Directors fees for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2016. During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017, we paid Mr. Broenniman \$29,250 in Board of Directors fees.

(4) The aggregate number of stock awards and options awards issued and outstanding as of March 31, 2017 are 16,432 and 41,431, respectively. Mr. Barry received stock option grants of 3,684 shares on June 6, 2014, 8,537 shares on March 14, 2014 and 9,211 shares on July 24, 2012 for his service as an outside director. The June 2014 option vested 3,684 shares on March 31, 2015, the March 2014 option vested all 8,537 shares at grant and the 2012 option vested 3,961 at grant, with 5,250 vesting in the June 2013 quarter. In October 2015, we paid \$39,000 to Mr. Barry in payment of accrued Board of Directors fees for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2015 and in April 2016 we paid \$39,000 to Mr. Barry in payment of accrued Board of Directors fees for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2016. During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017, we paid Mr. Barry \$29,250 in Board of Directors fees. Mr. Barry retired from our Board of Directors as of March 30, 2017.

(5) The aggregate number of stock awards and options awards issued and outstanding as of March 31, 2017 are 16,432 and 11,205, respectively. Dr. Shah received stock option grants of 3,684 on June 6, 2014 and 7,520 shares on July 24, 2012 for his service as an outside director. The June 2014 option vested 3,684 shares on March 31, 2015, and the 2014 option vested all 7,520 shares at grant. In October 2015, we paid \$39,000 to Dr. Shah in payment of accrued Board of Directors fees for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2015 and in April 2016 we paid \$39,000 to Dr. Shah in payment of accrued Board of Directors fees for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2016. During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017, we paid Dr. Shah \$29,250 in Board of Directors fees.

## Directors Compensation Program

We maintain a board compensation program, in which only non-employee directors may participate. Please see the “Equity Compensation Plans – 2012 Directors Compensation Program” section of this Report for more information on the program.

## SECURITY OWNERSHIP OF CERTAIN BENEFICIAL OWNERS AND MANAGEMENT

The following table sets forth information as of September 7, 2017, with respect to the ownership of our common stock, by (i) each person known by us to be the beneficial owner of more than five percent (5%) of the outstanding shares of each class of our capital stock, (ii) each of our directors and director nominees (if any), (iii) each of our named executive officers and (iv) all of our current executive officers and directors as a group. As of such date, we had 8,951,081 shares of our common stock issued and outstanding. The term "executive officer" is defined as the President/Chief Executive Officer, Secretary, Chief Financial Officer/Treasurer, any vice-president in charge of a principal business function (such as administration or finance), or any other person who performs similar policy making functions for us. We believe that each individual or entity named has sole investment and voting power with respect to shares of common stock indicated as beneficially owned by them, subject to community property laws where applicable, excepted where otherwise noted:

NAME AND ADDRESS	AMOUNT AND NATURE OF BENEFICIAL OWNERSHIP (1) (2)	PERCENT OF BENEFICIAL OWNERSHIP BEFORE OFFERING	PERCENT OF BENEFICIAL OWNERSHIP AFTER OFFERING**
James A. Joyce, Chief Executive Officer and Director 9635 Granite Ridge Drive, Suite 100 San Diego, CA 92123	386,939 shares (3)	4.30%	
Rodney S. Kenley, President and Director 9635 Granite Ridge Drive, Suite 100 San Diego, CA 92123	47,262 shares (4)	*	
James B. Frakes, Chief Financial Officer 9635 Granite Ridge Drive, Suite 100 San Diego, CA 92123	35,726 shares (5)	*	
Franklyn S. Barry, Jr., Former Director 9635 Granite Ridge Drive, Suite 100 San Diego, CA 92123	54,233 shares (6)	*	
Edward G. Broenniman, Director 9635 Granite Ridge Drive, Suite 100 San Diego, CA 92123	59,755 shares (7)	*	
Chetan Shah, MD, Director 9635 Granite Ridge Drive, Suite 100 San Diego, CA 92123	405,628 shares (8)	4.50%	
Empery Asset Management, LLC (12) 1 Rockefeller Plaza, Suite 1205 New York, New York 10020	1,586,096 shares (9)	16.40%	
Ellen R Weiner Family Revocable Trust (12) 10300 W. Charleston Blvd. #13-222 Las Vegas, NV 89135	708,335 shares (10)	7.80%	
Alpha Capital Anstalt (12) Lettstrasse 32, FL-9490 Vaduz, Furstentums, Liechtenstein	738,958 shares (11)	7.70%	
Sachs Investment Group, LLC (12) 1346 S. Third St., Louisville, KY 40208	1,344,305 shares	15.10%	
All Current Directors and Executive Officers as a Group (7 members)	989,542 shares	10.60%	

\* Less than 1%

\*\* To be completed by amendment

- (1) Based on 8,951,081 shares of common stock outstanding on our transfer records as of September 8, 2017.
- (2) Calculated pursuant to Rule 13d-3(d)(1) of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934. Under Rule 13d-3(d)(1), shares not outstanding that are subject to options, warrants, rights or conversion privileges exercisable by a person within 60 days are deemed outstanding for the purpose of calculating the number and percentage owned by such person but not deemed outstanding for the purpose of calculating the percentage owned by each other person listed. Except where otherwise noted, we believe that each individual or entity named has sole investment and voting power with respect to the shares of common stock indicated as beneficially owned by such person, subject to community property laws, where applicable.
- (3) Includes 50,000 stock options exercisable at \$18.00 per share, 90,000 stock options exercisable at \$12.50 per share, 40,000 stock options exercisable at \$5.00 per share and 30,000 stock options exercisable at \$9.50 per share. Also includes shares underlying 19,079 restricted stock units that will vest and issue on September 7, 2017.
- (4) Includes 20,000 stock options exercisable at \$12.50 per share, 10,000 stock options exercisable at \$5.00 per share and 5,000 stock options exercisable at \$9.50 per share. Also includes shares underlying 1,797 restricted stock units that will vest and issue on September 7, 2017.
- (5) Includes 10,000 stock options exercisable at \$12.50 per share, 10,000 stock options exercisable at \$5.00 per share and 5,000 stock options exercisable at \$9.50 per share. Also includes shares underlying 1,594 restricted stock units that will vest and issue on September 7, 2017.
- (6) Includes 10,000 stock options exercisable at \$20.50 per share, 10,000 stock options exercisable at \$12.50 per share, 9,211 stock options exercisable at \$3.80 per share, 8,537 stock options exercisable at \$4.10 per share and 3,684 stock options exercisable at \$9.50 per share.
- (7) Includes 10,000 stock options exercisable at \$20.50 per share, 12,000 stock options exercisable at \$12.50 per share, 9,211 stock options exercisable at \$3.80 per share, 8,537 stock options exercisable at \$4.10 per share and 3,684 stock options exercisable at \$9.50 per share.
- (8) Includes warrants to purchase 109,322 shares of common stock at exercise prices ranging from \$4.65 per share to \$6.60 per share, and 7,521 stock options exercisable at \$4.10 per share and 3,684 stock options exercisable at \$9.50 per share.
- (9) Includes warrants for Empery Asset Management, LP (“Empery”) to purchase 813,096 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$3.95 per share. Empery’s beneficial ownership is limited contractually to the extent that exercise of such warrants would cause the aggregate number of shares of common stock beneficially owned by Empery to exceed 4.99% of our outstanding shares. Accordingly, beneficial ownership for Empery does not reflect 1,146,441 shares underlying such warrants.
- (10) Includes common stock issuable upon exercise of warrants held by the Ellen R. Weiner Family Revocable Trust. The trust owns 235,934 warrants to purchase common shares at prices ranging from \$2.10 to \$5.40 per share.
- (11) Includes certain shares issuable upon the conversion of convertible notes and exercise of warrants held by Alpha Capital Anstalt (“Alpha”). Alpha owns two convertible notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$979,603 convertible into 244,901 shares of common stock at \$4.00 and warrants to purchase 448,432 shares of common stock at prices ranging from \$3.95 to \$5.00 per share. Alpha’s beneficial ownership is limited contractually to the extent that exercise of such notes and warrants would cause the aggregate number of shares of common stock beneficially owned by Alpha to exceed 4.99% of our outstanding shares. Accordingly, beneficial ownership for Alpha does not reflect 254,537 shares underlying such notes and warrants.
- (12) More-than-5% stockholder.

## CERTAIN RELATIONSHIPS AND RELATED TRANSACTIONS AND DIRECTOR INDEPENDENCE

The following describes all transactions since April 1, 2015, and all proposed transactions, in which we were or are to be a participant and the amount involved exceeds the lesser of \$120,000 or one percent of the average of our total assets at year-end for the last two completed fiscal years, and in which any related person had or will have a direct or indirect material interest.

In June 2015, Mr. James Joyce, our Chief Executive Officer, Mr. James Frakes, our Chief Financial Officer and Dr. Chetan Shah, a director of our company, agreed to waive their rights to acquire an aggregate of 402,318 shares of common stock underlying certain stock options and warrants held by them. Those waivers were required in order to make a sufficient number of shares of common stock available for issuance upon the exercise of the warrants issued in our June 2015 financing. Those waivers expired when we amended our Articles of Incorporation on March 31, 2016, to increase sufficiently the number of authorized shares of common stock available for issuance following approval of that measure at our annual stockholders' meeting on March 29, 2016.

In September 2015, the Compensation Committee approved and we paid bonuses of \$100,000 and \$75,000 to Mr. Joyce and Mr. Frakes, respectively, for achieving an agreed milestone event of achieving a Nasdaq listing.

### Retention Agreements

On October 16, 2015, following a recommendation of our Compensation Committee, we approved retention bonus grants to three of our executive officers under a newly established Aethlon Senior Management Retention Program to maintain management stability going forward. The Board approved a \$100,000 retention bonus for Mr. James A. Joyce, our Chief Executive Officer, a \$50,000 retention bonus for Mr. Rodney S. Kenley, our President, and a \$50,000 retention bonus for Mr. James B. Frakes, our Chief Financial Officer.

In connection with the bonus granted to Mr. Joyce, we entered into an amendment of Mr. Joyce's Employment Agreement dated April 1, 1999. Pursuant to the amendment, if within two years of the effective date of the amendment, we terminate Mr. Joyce's employment with us for "Cause" (as defined in his employment agreement) or Mr. Joyce terminates his employment with us other than for "Good Reason" (as defined in his employment agreement), Mr. Joyce must repay in full the amount of the bonus received from us. In the event of his death or disability or termination by us other than for "Cause" or termination by Mr. Joyce for "Good Reason," Mr. Joyce will not be required to repay any portion of the bonus received by him.

In connection with the bonus granted to Mr. Kenley, we entered into an amendment of Mr. Kenley's Offer Letter dated October 27, 2010. Pursuant to the amendment, if within two years of the effective date of the amendment, we terminate Mr. Kenley's employment with us for "Cause" (as defined in the amendment) or Mr. Kenley terminates his employment with us other than for "Good Reason" (as defined in the amendment), Mr. Kenley must repay in full the amount of the bonus received from us. In the event of his death or disability or termination by us other than for "Cause" or termination by Mr. Kenley for "Good Reason," Mr. Kenley will not be required to repay any portion of the bonus received by him.

In connection with the bonus granted to Mr. Frakes, we entered into a Retention Bonus Agreement with Mr. Frakes. Pursuant to the agreement, if within two years of the effective date of the agreement, we terminate Mr. Frakes' employment with us for "Cause" (as defined in the agreement) or Mr. Frakes terminates his employment with us other than for "Good Reason" (as defined in the agreement), Mr. Frakes must repay in full the amount of the bonus received from us. In the event of his death or disability or termination by us other than for "Cause" or termination by Mr. Frakes for "Good Reason," Mr. Frakes will not be required to repay any portion of the bonus received by him.

### Other Transactions

Mr. Joyce received aggregate bonus payments of \$60,000 from Exosome throughout the fiscal years ended March 31, 2017 and March 31, 2016 per targets set by the Compensation Committee.

### Director Independence

Mr. Broenniman and Dr. Shah are independent directors as that term is defined by NASDAQ Stock Market Rule 5605(a)(2). We currently have a compensation committee, a nominating and corporate governance committee and an audit committee. Of the members of our Board of Directors, Mr. Broenniman and Dr. Shah both meet the NASDAQ Stock Market's independence standards for members of such committees.

## DESCRIPTION OF CAPITAL STOCK

### General

Our authorized capital consists of 10,000,000 shares of common stock, par value \$0.001 per share. As of September 7, 2017, there were issued and outstanding 8,951,081 shares of common stock.

### Common Shares

The holders of our common stock are entitled to one vote (or consent) per share on all matters to be voted on by the stockholders. Holders of common stock are entitled to receive ratably such dividends as may be declared by the Board of Directors out of funds legally available therefor. If we liquidate, dissolve or wind up, holders of common stock are entitled to share ratably in all assets remaining after payment of all debts and other liabilities. Holders of common stock have no preemptive, conversion or subscription rights. There are no redemption or sinking fund provisions applicable to the common stock. All outstanding shares of common stock are, and all shares of common stock to be outstanding upon completion of this offering will be, validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable.

Effective as of June 10, 2015, Section 6 of Article I of our Bylaws was amended and restated in its entirety as follows:

“ 6. Stockholders representing a majority of the stock issued and outstanding, either in person or by proxy, shall constitute a quorum for the transaction of business at any meeting of stockholders; *provided, however*, that at any time during which shares of the capital stock of the company are listed for trading on the NASDAQ Stock Market, stockholders representing not less than thirty-three and one-third percent (33 1/3%) of the common voting stock issued and outstanding, either in person or by proxy, shall constitute a quorum for the transaction of business at any meeting of the holders of common stock.”

Except as otherwise required by Nevada law or as otherwise stated in our Bylaws, all stockholder action is taken by the vote of a majority of common stock voting as a single class present at a meeting of stockholders at which a quorum consisting of a majority of the outstanding shares of common stock is present in person or proxy.

### Options and Warrants Convertible into Common Shares

As of June 30, 2017, there were outstanding common share purchase options entitling the holders to purchase 414,547 common shares at a weighted average exercise price of \$11.24 per share and warrants entitling the holders to purchase up to 2,475,737 common shares at a weighted average exercise price of \$3.53 per share.

## DESCRIPTION OF SECURITIES WE ARE OFFERING

We are offering (i) 4,777,070 units, each unit consisting of one share of our common stock and one common warrant to purchase .75 of a share of our common stock, or (ii) up to 4,777,070 pre-funded units, each pre-funded unit consisting of one pre-funded warrant to purchase one share of our common stock and one common warrant to purchase .75 of a share of our common stock. For each pre-funded unit we sell, the number of units we are offering will be decreased on a one-for-one basis. The share of common stock and accompanying common warrant included in each unit will be issued separately, and the pre-funded warrant to purchase one share of common stock and the accompanying common warrant included in each pre-funded unit will be issued separately. Units will not be issued or certificated. We are also registering the shares of common stock included in the units and the shares of common stock issuable from time to time upon exercise of the pre-funded warrants included in pre-funded units and common warrants included in the units and the pre-funded units offered hereby.

### Common Stock

The material terms and provisions of our common stock and each other class of our securities which qualifies or limits our common stock are described under the caption “Description of Capital Stock” in this prospectus.

## **Pre-Funded Warrants**

The following summary of certain terms and provisions of pre-funded warrants included in the pre-funded units that are being offered hereby is not complete and is subject to, and qualified in its entirety by, the provisions of the pre-funded warrant, the form of which is filed as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus forms a part. Prospective investors should carefully review the terms and provisions of the form of pre-funded warrant for a complete description of the terms and conditions of the pre-funded warrants.

### ***Duration and Exercise Price***

Each pre-funded warrant will have an initial exercise price per share equal to \$0.01. The pre-funded warrants will be immediately exercisable and may be exercised at any time until the pre-funded warrants are exercised in full. The exercise price and number of shares of common stock issuable upon exercise is subject to appropriate adjustment in the event of stock dividends, stock splits, reorganizations or similar events affecting our common stock and the exercise price. The pre-funded warrants will be issued separately from the accompanying common warrants included in the pre-funded units, and may be transferred separately immediately thereafter.

### ***Exercisability***

The pre-funded warrants will be exercisable, at the option of each holder, in whole or in part, by delivering to us a duly executed exercise notice accompanied by payment in full for the number of shares of our common stock purchased upon such exercise (except in the case of a cashless exercise as discussed below). A holder (together with its affiliates) may not exercise any portion of the pre-funded warrant to the extent that the holder would own more than 4.99% of the outstanding common stock immediately after exercise, except that upon at least 61 days' prior notice from the holder to us, the holder may increase the amount of ownership of outstanding stock after exercising the holder's pre-funded warrants up to 9.99% of the number of shares of our common stock outstanding immediately after giving effect to the exercise, as such percentage ownership is determined in accordance with the terms of the pre-funded warrants. Purchasers of pre-funded units in this offering may also elect prior to the issuance of the pre-funded warrants to have the initial exercise limitation set at 9.99% of our outstanding common stock.

### ***Cashless Exercise***

If, at the time a holder exercises its pre-funded warrants, a registration statement registering the issuance of the shares of common stock underlying the pre-funded warrants under the Securities Act is not then effective or available for the issuance of such shares, then in lieu of making the cash payment otherwise contemplated to be made to us upon such exercise in payment of the aggregate exercise price, the holder may elect instead to receive upon such exercise (either in whole or in part) the net number of shares of common stock determined according to a formula set forth in the pre-funded warrants.

### ***Transferability***

Subject to applicable laws, a pre-funded warrant may be transferred at the option of the holder upon surrender of the pre-funded warrant to us together with the appropriate instruments of transfer.

### ***Fractional Shares***

No fractional shares of common stock will be issued upon the exercise of the pre-funded warrants. Rather, the number of shares of common stock to be issued will, at our election, either be rounded up to the nearest whole number or we will pay a cash adjustment in respect of such final fraction in an amount equal to such fraction multiplied by the exercise price.

### ***Trading Market***

There is no trading market available for the pre-funded warrants on any securities exchange or nationally recognized trading system.

### ***Right as a Stockholder***

Except as otherwise provided in the pre-funded warrants or by virtue of such holder's ownership of shares of our common stock, the holders of the pre-funded warrants do not have the rights or privileges of holders of our common stock, including any voting rights, until they exercise their pre-funded warrants.

## **Warrants**

The following summary of all material terms and provisions of warrants that are being offered hereby is not complete and is subject to, and qualified in its entirety by, the provisions of the warrant, the form of which has been filed as an exhibit to the registration statement of which this prospectus is a part. Prospective investors should carefully review the terms and provisions of the form of warrant for a complete description of the terms and conditions of the warrants.

#### *Duration and Exercise Price*

Each warrant offered hereby will have an exercise price equal to \$\_\_\_\_\_. The warrants will be immediately exercisable and will expire on the fifth anniversary of the original issuance date. The warrants will be issued separately from the common stock, and may be transferred separately immediately thereafter. Warrants will be issued in certificated form only.

#### *Exercisability*

The warrants will be exercisable, at the option of each holder, in whole or in part, by delivering to us a duly executed exercise notice accompanied by payment in full for the number of shares of our common stock purchased upon such exercise (except in the case of a cashless exercise as discussed below). A holder (together with its affiliates) may not exercise any portion of the warrant to the extent that the holder would own more than 4.99% of the outstanding common stock after exercise, except that upon at least 61 days' prior notice from the holder to us, the holder may increase the amount of ownership of outstanding stock after exercising the holder's warrants up to 9.99% of the number of shares of our common stock outstanding immediately after giving effect to the exercise, as such percentage ownership is determined in accordance with the terms of the warrants.

#### *Cashless Exercise*

If, at the time a holder exercises its warrant, there is no effective registration statement registering, or the prospectus contained therein is not available for an issuance of the shares underlying the warrant to the holder, then in lieu of making the cash payment otherwise contemplated to be made to us upon such exercise in payment of the aggregate exercise price, the holder may elect instead to receive upon such exercise (either in whole or in part) the net number of shares of common stock determined according to a formula set forth in the warrant.

#### *Fundamental Transactions*

In the event of any fundamental transaction, as described in the warrants and generally including any merger with or into another entity, sale of all or substantially all of our assets, tender offer or exchange offer, or reclassification of our common stock, then upon any subsequent exercise of a warrant, the holder will have the right to receive as alternative consideration, for each share of our common stock that would have been issuable upon such exercise immediately prior to the occurrence of such fundamental transaction, the number of shares of common stock of the successor or acquiring corporation or of our company, if it is the surviving corporation, and any additional consideration receivable upon or as a result of such transaction by a holder of the number of shares of our common stock for which the warrant is exercisable immediately prior to such event.

#### *Transferability*

Subject to applicable laws and a standard legend with regard to restriction on transfer only in compliance with a public offering or an available exemption therefrom, the warrant may be transferred at the option of the holder upon surrender of the warrant to us together with the appropriate instruments of transfer.

#### *No Listing*

There is no established trading market for the warrants, and we do not expect an active trading market to develop. We do not intend to list the warrants on any securities exchange or other trading market. Without a trading market, the liquidity of the warrants will be extremely limited.

#### *Right as a Shareholder*

Except as otherwise provided in the warrants or by virtue of such holder's ownership of shares of our common stock, the holders of the warrants do not have the rights or privileges of holders of our common stock, including any voting rights, until they exercise their warrants.

#### *Waivers and Amendments*

Subject to certain exceptions, any term of the warrants may be amended or waived with our written consent and the written consent of the holders of at least a majority of the then-outstanding warrants.

## PLAN OF DISTRIBUTION

Pursuant to an engagement agreement, we have engaged H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC, or the placement agent, to act as our exclusive placement agent in connection with this offering of our securities pursuant to this prospectus on a reasonable best efforts basis. The engagement agreement does not give rise to any commitment by the placement agent to purchase any of our securities, and the placement agent will have no authority to bind us by virtue of the engagement agreement. The placement agent may engage sub-agents or selected dealers to assist with the offering. Investors purchasing a minimum of \$500,000 of the securities offered hereby will have the option to execute a securities purchase agreement with us, providing such investors with certain representations, warranties and covenants from us, which representations, warranties and covenants will not be available to other investors who will not execute a securities purchase agreement in connection with the purchase of the securities offered in this prospectus. Therefore, those investors shall rely solely on this prospectus in connection with the purchase of securities in the offering.

The placement agent is not purchasing or selling any of the securities offered by us under this prospectus, nor is it required to arrange the purchase or sale of any specific number or dollar amount of securities. The placement agent has agreed to use reasonable best efforts to arrange for the sale of the securities. There is no required minimum number of securities that must be sold as a condition to completion of this offering. Further, the placement agent does not guarantee that it will be able to raise new capital in any prospective offering.

We expect to enter into securities purchase agreements with investors who purchase at least \$500,000 of units in this offering providing such investors with certain representations, warranties and covenants from us, which representations, warranties and covenants will not be contractually available to other investors who will not execute a securities purchase agreement in connection with the purchase of the securities offered pursuant to this prospectus. Therefore, those investors shall rely solely on this prospectus in connection with the purchase of securities in the offering. We will deliver the securities being issued to the investors upon receipt of investor funds for the purchase of the securities offered pursuant to this prospectus. We expect to deliver the securities being offered pursuant to this prospectus on or about \_\_\_\_\_.

The nature of the representations, warranties and covenants in the securities purchase agreements shall include:

- standard issuer representations and warranties on matters such as organization, qualification, authorization, no conflict, no governmental filings required, current in SEC filings, no litigation, labor or other compliance issues, environmental, intellectual property and title matters and compliance with various laws such as the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act; and
- covenants regarding matters such as registration of warrant shares, no integration with other offerings, filing of an 8-K to disclose entering into these securities purchase agreements, no shareholder rights plans, no material nonpublic information, use of proceeds, indemnification of purchasers, reservation and listing of common stock, no subsequent equity sales for 90 days and no stock splits for one year.

The following table shows the per unit and total placement agent fees we will pay in connection with the sale of the securities in this offering, assuming the purchase of all of the securities we are offering.

	Per Unit	Per Pre-Funded Unit
Placement Agent Fees		
Total		

### Fees and Expenses

We have agreed to pay the placement agent a total cash fee equal to 6% of the gross proceeds of this offering and management fee of 1.0% of the gross proceeds of this offering (which fees may be reduced under certain circumstances). We will also pay the placement agent a reimbursement for non-accountable expenses of \$50,000 and reimbursement for the placement agent's legal fees and expenses in the amount of up to \$100,000. We estimate the total offering expenses of this offering that will be payable by us, excluding the placement agent's fees, will be approximately \$250,000.

### Right of First Refusal

We have also agreed to give the placement agent, subject to the completion of this offering, certain rights of first refusal for a period of nine months with respect to certain transactions, including any further capital raising transactions undertaken by us and right for a tail for a period of six months.



## **Placement Agent Warrants**

In addition, we have agreed to issue to the placement agent warrants to purchase up to 3.0% of the aggregate number of shares of common stock sold in the offering and issuable upon the exercise of the pre-funded warrants at an exercise price of \$1.96 per share (representing 125% of the assumed public offering price for the shares), exercisable for five years from the date of the effectiveness of this offering. The placement agent warrants will have substantially the same terms as the common warrants being sold to the investors in this offering. Pursuant to FINRA Rule 5110(g), the placement agent warrants and any shares of common stock issued upon exercise of the placement agent warrants shall not be sold, transferred, assigned, pledged, or hypothecated, or be the subject of any hedging, short sale, derivative, put or call transaction that would result in the effective economic disposition of the securities by any person for a period of 180 days immediately following the date of effectiveness or commencement of sales of this offering, except the transfer of any security: (i) by operation of law or by reason of our reorganization; (ii) to any FINRA member firm participating in the offering and the officers or partners thereof, if all securities so transferred remain subject to the lock-up restriction set forth above for the remainder of the time period; (iii) if the aggregate amount of our securities held by the placement agent or related persons do not exceed 1% of the securities being offered; (iv) that is beneficially owned on a pro-rata basis by all equity owners of an investment fund, provided that no participating member manages or otherwise directs investments by the fund and the participating members in the aggregate do not own more than 10% of the equity in the fund; or (v) the exercise or conversion of any security, if all securities remain subject to the lock-up restriction set forth above for the remainder of the time period.

## **Lock-Up Agreements**

Our executive officers and directors have agreed, subject to certain exceptions (such as shares underlying RSUs), not to offer, sell, agree to sell, directly or indirectly, or otherwise dispose of shares of common stock or warrants or any other securities convertible into or exchangeable for shares of common stock except for the shares of common stock included in the units and the shares of common stock issuable upon exercise of the common warrants included in the units and the pre-funded units and the pre-funded warrants included in the pre-funded units offered in this offering without the prior written consent of the placement agent for a period of 90 days after the consummation of this offering. In addition, we have agreed, subject to certain exceptions, to not issue, enter into any agreement to issue or announce the issuance or proposed issuance of any shares of common stock or common stock equivalents from the date of this prospectus until 60 days after the closing of this offering.

## **Indemnification**

We have agreed to indemnify the placement agent and specified other persons against certain liabilities relating to or arising out of the placement agent's activities under the engagement agreement and to contribute to payments that the placement agent may be required to make in respect of such liabilities.

## **Determination of Offering Price**

The offering price of the securities we are offering was negotiated between us and the investors, in consultation with the placement agent based on the trading of our securities prior to the offering, among other things. Other factors considered in determining the offering price of the securities we are offering include the history and prospects of the company, the stage of development of our business, our business plans for the future and the extent to which they have been implemented, an assessment of our management, general conditions of the securities markets at the time of the offering and such other factors as were deemed relevant.

## **Listing**

Our common stock is listed on The NASDAQ Capital Market under the symbol "AEMD."

## **Transfer Agent and Registrar**

The transfer agent and registrar for our common stock is Computershare Investor Services. The transfer agent's address is P.O. Box 30170, College Station, TX 77842.

## **Other Relationships**

From time to time, the placement agent has provided, and may provide in the future, various advisory, investment and commercial banking and other services to us in the ordinary course of business, for which they have received and may continue to receive customary fees and commissions. However, except as disclosed in this prospectus, we have no present arrangements with the placement agent for any further services.

The placement agent acted as our exclusive placement agent for our registered direct offering consummated in March 2017, for which it received compensation.

In addition, we have entered into a sales agreement with the placement agent pursuant to which we may offer and sell shares of our common stock having an aggregate offering price of up to \$9,532,294 from time to time at prevailing market prices through the placement agent as our sales agent. As of September 13, 2017, an aggregate of \$2,605,519 was sold.

## LEGAL MATTERS

Jolie Kahn, Esq. has passed upon the validity of the shares of common stock offered by this prospectus. Ellenoff Grossman & Schole LLP will pass upon certain legal matters for the placement agent.

## EXPERTS

The consolidated financial statements of Aethlon Medical, Inc. as of March 31, 2017 and 2016 and for each of the years in the two-year period ended March 31, 2017 have been audited by Squar Milner LLP, an independent registered public accounting firm, as stated in their report thereon (which report expresses an unqualified opinion and includes an explanatory paragraph relating to the Company's ability to continue as a going concern), and included in this Prospectus and Registration Statement in reliance upon such report and upon the authority of such firm as experts in accounting and auditing.

## WHERE YOU CAN FIND MORE INFORMATION

We have filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission, or SEC, a registration statement on Form S-1 under the Securities Act of 1933 with respect to the shares of common stock, warrants and pre-funded warrants offered hereby. This prospectus, which constitutes a part of the registration statement, does not contain all of the information set forth in the registration statement or the exhibits filed with the registration statement. For further information about us and the common stock and warrants offered hereby, we refer you to the registration statement and the exhibits filed with the registration statement. Statements contained in this prospectus regarding the contents of any contract or any other document that is filed as an exhibit to the registration statement are not necessarily complete, and each such statement is qualified in all respects by reference to the full text of such contract or other document filed as an exhibit to the registration statement. A copy of the registration statement and the filed exhibits may be inspected without charge at the public reference room maintained by the SEC, located at 100 F Street, NE, Washington, DC 20549, and copies of all or any part of the registration statement may be obtained from that office at prescribed rates. Please call the SEC at 1-800-SEC-0330 for further information about the public reference room. The SEC also maintains a website that contains reports, proxy and information statements and other information regarding registrants that file electronically with the SEC. The address of the website is [www.sec.gov](http://www.sec.gov).

We are subject to the information and reporting requirements of the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, or Exchange Act, and, in accordance with this law, are required to file periodic reports, proxy statements and other information with the SEC. These periodic reports, proxy statements and other information are available for inspection and copying at the SEC's public reference facilities and the website of the SEC referenced above. We make available free of charge, on or through the investor relations section of our website, annual reports on Form 10-K, quarterly reports on Form 10-Q, current reports on Form 8-K and amendments to those reports filed or furnished pursuant to Section 13(a) or 15(d) of the Exchange Act as soon as reasonably practicable after we electronically file such material with, or furnish it to, the SEC. The information found on our website is not part of this prospectus.

This prospectus includes statistical and other industry and market data that we obtained from industry publications and research, surveys and studies conducted by third parties. Industry publications and third-party research, surveys and studies generally indicate that they have gathered their information from sources they believe to be reliable, although they do not guarantee the accuracy or completeness of such information. While we believe that these industry publications and third-party research, surveys and studies are reliable, we have not independently verified such data.

AETHLON MEDICAL, INC. AND SUBSIDIARY  
INDEX TO CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS

	<u>Page</u>
<b>Annual Consolidated Financial Statements</b>	
<a href="#">Report of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm</a>	F-2
<a href="#">Consolidated Balance Sheets as of March 31, 2017 and 2016</a>	F-3
<a href="#">Consolidated Statements of Operations for the Years Ended March 31, 2017 and 2016</a>	F-4
<a href="#">Consolidated Statements of Equity for the Years Ended March 31, 2017 and 2016</a>	F-5
<a href="#">Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the Years Ended March 31, 2017 and 2016</a>	F-6
<a href="#">Notes to Consolidated Financial Statements</a>	F-7
<b>Interim Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements (Unaudited)</b>	
<a href="#">Condensed Consolidated Balance Sheets as of June 30, 2017 and March 31, 2017</a>	F-32
<a href="#">Condensed Consolidated Statements of Operations for the three months ended June 30, 2017 and 2016</a>	F-33
<a href="#">Condensed Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows for the three months ended June 30, 2017 and 2016</a>	F-34
<a href="#">Notes to Condensed Consolidated Financial Statements</a>	F-35

REPORT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM

To the Board of Directors and Stockholders  
Aethlon Medical, Inc. and Subsidiary

We have audited the accompanying consolidated balance sheets of Aethlon Medical, Inc. and Subsidiary (the "Company") as of March 31, 2017 and 2016 and the related consolidated statements of operations, equity, and cash flows for the years then ended. These financial statements are the responsibility of the Company's management. Our responsibility is to express an opinion on these financial statements based on our audits.

We conducted our audits in accordance with the standards of the Public Company Accounting Oversight Board (United States). Those standards require that we plan and perform the audits to obtain reasonable assurance about whether the financial statements are free of material misstatement. An audit includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements. The Company is not required to have, nor were we engaged to perform, an audit of its internal control over financial reporting. Our audits included consideration of internal control over financial reporting as a basis for designing audit procedures that are appropriate in the circumstances, but not for the purpose of expressing an opinion on the effectiveness of the Company's internal control over financial reporting. Accordingly, we express no such opinion. An audit also includes examining, on a test basis, evidence supporting the amounts and disclosures in the financial statements, assessing the accounting principles used and significant estimates made by management, as well as evaluating the overall financial statement presentation. We believe that our audits provide a reasonable basis for our opinion.

In our opinion, the consolidated financial statements referred to above present fairly, in all material respects, the financial position of the Company as of March 31, 2017 and 2016, and the results of their operations and their cash flows for the years then ended in conformity with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles.

The accompanying financial statements have been prepared assuming that the Company will continue as a going concern. As discussed in Note 1 to the financial statements, during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017 the Company incurred a net loss and generated negative cash flows from operating activity and as of March 31, 2017 had an accumulated deficit of approximately \$93,778,000. These factors raise substantial doubt about the Company's ability to continue as a going concern. Management's plans regarding these matters are also described in Note 1. The consolidated financial statements do not include any adjustments that might result from the outcome of this uncertainty.

/s/ SQUAR MILNER LLP

SAN DIEGO, CALIFORNIA  
JUNE 28, 2017

AETHLON MEDICAL, INC. AND SUBSIDIARY  
CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS

	March 31, 2017	March 31, 2016
<b>ASSETS</b>		
<b>CURRENT ASSETS</b>		
Cash	\$ 1,559,701	\$ 2,123,737
Accounts receivable	—	199,471
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	37,551	53,294
<b>TOTAL CURRENT ASSETS</b>	<b>1,597,252</b>	<b>2,376,502</b>
Property and equipment, net	29,223	36,038
Patents, net	84,996	94,161
Deposits	14,897	22,415
<b>TOTAL ASSETS</b>	<b>\$ 1,726,368</b>	<b>\$ 2,529,116</b>
<b>LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY</b>		
<b>CURRENT LIABILITIES</b>		
Accounts payable	\$ 484,423	\$ 244,804
Due to related parties	57,866	145,112
Other current liabilities	69,467	136,695
<b>TOTAL CURRENT LIABILITIES</b>	<b>611,756</b>	<b>526,611</b>
Convertible notes payable, net	519,200	500,139
<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES</b>	<b>1,130,956</b>	<b>1,026,750</b>
<b>COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES (Note 12)</b>		
<b>STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY</b>		
Common stock, \$0.001 par value, 30,000,000 shares authorized at March 31, 2017 and 2016; 8,797,086 and 7,622,393 issued and outstanding at March 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively	8,796	7,621
Additional paid-in capital	94,445,739	88,047,142
Accumulated deficit	(93,778,156)	(86,502,043)
<b>TOTAL AETHLON MEDICAL, INC. STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY BEFORE NONCONTROLLING INTERESTS</b>	<b>676,379</b>	<b>1,552,720</b>
<b>NONCONTROLLING INTERESTS</b>	<b>(80,967)</b>	<b>(50,354)</b>
<b>TOTAL STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY</b>	<b>595,412</b>	<b>1,502,366</b>
<b>TOTAL LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' EQUITY</b>	<b>\$ 1,726,368</b>	<b>\$ 2,529,116</b>

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.

AETHLON MEDICAL, INC. AND SUBSIDIARY  
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS

	Years Ended March 31,	
	2017	2016
REVENUES:		
Government contract revenue	\$ 392,073	\$ 886,572
Total revenues	392,073	886,572
OPERATING EXPENSES		
Professional fees	2,161,592	2,259,096
Payroll and related expenses	3,479,347	2,083,297
General and administrative	849,491	929,013
Total operating expenses	6,490,430	5,271,406
OPERATING LOSS	(6,098,357)	(4,384,834)
OTHER EXPENSE		
Loss on debt extinguishment	558,198	—
Warrant repricing expense	345,841	—
Interest and other expenses	304,330	573,782
Total other expense	1,208,369	573,782
NET LOSS BEFORE NONCONTROLLING INTERESTS	(7,306,726)	(4,958,616)
LOSS ATTRIBUTABLE TO NONCONTROLLING INTERESTS	(30,613)	(86,287)
NET LOSS ATTRIBUTABLE TO COMMON STOCKHOLDERS	\$ (7,276,113)	\$ (4,872,329)
Basic and diluted net loss per share available to common stockholders	\$ (0.94)	\$ (0.66)
Weighted average number of common shares outstanding - basic and diluted	7,764,237	7,393,695

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.

AETHLON MEDICAL, INC. AND SUBSIDIARY  
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF EQUITY  
FOR THE YEARS ENDED MARCH 31, 2017 AND 2016

	ATTRIBUTABLE TO AETHLON MEDICAL, INC.					
	COMMON STOCK		ADDITIONAL	ACCUMULATED	NON-	TOTAL
	SHARES	AMOUNT	PAID IN	DEFICIT	CONTROLLING	EQUITY
			CAPITAL		INTERESTS	
BALANCE - MARCH 31, 2015	6,657,046	\$ 6,657	\$ 82,238,507	\$ (81,629,714)	\$ 35,933	\$ 651,383
Issuances of common stock for cash	959,140	958	5,605,797	—	—	5,606,755
Issuance of common stock under cashless warrant exercises	5,292	5	(5)	—	—	—
Issuance of common stock due to rounding up from reverse split	915	1	(1)	—	—	—
Stock-based compensation expense	—	—	202,844	—	—	202,844
Net loss	—	—	—	(4,872,329)	(86,287)	(4,958,616)
BALANCE - MARCH 31, 2016	7,622,393	\$ 7,621	\$ 88,047,142	\$ (86,502,043)	\$ (50,354)	\$ 1,502,366
Issuances of common stock for cash under at the market program	216,078	216	954,889	—	—	955,105
Issuances of common stock and warrants under registered direct financing	773,000	773	1,803,477	—	—	1,804,250
Issuances of common stock under conversions of convertible notes and related accrued interest	33,091	33	144,686	—	—	144,719
Warrant repricing expense	—	—	345,841	—	—	345,841
Loss on debt extinguishment	—	—	558,198	—	—	558,198
Debt discount on convertible notes payable	—	—	783,868	—	—	783,868
Repurchase of restricted stock units	149,864	150	(378,668)	—	—	(378,518)
Exercise of cashless warrants	2,660	3	(3)	—	—	—
Stock-based compensation expense	—	—	2,186,309	—	—	2,186,309
Net loss	—	—	—	(7,276,113)	(30,613)	(7,306,726)
BALANCE - MARCH 31, 2017	8,797,086	\$ 8,796	\$ 94,445,739	\$ (93,778,156)	\$ (80,967)	\$ 595,412

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.

AETHLON MEDICAL, INC. AND SUBSIDIARY  
CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS  
FOR THE YEARS ENDED MARCH 31, 2017 AND 2016

	2017	2016
Cash flows from operating activities:		
Net loss	\$ (7,306,726)	\$ (4,958,616)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash used in operating activities:		
Depreciation and amortization	32,413	38,524
Warrant repricing expense	345,841	—
Loss on debt extinguishment	558,198	—
Stock based compensation	2,186,309	202,844
Amortization of debt discount and deferred financing costs	220,439	517,233
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:		
Accounts receivable	199,471	(6,130)
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	15,743	19,841
Other assets	7,518	(95,638)
Accounts payable and other current liabilities	322,140	(46,365)
Due to related parties	(87,246)	(1,000)
Net cash used in operating activities	(3,505,900)	(4,329,307)
Cash flows from investing activities:		
Purchases of property and equipment	(16,433)	(9,307)
Net cash used in investing activities	(16,433)	(9,307)
Cash flows from financing activities:		
Cash paid for repurchase of restricted stock units	(378,518)	—
Proceeds from the issuance of convertible notes payable	577,460	—
Net proceeds from the issuance of common stock and warrants	2,759,355	5,606,755
Net cash provided by financing activities	2,958,297	5,606,755
Net (decrease) increase in cash	(564,036)	1,268,141
Cash at beginning of year	2,123,737	855,596
Cash at end of year	\$ 1,559,701	\$ 2,123,737
Supplemental information of non-cash investing and financing activities:		
Conversion of debt, accrued liabilities and accrued interest to common stock	\$ 144,719	\$ —
Reclassification of accrued interest to convertible notes payable	\$ 85,031	\$ —
Issuance of shares for warrants	\$ 198	\$ —
Issuance of shares under vested restricted stock units	\$ 150	\$ —
Issuance of shares under cashless warrant exercises	\$ 3	\$ 5
Debt discount on convertible notes payable	\$ 783,868	\$ —

See accompanying notes to the consolidated financial statements.



## 1. ORGANIZATION, LIQUIDITY AND SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

### ORGANIZATION

We create medical technologies to address unmet needs in global health and biodefense. The Aethlon Hemopurifier® is a clinical-stage therapeutic device that eliminates life-threatening viruses from the circulatory system of infected individuals. We believe the Aethlon Hemopurifier® can achieve the broad-spectrum countermeasure goal set forth by the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS). The device has been validated to capture Ebola, Zika, Lassa, MERS-CoV, HIV, Hepatitis C, Cytomegalovirus, Epstein-Barr, Herpes Simplex, Chikungunya, Dengue, West Nile, Smallpox related viruses, H1N1 Swine Flu, H5N1 Bird Flu, and the reconstructed Spanish flu virus of 1918. At present, the Hemopurifier® is being advanced under an FDA approved clinical study. Aethlon is also the majority owner of Exosome Sciences, Inc., a company focused on the discovery of exosomal biomarkers to diagnose and monitor life-threatening diseases.

Aethlon Medical, Inc. and subsidiary (“Aethlon”, the “Company”, “we” or “us”) is a medical device company focused on creating innovative devices that address unmet medical needs in global health and biodefense. The Aethlon Hemopurifier® is a clinical-stage therapeutic device that eliminates life-threatening viruses from the circulatory system of infected individuals. On June 25, 2013, the United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved an Investigational Device Exemption (IDE) that allows us to initiate human feasibility studies of the Aethlon Hemopurifier® in the U.S. We ended the treatment phase of the study after treating eight end-stage renal disease patients who were infected with the Hepatitis C virus (HCV) to demonstrate the safety of Hemopurifier therapy. Successful completion of this study will allow us the opportunity to initiate pivotal studies that are required for market clearance to treat HCV and other disease conditions in the U.S.

Successful outcomes of human trials will also be required by the regulatory agencies of certain foreign countries where we intend to sell this device. Some of our patents may expire before FDA approval or approval in a foreign country, if any, is obtained. However, we believe that certain patent applications and/or other patents issued more recently will help protect the proprietary nature of the Hemopurifier(R) treatment technology.

In October 2013, our subsidiary, Exosome Sciences, Inc. (“ESI”), commenced operations with a focus on advancing exosome-based strategies to diagnose and monitor the progression of cancer, infectious disease and other life-threatening conditions.

Our common stock is quoted on the Nasdaq Capital Market under the symbol “AEMD.”

### REVERSE STOCK SPLIT

On April 14, 2015, the Company completed a 1-for-50 reverse stock split. Accordingly, authorized common stock was reduced from 500,000,000 shares to 10,000,000 shares, and each 50 shares of outstanding common stock held by stockholders were combined into one share of common stock. The accompanying consolidated financial statements and accompanying notes have been retroactively revised to reflect such reverse stock split as if it had occurred on April 1, 2014. All shares and per share amounts have been revised accordingly.

### LIQUIDITY AND GOING CONCERN

The accompanying consolidated financial statements have been prepared assuming that we will continue as a going concern, which contemplates, among other things, the realization of assets and satisfaction of liabilities in the ordinary course of business. We have incurred continuing losses from operations and at March 31, 2017 had an accumulated deficit of approximately \$93,778,000. These factors, among other matters, raise substantial doubt about our ability to continue as a going concern. A significant amount of additional capital will be necessary to advance the development of our products to the point at which they may become commercially viable. We intend to fund operations, working capital and other cash requirements for the fiscal year ending March 31, 2018 through debt and/or equity financing arrangements.

We are currently addressing our liquidity issue by seeking additional investment capital through issuances of common stock under our existing S-3 registration statement and by applying for additional grants issued by government agencies in the United States. We believe that our cash on hand and funds expected to be received from additional debt and equity financing arrangements will be sufficient to meet our liquidity needs for fiscal 2018. However, no assurance can be given that we will receive any funds in addition to the funds we have received to date.

If we raise additional funds through the issuance of equity or convertible debt securities, the percentage ownership of our current shareholders could be reduced, and such securities might have rights, preferences or privileges senior to our common stock. Additional financing may not be available upon acceptable terms, or at all. If adequate funds are not available or are not available on acceptable terms, we may not be able to take advantage of prospective business endeavors or opportunities, which could significantly and materially restrict our operations. We are continuing to pursue external financing alternatives to improve our working capital position. If we are unable to obtain the necessary capital, we may have to cease operations.

The successful outcome of future activities cannot be determined at this time and there is no assurance that, if achieved, we will have sufficient funds to execute our intended business plan or generate positive operating results.

The consolidated financial statements do not include any adjustments related to this uncertainty and as to the recoverability and classification of asset carrying amounts or the amount and classification of liabilities that might result should the Company be unable to continue as a going concern.

#### PRINCIPLES OF CONSOLIDATION

The accompanying consolidated financial statements include the accounts of Aethlon Medical, Inc. and its majority-owned (80% ownership) and controlled subsidiary, Exosome Sciences, Inc. (ESI). All significant intercompany balances and transactions have been eliminated in consolidation. The Company has classified the (20% ownership) noncontrolling interests in ESI as part of consolidated net loss in the fiscal years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016 and includes the accumulated amount of noncontrolling interests as part of equity.

The losses at ESI during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017 reduced the noncontrolling interests on our consolidated balance sheet by \$30,613 from \$(50,354) at March 31, 2016 to \$(80,967) at March 31, 2017.

#### RISKS AND UNCERTAINTIES

We operate in an industry that is subject to intense competition, government regulation and rapid technological change. Our operations are subject to significant risk and uncertainties including financial, operational, technological, regulatory, and including the potential risk of business failure.

#### USE OF ESTIMATES

We prepare our consolidated financial statements in conformity with accounting principles generally accepted in the United States of America ("GAAP"), which requires management to make estimates and assumptions that affect the reported amounts of assets and liabilities and disclosure of contingent assets and liabilities at the date of the consolidated financial statements and reported amounts of revenues and expenses during the reporting periods. Significant estimates made by management include, among others, realization of long-lived assets, valuation of derivative liabilities, estimating fair value associated with debt and equity transactions and valuation of deferred tax assets. Actual results, whether in the near, medium or long-term future, could differ from those estimates.

#### CASH AND CASH EQUIVALENTS

Accounting standards define "cash and cash equivalents" as any short-term, highly liquid investment that is both readily convertible to known amounts of cash and so near their maturity that they present insignificant risk of changes in value because of changes in interest rates. For the purpose of financial statement presentation, we consider all highly liquid investment instruments with original maturities of three months or less when purchased, or any investment redeemable without penalty or loss of interest to be cash equivalents. As of March 31, 2017 and 2016, we had no assets that were classified as cash equivalents.

#### FAIR VALUE OF FINANCIAL INSTRUMENTS

The carrying amount of our cash, accounts receivable, accounts payable, and other current liabilities approximates their estimated fair values due to the short-term maturities of those financial instruments. The carrying amount of the notes payable approximates their fair value due to the short maturity of the notes and since the interest rates approximate current market interest rates for similar instruments.

Management has concluded that it is not practical to determine the estimated fair value of amounts due to related parties because the transactions cannot be assumed to have been consummated at arm's length, the terms are not deemed to be market terms, there are no quoted values available for these instruments, and an independent valuation would not be practicable due to the lack of data regarding similar instruments, if any, and the associated potential costs.

We follow Financial Accounting Standard Board's ("FASB") Accounting Standards Codification ("ASC") FASB ASC 820, "Fair Value Measurements and Disclosures" ("ASC 820") in connection with financial assets and liabilities measured at fair value on a recurring basis subsequent to initial recognition.

ASC 820 requires that assets and liabilities carried at fair value will be classified and disclosed in one of the following three categories:

Level 1: Quoted market prices in active markets for identical assets or liabilities.

Level 2: Observable market based inputs or unobservable inputs that are corroborated by market data.

Level 3: Unobservable inputs that are not corroborated by market data.

The hierarchy noted above requires us to minimize the use of unobservable inputs and to use observable market data, if available, when determining fair value.

We do not have any assets or liabilities that are measured at fair value on a recurring basis and, during the years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016, and did not have any assets or liabilities that were measured at fair value on a nonrecurring basis.

#### CONCENTRATIONS OF CREDIT RISKS

Cash is maintained at one financial institution in checking accounts and related cash management accounts. Accounts at this institution are secured by the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation up to \$250,000. Our March 31, 2017 cash balances were approximately \$1,308,000 over such insured amount. We do not believe that the Company is exposed to any significant risk with respect to its cash.

All of our accounts receivable at March 31, 2017 and 2016 and all of our revenue in the fiscal years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016 were directly from the U.S. Department of Defense or from a subcontract under Battelle, which is a prime contractor with the U.S. Department of Defense.

#### PROPERTY AND EQUIPMENT

Property and equipment are stated at cost. Depreciation is computed using the straight-line method over the estimated useful lives of the related assets, which range from two to five years. Repairs and maintenance are charged to expense as incurred while improvements are capitalized. Upon the sale or retirement of property and equipment, the accounts are relieved of the cost and the related accumulated depreciation with any gain or loss included in the consolidated statements of operations.

#### INCOME TAXES

Deferred tax assets and liabilities are recognized for the future tax consequences attributable to the difference between the consolidated financial statements and their respective tax basis. Deferred income taxes reflect the net tax effects of (a) temporary differences between the carrying amounts of assets and liabilities for financial reporting purposes and the amounts reported for income tax purposes, and (b) tax credit carryforwards. We record a valuation allowance for deferred tax assets when, based on our best estimate of taxable income (if any) in the foreseeable future, it is more likely than not that some portion of the deferred tax assets may not be realized.

#### LONG-LIVED ASSETS

Long-lived assets are reviewed for impairment whenever events or changes in circumstances indicate that their carrying amounts may not be recoverable. If the cost basis of a long-lived asset is greater than the projected future undiscounted net cash flows from such asset, an impairment loss is recognized. We believe no impairment charges were necessary during the fiscal years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016.

## LOSS PER SHARE

Basic loss per share is computed by dividing net income available to common stockholders by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding during the period of computation. Diluted loss per share is computed similar to basic loss per share except that the denominator is increased to include the number of additional common shares that would have been outstanding if potential common shares had been issued, if such additional common shares were dilutive. Since we had net losses for all periods presented, basic and diluted loss per share are the same, and additional potential common shares have been excluded as their effect would be antidilutive.

As of March 31, 2017 and 2016, a total of 3,908,292 and 2,710,107 potential common shares, consisting of shares underlying outstanding stock options, restricted stock units, warrants and convertible notes payable were excluded as their inclusion would be antidilutive.

## SEGMENTS

Historically, we operated in one segment that was based on our development of therapeutic devices. However, in the December 2013 quarter, we initiated the operations of ESI to develop diagnostic tests. As a result, we now operate in two segments, Aethlon for therapeutic applications and ESI for diagnostic applications (See Note 10).

We record discrete financial information for ESI and our chief operating decision maker reviews ESI's operating results in order to make decisions about resources to be allocated to the ESI segment and to assess its performance.

## DEFERRED FINANCING COSTS

Costs related to the issuance of debt are capitalized as a deduction to our convertible notes based on the new accounting standard on imputation of interest, and amortized to interest expense over the life of the related debt using the effective interest method. We recorded amortization expense related to our deferred financing costs of \$27,641 and \$144,683 during the fiscal years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

## REVENUE RECOGNITION

DARPA Contract -- We entered into a government contract with DARPA and have recognized revenue of \$387,438 and \$863,011 under that contract during the fiscal years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. We adopted the Milestone method of revenue recognition for the DARPA contract under ASC 605-28 "Revenue Recognition – Milestone Method" ("ASC 605-28") and we believe we meet the requirements under ASC 605-28 for reporting contract revenue under the Milestone Method for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016.

We identify the deliverables included within the contract and evaluate which deliverables represent separate units of accounting based on if certain criteria are met, including whether the delivered element has standalone value to the collaborator. The consideration received is allocated among the separate units of accounting, and the applicable revenue recognition criteria are applied to each of the separate units.

A milestone is an event having all of the following characteristics:

- (1) There is substantive uncertainty at the date the arrangement is entered into that the event will be achieved. A vendor's assessment that it expects to achieve a milestone does not necessarily mean that there is not substantive uncertainty associated with achieving the milestone.
- (2) The event can only be achieved based in whole or in part on either: (a) the vendor's performance; or (b) a specific outcome resulting from the vendor's performance.
- (3) If achieved, the event would result in additional payments being due to the vendor.

A milestone does not include events for which the occurrence is either: (a) contingent solely upon the passage of time; or (b) the result of a counterparty's performance.

The policy for recognizing deliverable consideration contingent upon achievement of a milestone must be applied consistently to similar deliverables.

The assessment of whether a milestone is substantive is performed at the inception of the arrangement. The consideration earned from the achievement of a milestone must meet all of the following for the milestone to be considered substantive:

- (1) The consideration is commensurate with either: (a) the vendor's performance to achieve the milestone; or (b) the enhancement of the value of the delivered item or items as a result of a specific outcome resulting from the vendor's performance to achieve the milestone;
- (2) The consideration relates solely to past performance; and
- (3) The consideration is reasonable relative to all of the deliverables and payment terms (including other potential milestone consideration) within the arrangement.

A milestone is not considered substantive if any portion of the associated milestone consideration relates to the remaining deliverables in the unit of accounting (i.e., it does not relate solely to past performance). To recognize the milestone consideration in its entirety as revenue in the period in which the milestone is achieved, the milestone must be substantive in its entirety. Milestone consideration cannot be bifurcated into substantive and nonsubstantive components. In addition, if a portion of the consideration earned from achieving a milestone may be refunded or adjusted based on future performance, the related milestone is not considered substantive.

Battelle Subcontract -- We entered into a subcontract agreement with Battelle Memorial Institute ("Battelle") in March 2013. Battelle was chosen by DARPA to be the prime contractor on the systems integration portion of the original DARPA contract and we are one of several subcontractors on that systems integration project. The Battelle subcontract is cost-reimbursable under a time and materials basis. We began generating revenues under the subcontract during the three months ended September 30, 2013 and for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016, we recorded revenue of \$4,635 and \$23,561, respectively, under the Battelle subcontract.

Our revenue under this contract was a function of cost reimbursement plus an overhead mark-up for hours devoted to the project by specific employees (with specific hourly rates for those employees). Battelle engaged us as needed. Each payment required approval by the program manager at Battelle.

#### STOCK-BASED COMPENSATION

Employee stock options and rights to purchase shares under stock participation plans are accounted for under the fair value method. Accordingly, share-based compensation is measured when all granting activities have been completed, generally the grant date, based on the fair value of the award. The exercise price of options is generally equal to the market price of the Company's common stock (defined as the closing price as quoted on the Nasdaq Capital Market or OTCBB on the date of grant). Compensation cost recognized by the Company includes (a) compensation cost for all equity incentive awards granted prior to April 1, 2006, but not yet vested, based on the grant-date fair value estimated in accordance with the original provisions of the then current accounting standards, and (b) compensation cost for all equity incentive awards granted subsequent to March 31, 2006, based on the grant-date fair value estimated in accordance with the provisions of subsequent accounting standards. We use a Binomial Lattice option pricing model for estimating fair value of options granted (see Note 5).

The following table summarizes share-based compensation expenses relating to shares and options granted and the effect on loss per common share during the years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016:

	Fiscal Years Ended	
	March 31, 2017	March 31, 2016
Vesting of Stock Options and Restricted Stock Units	\$ 2,186,309	\$ 202,844
Total Stock-Based Compensation Expense	\$ 2,186,309	\$ 202,844
Weighted average number of common shares outstanding – basic and diluted	7,764,237	7,393,695
Basic and diluted loss per common share	\$ (0.28)	\$ (0.03)

We account for transactions involving services provided by third parties where we issue equity instruments as part of the total consideration using the fair value of the consideration received (i.e. the value of the goods or services) or the fair value of the equity instruments issued, whichever is more reliably measurable. In transactions, when the value of the goods and/or services are not readily determinable and (1) the fair value of the equity instruments is more reliably measurable and (2) the counterparty receives equity instruments in full or partial settlement of the transactions, we use the following methodology:

- a) For transactions where goods have already been delivered or services rendered, the equity instruments are issued on or about the date the performance is complete (and valued on the date of issuance).
- b) For transactions where the instruments are issued on a fully vested, non-forfeitable basis, the equity instruments are valued on or about the date of the contract.
- c) For any transactions not meeting the criteria in (a) or (b) above, we re-measure the consideration at each reporting date based on its then current stock value.

We review share-based compensation on a quarterly basis for changes to the estimate of expected award forfeitures based on actual forfeiture experience. The effect of adjusting the forfeiture rate for all expense amortization after March 31, 2007 is recognized in the period the forfeiture estimate is changed. The effect of forfeiture adjustments for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017 was insignificant.

#### PATENTS

Patents include both foreign and domestic patents. We capitalize the cost of patents, some of which were acquired, and amortize such costs over the shorter of the remaining legal life or their estimated economic life, upon issuance of the patent. The unamortized costs of patents are subject to our review for impairment under our long-lived asset policy above.

#### STOCK PURCHASE WARRANTS

We grant warrants in connection with the issuance of convertible notes payable and the issuance of common stock for cash. When such warrants are classified as equity and issued in connection with debt, we measure the relative estimated fair value of such warrants and record it as a discount from the face amount of the convertible notes payable. Such discounts are amortized to interest expense over the term of the notes using the effective interest method. Warrants issued in connection with common stock for cash, if classified as equity, are considered issued in connection with equity transactions and the warrant fair value is recorded to additional paid-in-capital.

#### DERIVATIVE INSTRUMENTS

We evaluate free-standing derivative instruments (or embedded derivatives) to properly classify such instruments within equity or as liabilities in our financial statements. Our policy is to settle instruments indexed to our common shares on a first-in-first-out basis.

The classification of a derivative instrument is reassessed at each reporting date. If the classification changes as a result of events during a reporting period, the instrument is reclassified as of the date of the event that caused the reclassification. There is no limit on the number of times a contract may be reclassified.

Instruments classified as derivative liabilities are remeasured each reporting period (or upon reclassification) and the change in fair value is recorded on our consolidated statement of operations in other (income) expense. We had no derivative liabilities at either March 31, 2017 or March 31, 2016.

#### BENEFICIAL CONVERSION FEATURE OF CONVERTIBLE NOTES PAYABLE

The convertible feature of certain notes payable provides for a rate of conversion that is below market value. Such feature is normally characterized as a "Beneficial Conversion Feature" ("BCF"). We measure the estimated fair value of the BCF in circumstances in which the conversion feature is not required to be separated from the host instrument and accounted for separately, and record that value in the consolidated financial statements as a discount from the face amount of the notes. Such discounts are amortized to interest expense over the term of the notes.

## RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT EXPENSES

Our research and development costs are expensed as incurred. We incurred approximately \$673,000 and \$782,000 of research and development expenses for the years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively, which are included in various operating expenses in the accompanying consolidated statements of operations.

## OFF-BALANCE SHEET ARRANGEMENTS

We have not entered into any off-balance sheet arrangements that have or are reasonably likely to have a current or future material effect on our consolidated financial statements.

## SIGNIFICANT RECENT ACCOUNTING PRONOUNCEMENTS

During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017, we adopted Financial Accounting Standards Board (“FASB”) Accounting Standards Update (“ASU”) 2015-03, the new accounting standard on imputation of interest, simplifying the presentation of debt issuance costs. As a result of the adoption of that pronouncement, our deferred financing costs at March 31, 2016 were reclassified from current assets to an offset against our convertible notes. We did not have any unamortized deferred financing costs at March 31, 2017.

During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017, we also adopted FASB ASU 2015-01, the new accounting standard on income statement - extraordinary and unusual items (Subtopic 225-20): simplifying income statement presentation by eliminating the concept of extraordinary items and FASB ASU 2014-15, the new accounting standard on the presentation of financial statements - going concern (Subtopic 205-40): disclosure of uncertainties about an entity's ability to continue as a going concern.

The adoption of FASB ASU 2015-01 did not have a material impact on our consolidated financial statements for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2016 and 2017 as we did not have any extraordinary or unusual items in those fiscal years and we believe this accounting pronouncement will not have a significant impact on the our consolidated financial statements in the future.

The adoption of FASB ASU 2014-15 did not have a material impact on our consolidated financial statements for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2016 and 2017 as our management had determined that a going concern qualification for both of those years was appropriate. We have evaluated the new going concern considerations in this ASU and have determined that it is appropriate to provide additional disclosure to our consolidated financial statements (see Note 1).

Management is evaluating significant recent accounting pronouncements that are not yet effective for us, including the new accounting standard on improvements to employee share based payment accounting, ASU 2016-09 (Topic 718), the new accounting standard related to leases, ASU 2016-02 (Topic 842), the new accounting standard for recognition and measurement of financial assets and financial liabilities, and the new accounting standard on revenue recognition, ASU 2014-09 (Topic 606), and have not yet concluded whether any such pronouncements will have a significant effect on our future consolidated financial statements.

## 2. PROPERTY AND EQUIPMENT

Property and equipment, net, consist of the following:

	March 31, 2017	March 31, 2016
Furniture and office equipment, at cost	\$ 352,085	\$ 394,395
Accumulated depreciation	(322,862)	(358,357)
	<u>\$ 29,223</u>	<u>\$ 36,038</u>

Depreciation expense for the years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016 approximated \$23,000 and \$29,000, respectively.

## 3. PATENTS

Patents consist of the following:

	March 31, 2017	March 31, 2016
Patents	\$ 211,645	\$ 211,645
Accumulated amortization	(126,649)	(117,484)
	<u>\$ 84,996</u>	<u>\$ 94,161</u>

Amortization expense for patents for the years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016 approximated \$9,000. Future amortization expense on patents is estimated to be approximately \$9,000 per year based on the estimated life of the patents. The weighted average remaining life of our patents is approximately 4.0 years.

#### 4. CONVERTIBLE NOTES PAYABLE

Convertible Notes Payable, Net consisted of the following at March 31, 2017:

	Principal	Unamortized Discount	Net Amount	Accrued Interest
Convertible Notes Payable, Net – Non-Current Portion:				
November 2014 10% Convertible Notes	\$ 612,811	\$ (275,363)	\$ 337,448	\$ 2,555
December 2016 10% Convertible Notes	680,400	(498,648)	181,752	2,836
Total Convertible Notes Payable, Net	<u>\$ 1,293,211</u>	<u>\$ (774,011)</u>	<u>\$ 519,200</u>	<u>\$ 5,391</u>

During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017, we recorded interest expense of \$81,102 related to the contractual interest rates of our convertible notes, interest expense of \$27,641 related to the amortization of deferred financing costs and interest expense of \$192,798 related to the amortization of the note discount for a total interest expense of \$301,541 related to our convertible notes in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017. All of the unamortized discount at December 31, 2016 related to the note discount established upon the second amendment to the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes and to the December 2016 10% Convertible Notes (see below). Accrued interest is included in other current liabilities (see Note 7).

Convertible Notes Payable, Net consisted of the following at March 31, 2016:

	Principal	Unamortized Discount	Net Amount	Accrued Interest
Convertible Notes Payable, Net– Non-Current Portion:				
November 2014 10% Convertible Notes	\$ 527,780	\$ (27,641)	\$ 500,139	\$ 74,036
Total Convertible Notes Payable, Net	<u>\$ 527,780</u>	<u>\$ (27,641)</u>	<u>\$ 500,139</u>	<u>\$ 74,036</u>

The above table shows the retroactive application of \$27,641 in note discounts representing the deferred financing costs of that same amount on March 31, 2016 due to the application of related to the application of the new accounting standard ASU 2015-03. All of the unamortized discount at March 31, 2016 related to the deferred financing costs noted above.

During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2016, we recorded interest expense of \$52,778 related to the contractual interest rates of our convertible notes, interest expense of \$372,550 related to the amortization of debt discounts on the convertible notes and interest expense of \$144,683 related to the amortization of deferred financing costs for a total of \$570,011. Accrued interest is included in other current liabilities (see Note 7).

#### NOVEMBER 2014 10% CONVERTIBLE NOTES

In November 2014, we entered into a subscription agreement with two accredited investors providing for the issuance and sale of (i) convertible promissory notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$527,780 (the “Notes”) and (ii) five-year warrants to purchase up to 47,125 shares of common stock at a fixed exercise price of \$8.40 per share (the “Warrants”). These Notes bear interest at the annual rate of 10% and originally matured on April 1, 2016.

The aggregate gross cash proceeds to us were \$415,000 after subtracting legal fees of \$35,000, a \$27,780 due diligence fee and an original issuance discount of \$50,000. We recorded deferred financing costs of \$112,780 to reflect the legal fees, due diligence fee and original issuance discount and will amortize those costs over the life of the Notes using the effective interest method.

These Notes are convertible at the option of the holders into shares of our common stock at a fixed price of \$5.60 per share, for up to an aggregate of 94,246 shares of common stock. There are no registration requirements with respect to the shares of common stock underlying the Notes or the Warrants.

The estimated relative fair value of Warrants issued in connection with the Notes was recorded as a debt discount and is amortized as additional interest expense over the term of the underlying debt. We recorded debt discount of \$240,133 based on the relative fair value of these Warrants. In addition, as the effective conversion price of the Notes was less than market price of the underlying common stock on the date of issuance, we recorded an additional debt discount of \$287,647 related to the beneficial conversion feature.



### **Initial Amendment of the November 2014 10% Convertible Note Terms**

On November 12, 2015, we entered into an amendment of terms (“Amendment of Terms”) with the two investors that participated in the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes. The Amendment of Terms modified the terms of the subscription agreement, Notes and Warrants held by those investors to, among other things, extended the maturity date of the Notes from April 1, 2016 to June 1, 2016, temporarily reduced the number of shares that we must reserve with respect to conversion of the Notes, and temporarily suspended the time period during which one of the investors may exercise its Warrants. In exchange for the investors’ agreements in the Amendment of Terms, we paid one of the investors a cash fee of \$90,000, which we recorded as deferred financing costs and amortized over the remaining term of the notes.

### **Second Amendment and Extension of the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes**

On June 27, 2016, we and certain investors entered into further Amendments (the “Amendments”) to the Notes and the Warrants. The Amendments provide that the Maturity Date (as defined in the Notes) was extended from June 1, 2016 to July 1, 2017 and that the conversion price per share of the Notes was reduced from \$5.60 per share of common stock to \$5.00 per share of common stock. In addition, we reduced the purchase price (as defined in the Warrants) from \$8.40 per share to \$5.00 per share of common stock. In connection with these modifications, each of the investors signed a Consent and Waiver providing its consent under certain restrictive provisions, and waiving certain rights, including a right to participate in certain offerings made by us, under a Securities Purchase Agreement dated June 23, 2015, (the “2015 SPA”) to which we, the investors and certain other investors are parties, in order to facilitate an at-the-market equity program (see Note 6).

The Amendments also increase the principal amount of the Notes to \$692,811 (in the aggregate) to (i) include accrued and unpaid interest through June 15, 2016, and (ii) increase the principal amount by \$80,000 (in the aggregate) as an extension fee for the extended maturity date of the Notes. With respect to each Note, we entered into an Allonge to Convertible Promissory Note (each, an “Allonge”) reflecting the changes in the principal amount, Maturity Date and conversion price of the Note.

We also issued to the investors new warrants (the “New Warrants”) to purchase an aggregate of 30,000 shares of common stock with a Purchase Price (as defined in the New Warrants) of \$5.00 per share of common stock. We issued the New Warrants in substantially the same form as the prior Warrants, and the New Warrants will expire on November 6, 2019, the same date on which the prior Warrants will expire.

The modification of the Notes was evaluated under FASB Accounting Standards Codification (“ASC”) Topic No. 470-50-40, “Debt Modification and Extinguishments”. Therefore, according to the guidance, the instruments were determined to be substantially different, and the transaction qualified for extinguishment accounting. As a result, we recorded a loss on debt extinguishment of \$536,889 and recognized an extension fee expense of \$80,000, which are included in other (income) expenses in the accompanying condensed consolidated statements of operations. The debt extinguishment is comprised from the fair value of prior warrants issued in connection with the Notes of \$287,676, as well as \$325,206 related to beneficial conversion feature and offset by debt discount of \$75,993. The beneficial conversion feature is a result of the effective conversion price of the new Notes being less than the market price of the underlying common stock on the date of modification.

### **Third Amendment and Extension of the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes**

In connection with the issuance of the December 2016 10% Convertible Notes, the conversion price of the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes was reduced from \$5.00 to \$4.00 per share and the expiration date of the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes was extended from July 1, 2017 to July 1, 2018.

The modification of the Notes was evaluated under FASB Accounting Standards Codification (“ASC”) Topic No. 470-50-40, “Debt Modification and Extinguishments”. Therefore, according to the guidance, the instruments were determined to be substantially different, and the transaction qualified for extinguishment accounting. As a result, we recorded a gain on debt extinguishment of \$58,691, which is included in other (income) expenses in the accompanying condensed consolidated statements of operations. The recording of the modified Notes resulted in a beneficial conversion of \$233,748 which is the result of the effective conversion price of the new Notes being less than the market price of the underlying common stock on the date of modification.

In June 2017, we agreed with the holders of the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes to an extension of the expiration dates of the notes from July 1, 2018 to July 1, 2019 in exchange for the reduction of the conversion price of those notes from \$4.00 per share to \$3.00 per share (See Note 11).

The following table shows the changes to the principal balance of the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes:

Activity in the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes

Initial principal balance	\$ 527,780
Increase in principal balance under the second amendment (see above)	165,031
Conversions during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017	(80,000)
Balance as of March 31, 2017	<u>\$ 612,811</u>

DECEMBER 2016 10% CONVERTIBLE NOTES

In December 2016, we entered into a securities purchase agreement (the “Securities Purchase Agreement”) with two accredited investors (collectively, the “Holders”), pursuant to which the Holders purchased an aggregate of \$680,400 principal amount of Notes (inclusive of due diligence fee of \$30,000 deemed paid as a subscription amount in the form of a Note in the principal amount of \$32,400) for an aggregate cash subscription amount of \$600,000 and (b) warrants to purchase 127,575 shares of Common Stock (collectively, the “Warrants”).

The Notes bear interest at the rate of 10% per annum, and the principal amount and all accrued and unpaid interest thereon is convertible into shares of our common stock at a \$4.00 per share conversion price, which is subject to customary adjustment provisions for stock splits, dividends, recapitalizations and the like. The Notes mature on July 1, 2018 and are subject to customary and usual terms for events of default and the like. Each Holder has contractually agreed to restrict its ability to convert its Note such that the number of shares of the Common Stock held by the Holder and its affiliates after such exercise does not exceed 4.99% of our then issued and outstanding shares of Common Stock.

The Warrants issued to the Holders are exercisable for a period of five years from the date of issuance at an exercise price of \$4.50, subject to adjustment. A Holder may exercise a Warrant by paying the exercise price in cash or by exercising the Warrant on a cashless basis. In the event a Holder exercises a Warrant on a cashless basis, we will not receive any proceeds. The exercise price of the Warrants is subject to customary adjustments provision for stock splits, stock dividends, recapitalizations and the like. Each Holder has contractually agreed to restrict its ability to exercise its Warrant such that the number of shares of the Common Stock held by the Holder and its affiliates after such exercise does not exceed 4.99% of our then issued and outstanding shares of Common Stock.

The estimated relative fair value of Warrants issued in connection with the Notes was recorded as a debt discount and is being amortized as additional interest expense over the term of the underlying debt. We recorded debt discount of \$232,718 based on the relative fair value of these Warrants. In addition, as the effective conversion price of the Notes was less than market price of the underlying common stock on the date of issuance, we recorded an additional debt discount of \$262,718 related to the beneficial conversion feature. We also recorded deferred financing costs of \$102,940, which was composed of an 8% original issue discount of \$50,400, a \$30,000 due diligence fee (which was paid in the form of a note), \$22,500 in legal fees, and a \$40 bank charge. The combination of the above items led to a combined discount against the convertible notes of \$598,376.

In June 2017, we agreed with the holders of the December 2016 10% Convertible Notes to an extension of the expiration dates of the notes from July 1, 2018 to July 1, 2019 in exchange for the reduction of the conversion price of those notes from \$4.00 per share to \$3.00 per share (See Note 11).

There were no conversions of principal on the December 2016 10% Convertible Notes during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017.

## 5. EQUITY TRANSACTIONS

### ISSUANCES OF COMMON STOCK AND WARRANTS

*Equity Transactions in the Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2017.*

#### **Common Stock Sales Agreement with H.C. Wainwright**

On June 28, 2016, we entered into a Common Stock Sales Agreement (the “Agreement”) with H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC (“H.C. Wainwright”) which establishes an at-the-market equity program pursuant to which we may offer and sell shares of our common stock from time to time as set forth in the Agreement. The Agreement provides for the sale of shares of our common stock having an aggregate offering price of up to \$12,500,000 (the “Shares”).

Subject to the terms and conditions set forth in the Agreement, H.C. Wainwright will use its commercially reasonable efforts consistent with its normal trading and sales practices to sell the Shares from time to time, based upon our instructions. We have provided H.C. Wainwright with customary indemnification rights, and H.C. Wainwright will be entitled to a commission at a fixed rate equal to three percent (3.0%) of the gross proceeds per Share sold. In addition, we have agreed to pay certain expenses incurred by H.C. Wainwright in connection with the Agreement, including up to \$50,000 of the fees and disbursements of their counsel. The Agreement will terminate upon the sale of all of the Shares under the Agreement unless terminated earlier by either party as permitted under the Agreement.

Sales of the Shares, if any, under the Agreement shall be made in transactions that are deemed to be “at the market offerings” as defined in Rule 415 under the Securities Act, including sales made by means of ordinary brokers’ transactions, including on the Nasdaq Capital Market, at market prices or as otherwise agreed with H.C. Wainwright. We have no obligation to sell any of the Shares, and, at any time, we may suspend offers under the Agreement or terminate the Agreement.

In July 2016, we commenced sales of common stock under our Common Stock Sales Agreement with H.C. Wainwright. In the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017, we raised aggregate net proceeds of \$955,206 (net of \$29,831 in commissions to H.C. Wainwright and \$9,432 in other offering expenses) under this agreement through the sale of 216,078 shares at an average price of \$4.42 per share of net proceeds.

#### **Warrant Issuances in July 2016**

In July 2016, we issued an aggregate of 2,660 shares of common stock to three investors upon the exercise of previously issued warrants. The warrants were exercised on a cashless or “net” basis. Accordingly, we did not receive any proceeds from such exercises. The cashless exercise of such warrants resulted in the cancellation of previously issued warrants to purchase an aggregate of 19,563 shares of common stock.

#### **Restricted Stock Unit Grants to Directors and Executive Officers**

During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017, 149,864 Restricted Stock Units (“RSUs”) held by our outside directors and executive officers were exchanged into the same number of shares of our common stock (see Stock-Based Compensation below).

#### **Amendment of Warrants Issued in Conjunction with the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes**

Under the Second Amendment and Extension of the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes dated June 27, 2016 (See Note 4), we reduced the purchase price of 47,125 Warrants from \$8.40 per share to \$5.00 per share.

We also issued to the investors new warrants to purchase an aggregate of 30,000 shares of common stock with a purchase price of \$5.00 per share of common stock. We issued the new warrants in substantially the same form as the prior Warrants, and the new warrants will expire on November 6, 2019, the same date on which the prior warrants will expire (See Note 4).

## **Amendment of December 2014 Warrants**

On June 27, 2016, we and certain investors (the “Unit Investors”) entered into Consent and Waiver and Amendment agreements (the “CWAs”), relating to an aggregate of 264,000 Warrants to Purchase Common Stock (the “Unit Warrants”) we had issued to the Unit Investors on December 2, 2014 pursuant to a Securities Purchase Agreement dated November 26, 2014 (the “2014 SPA”). In the CWAs, each of the Unit Investors provided its consent under certain restrictive provisions, and waived certain rights, including a right to participate in certain offerings made by us, under the 2014 SPA in order to facilitate the at-the-market equity program described above. Pursuant to the CWAs, we reduced the Exercise Price (as defined in the Unit Warrants) from \$15.00 per share of common stock to \$5.00 per share of common stock. At any time that the shares of common stock underlying the Unit Warrants are covered by an effective registration statement that permits the public resale of the shares, if the Unit Investors exercise the Unit Warrants, they must do so by a cash exercise, which could yield up to \$1,320,000 in proceeds to us.

On June 27, 2016, each of the Unit Investors also entered into a Consent and Waiver providing its consent under certain provisions, and waiving certain rights, including a right to participate in certain offerings made by us, under the 2015 SPA in order to facilitate the at-the-market equity program described above.

In accordance with applicable GAAP for warrant modifications, we measured the change in fair value that arose from the reduction in exercise price and recognized an expense of \$345,841, which is included in other (income) expenses in the accompanying condensed consolidated statements of operations.

## **Warrants Issued in Conjunction with the December 2016 10% Convertible Notes**

On December 30, 2016, we entered into a securities purchase agreement (the “Securities Purchase Agreement”) with two accredited investors (collectively, the “Holders”), pursuant to which the Purchasers purchased an aggregate of \$680,400 principal amount of Notes (inclusive of due diligence fee of \$30,000 deemed paid as a subscription amount in the form of a Note in the principal amount of \$32,400) for an aggregate cash subscription amount of \$600,000 and (b) warrants to purchase 127,575 shares of Common Stock (collectively, the “Warrants”) (See Note 4).

The Warrants issued to the Holders are exercisable for a period of five years from the date of issuance at an exercise price of \$4.50, subject to adjustment. A Holder may exercise a Warrant by paying the exercise price in cash or by exercising the Warrant on a cashless basis. In the event a Holder exercises a Warrant on a cashless basis, we will not receive any proceeds. The exercise price of the Warrants is subject to customary adjustments provision for stock splits, stock dividends, recapitalizations and the like. Each Holder has contractually agreed to restrict its ability to exercise its Warrant such that the number of shares of the Common Stock held by the Holder and its affiliates after such exercise does not exceed 4.99% of our then issued and outstanding shares of Common Stock.

The estimated relative fair value of Warrants issued in connection with the Notes was recorded as a debt discount and is amortized as additional interest expense over the term of the underlying debt. We recorded debt discount of \$232,718 based on the relative fair value of these Warrants.

## **MARCH 2017 EQUITY FINANCING**

On March 22, 2017, we entered into a Securities Purchase Agreement (the “Purchase Agreement”) with certain institutional investors (the “Investors”) for the sale of 575,000 shares (the “Common Shares”) of our common stock, par value \$0.001 per share (the “Common Stock”), at a purchase price of \$3.50 per share, in a registered direct offering. Concurrently with the sale of the Common Shares, pursuant to the Purchase Agreement, we also sold in a private placement warrants to purchase 575,000 shares of Common Stock (the “Warrants”). The aggregate gross proceeds for the sale of the Common Shares and Warrants will be approximately \$2 million. Subject to certain ownership limitations, the Warrants will be initially exercisable commencing six months from the issuance date at an exercise price equal to \$3.95 per share of Common Stock, subject to adjustments as provided under the terms of the Warrants. The Warrants will be exercisable for five years from the initial exercise date.

The net proceeds to us from the transactions, after deducting the placement agent’s fees and expenses (not including the Wainwright Warrants, as defined below), our estimated offering expenses, and excluding the proceeds, if any, from the exercise of the Warrants, were \$1,804,250. We intend to use the net proceeds from the transactions for general corporate purposes.

The Common Shares (but not the Warrants or shares issuable upon exercise of the Warrant) were sold by us pursuant to an effective shelf registration statement on Form S-3, which was filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”) on May 5, 2016 and subsequently declared effective on May 12, 2016 (File No. 333-211151) (the “Registration Statement”), and the base prospectus dated as of May 12, 2016 contained therein. We filed a prospectus supplement and the accompanying prospectus with the SEC in connection with this sale of the Common Shares.

The purchase agreement also covered the exchange of 264,000 warrants issued to the purchasers thereunder in December 2014 for 198,000 shares of our common stock. Further, in exchange for certain waivers given by the purchasers and certain other investors in a private placement of the Company in June 2015, the warrants issued in such private placement were amended to (i) reduce the exercise price to \$3.95 per share, (ii) make the warrants non-exercisable for a period of six months from the date of amendment, and (iii) extend the term of those warrants by six months. As all of these warrant-related elements were integral to the March 2017 Equity Financing, we accounted for all of these elements as adjustments to additional paid-in capital.

The Warrants and the shares issuable upon exercise of the Warrants were sold and issued without registration under the Securities Act of 1933 (the “Securities Act”) in reliance on the exemptions provided by Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act as transactions not involving a public offering and Rule 506 promulgated under the Securities Act as sales to accredited investors, and in reliance on similar exemptions under applicable state laws.

We also entered into an engagement letter (the “Engagement Letter”) with Rodman & Renshaw, a unit of H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC (“Rodman”), pursuant to which Rodman agreed to serve as exclusive placement agent for the issuance and sale of the Common Shares and Warrants. We paid Rodman an aggregate fee equal to 6% of the gross proceeds received by us from the sale of the securities in the transactions. Pursuant to the Engagement Letter, we also agreed to grant to Rodman or its designees warrants to purchase up to 3% of the aggregate number of shares sold in the transaction (the “Rodman Warrants”). The Engagement Letter has a nine-month tail and right of first offer periods, indemnity and other customary provisions for transactions of this nature. The Rodman Warrants have substantially the same terms as the Warrants, except that the exercise price is 125% of \$3.50. We also paid Rodman a reimbursement for non-accountable expenses in the amount of \$50,000.

#### *Equity Transactions in the Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2016.*

##### REVERSE STOCK SPLIT

On April 14, 2015, we completed a 1-for-50 reverse stock split. Accordingly, authorized common stock was reduced from 500,000,000 shares to 10,000,000 shares, and each 50 shares of outstanding common stock held by stockholders were combined into one share of common stock. The accompanying condensed consolidated financial statements and accompanying notes have been retroactively revised to reflect such reverse stock split as if it had occurred on April 1, 2014. All share and per share amounts have been revised accordingly.

##### INCREASE IN AUTHORIZED SHARES

On March 31, 2016, we filed a Certificate of Amendment to our Articles of Incorporation to increase our authorized common stock from 10,000,000 to 30,000,000 shares. Our stockholders approved the amendment at our annual meeting of stockholders held on March 29, 2016.

On April 28, 2015, we issued 915 shares of common stock as the result of rounding up of fractional shares that arose due to our reverse stock split.

On June 25, 2015, we sold \$6,000,000 of units, comprised of common stock and warrants, to 18 accredited investors at a price of \$6.30 per unit. Each unit consisted of one share of common stock and 0.75 of a five-year warrant to purchase one share of common stock at an exercise price of \$6.30 per share. Accordingly, we issued a total of 952,383 shares of unregistered common stock and warrants to purchase 714,285 shares of common stock. For its services as sole placement agent for the financing, we paid Roth Capital Partners, LLC (“Roth”) a cash fee of \$285,512 and expense reimbursement of \$75,000 and we issued them a five-year warrant to purchase 32,371 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$6.30 per share. We received \$5,591,988 in net proceeds from this financing. The warrant fair value, which was valued using a binomial lattice model, was recorded to additional paid-in-capital.

In connection with the financing, Mr. James Joyce, our Chief Executive Officer, Mr. James Frakes, our Chief Financial Officer and Dr. Chetan Shah, a director of our company, each agreed to waive their right to exercise certain stock options and warrants held by them representing the right to acquire 402,318 shares of common stock in the aggregate (the “Waivers”). The Waivers were required in order to make a sufficient number of shares of common stock available for issuance and the Waivers expired when we amended our Articles of Incorporation on March 31, 2016.

During the three months ended September 30, 2015, we issued an aggregate of 5,292 shares of common stock to an accredited investor upon the exercise of previously issued warrants. The warrants were exercised on a cashless or “net” basis. Accordingly, we did not receive any proceeds from such exercises. The cashless exercise of such warrants resulted in the cancellation of previously issued warrants to purchase an aggregate of 1,744 shares of common stock.

During the three months ended December 31, 2015, we issued an aggregate of 6,757 unregistered shares of common stock to two investors upon the exercise of previously issued warrants. The warrants were exercised for cash and we received cash proceeds of \$14,766 for an average purchase price of \$2.19 per share per the terms of the warrants.

#### WARRANTS:

During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017, we issued warrants in connection with three financing arrangements. The first warrant issuance during the fiscal year was the issuance of 30,000 warrants with an exercise price of \$5.00 per share in June 2016. Those 30,000 warrants were issued in connection with the Amendment of November 2014 Investment Documents (see Note 4).

The second warrant issuance was the issuance of 127,575 warrants with an exercise price of \$4.50 per share in December 2016. Those 127,575 warrants were issued in connection with the issuance of our December 2016 10% Convertible Notes (see Note 4).

The third warrant issuance during the fiscal year was our March 22, 2017 equity financing with certain institutional investors (the “Investors”) for the sale of 575,000 shares (the “Common Shares”) of our common stock, par value \$0.001 per share (the “Common Stock”), at a purchase price of \$3.50 per share, in a registered direct offering. Concurrently with the sale of the Common Shares, pursuant to the Purchase Agreement, we also sold in a private placement warrants to purchase 575,000 shares of Common Stock (the “Warrants”). Subject to certain ownership limitations, the Warrants will be initially exercisable commencing six months from the issuance date at an exercise price equal to \$3.95 per share of Common Stock, subject to adjustments as provided under the terms of the Warrants. The Warrants will be exercisable for five years from the initial exercise date.

The purchase agreement also covered the exchange of 264,000 warrants issued to the purchasers thereunder in December 2014 for 198,000 shares of our common stock. Further, in exchange for certain waivers given by the purchasers and certain other investors in a private placement of the Company in June 2015, the warrants issued in such private placement were amended to (i) reduce the exercise price to \$3.95 per share, (ii) make the warrants non-exercisable for a period of six months from the date of amendment, and (iii) extend the term of those warrants by six months.

We also entered into an engagement letter (the “Engagement Letter”) with Rodman & Renshaw, a unit of H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC (“Rodman”), pursuant to which Rodman agreed to serve as exclusive placement agent for the issuance and sale of the Common Shares and Warrants. In addition to a cash placement fee equal to 6% of the gross proceeds received by us from the sale of the securities in the transaction, we also agreed to grant to Rodman or its designees warrants to purchase up to 3% of the aggregate number of shares sold in the transaction (the “Rodman Warrants”). The Rodman Warrants have substantially the same terms as the Warrants, except that the exercise price is 125% of \$3.50.

Based on the above assumptions, we valued the warrants issued during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017 as follows:

- The 30,000 warrants issued in June 2016 were valued at \$111,900 and we classified that fair value as equity.
- The 127,575 warrants issued in December 2016 were valued at \$380,174 and we classified \$232,718 of that fair value as debt discount and the remainder as equity.
- The 575,000 warrants issued in March 2017 were valued at \$1,493,390 and we classified that fair value as equity.
- In connection with our March 2017 financing, we agreed to reduce the exercise price on 547,620 warrants from \$6.30 to \$3.44. We valued the change in fair value due to the change in exercise price at \$219,048 and classified that fair value as equity.
- Also in connection with our March 2017 financing, we agreed with the investor in that financing to exchange 198,000 shares for the return and cancellation of 264,000 warrants. We calculated the fair value of those 264,000 warrants at \$528,000 and classified the impact of this share for warrant exchange as equity due to the integral connection with the March 2017 financing.

A summary of the aggregate warrant activity for the years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016 is presented below:

	Fiscal Year Ended March 31,			
	2017		2016	
	Warrants	Weighted Average Exercise Price	Warrants	Weighted Average Exercise Price
Outstanding, beginning of year	2,164,094	\$ 6.68	1,430,738	\$ 6.84
Granted	749,825	\$ 4.10	746,657	\$ 6.30
Exercised	(2,660)	\$ 6.25	(12,049)	\$ 2.15
Cancelled/Forfeited	(307,163)	\$ 5.18	(1,252)	\$ 2.10
Outstanding, end of year	2,604,096	\$ 3.64	2,164,094	\$ 6.68
Exercisable, end of year	2,604,096	\$ 3.64	2,164,094	\$ 6.68
Weighted average estimated fair value of warrants granted		\$ 2.65		\$ 5.11

The following outlines the significant weighted average assumptions used to estimate the fair value of warrants granted utilizing the Binomial Lattice option pricing model:

	Year Ended March 31,	
	2017	2016
Risk free interest rate	0.7% - 1.93%	1.70%
Average expected life	3.42 – 5.5 years	5 years
Expected volatility	88.2% - 96.0%	98.6%
Expected dividends	None	None

The expected volatility was based on the historic volatility. The expected life of options granted was based on the "simplified method" as described in the SEC's guidance due to changes in the vesting terms and contractual life of current option grants compared to our historical grants.

The detail of the warrants outstanding and exercisable as of March 31, 2017 is as follows:

Range of Exercise Prices	Warrants Outstanding			Warrants Exercisable		
	Number Outstanding	Weighted Average Remaining Life (Years)	Weighted Average Exercise Price	Number Outstanding	Weighted Average Exercise Price	
\$5.00 or Below	1,860,101	3.78	\$ 3.67	1,860,101	\$ 3.67	
\$5.20 - \$9.00	711,067	2.77	\$ 6.47	705,067	\$ 6.47	
\$9.65 - \$15.00	32,928	2.37	\$ 12.32	32,928	\$ 12.32	
	2,604,096			2,604,096		

#### STOCK-BASED COMPENSATION:

##### 2000 STOCK OPTION PLAN

Our 2000 Stock Option Plan provides for the grant of incentive stock options to our full-time employees (who may also be directors) and nonstatutory stock options to non-employee directors, consultants, customers, vendors or providers of significant services. The exercise price of any incentive stock option may not be less than the fair market value of the common stock on the date of grant or, in the case of an optionee who owns more than 10% of the total combined voting power of all classes of our outstanding stock, not be less than 110% of the fair market value on the date of grant. The exercise price, in the case of any nonstatutory stock option, must not be less than 75% of the fair market value of the common stock on the date of grant. The amount reserved under the 2000 Stock Option Plan is 10,000 options.

At March 31, 2016, all of the grants previously made under the 2000 Stock Option Plan had expired and 200 unregistered shares had been issued under the plan, with 9,800 available for future issuance.

#### 2010 STOCK INCENTIVE PLAN

In August 2010, we adopted the 2010 Stock Incentive Plan, which provides incentives to attract, retain and motivate employees and directors whose present and potential contributions are important to our success by offering them an opportunity to participate in our future performance through awards of options, the right to purchase common stock, stock bonuses and stock appreciation rights and other awards. A total of 70,000 common shares were initially reserved for issuance under the 2010 Stock Incentive Plan.

In August 2010, we filed a registration statement on Form S-8 for the purpose of registering 70,000 common shares issuable under this plan under the Securities Act, and in July 2012, we filed a registration statement on Form S-8 for the purpose of registering 100,000 common shares issuable under this plan under the Securities Act.

On January 26, 2016, our Board of Directors approved an amendment to the 2010 Stock Incentive Plan to increase the total number of shares of common stock reserved for issuance under the plan to 3,170,000 shares, subject to amendment of our Articles of Incorporation to increase our authorized common stock. On March 29, 2016, we held an annual stockholders meeting, at which our stockholders approved the Amended 2010 Stock Incentive Plan and an amendment of our Articles of Incorporation to increase our authorized common stock to 30,000,000 shares.

At March 31, 2017, we had 2,241,549 shares available under this plan.

#### 2012 DIRECTORS COMPENSATION PROGRAM

In July 2012, our Board of Directors approved a board compensation program that modifies and supersedes the 2005 Directors Compensation Program, which was previously in effect. Under the 2012 program, in which only non-employee directors may participate, an eligible director will receive a grant of \$35,000 worth of ten-year options to acquire shares of common stock, with such grant being valued at the exercise price based on the average of the closing bid prices of the common stock for the five trading days preceding the first day of the fiscal year. In addition, under this program, eligible directors will receive cash compensation equal to \$500 for each committee meeting attended and \$1,000 for each formal board meeting attended.

At March 31, 2017, we had issued 26,757 options under the 2005 program to outside directors and 79,309 options to employee-directors, 21,756 outside directors' options had been forfeited, 5,000 outside directors' options had been exercised, 79,309 employee-directors' options had been forfeited and no options under the 2005 program remained outstanding.

On June 6, 2014, our Board of Directors approved certain changes to the 2012 program. Under this modified program, a new eligible director will receive an initial grant of \$50,000 worth of options to acquire shares of common stock, with such grant being valued at the exercise price based on the average of the closing bid prices of the common stock for the five trading days preceding the first day of the fiscal year. These options will have a term of ten years and will vest 1/3 upon grant and 1/3 upon each of the first two anniversaries of the date of grant. In addition, at the beginning of each fiscal year, each existing director eligible to participate in the modified 2012 program also will receive a grant of \$35,000 worth of options valued at the exercise price based on the average of the closing bid prices of the common stock for the five trading days preceding the first day of the fiscal year. Such options will vest on the first anniversary of the date of grant. In lieu of per meeting fees, eligible directors will receive an annual board retainer fee of \$30,000. The modified 2012 program also provides for the following annual retainer fees: Audit Committee Chair - \$5,000, Compensation Committee chair - \$5,000, Audit Committee member - \$4,000, Compensation Committee member - \$4,000 and lead independent director - \$15,000.

#### RESTRICTED STOCK UNIT GRANTS TO DIRECTORS AND EXECUTIVE OFFICERS

On August 9, 2016, our Board of Directors (the "Board") granted RSUs to certain of our officers and directors as set forth below. The RSUs represent the right to be issued on a future date shares of our common stock for vested RSUs. Our Compensation Committee recommended the grants based on a compensation assessment provided by a third-party compensation consulting firm engaged by us that developed a peer group of companies for market assessment and analyzed compensation at such companies.



The consultant recommended beneficial ownership targets, which we previously disclosed in our Proxy Statement filed on February 23, 2016, in connection with our Annual Meeting of Stockholders held on March 29, 2016. In connection with the Annual Meeting, our stockholders approved our Amended 2010 Stock Incentive Plan, which included an increase in the number of shares available for grant under the plan in part to accommodate equity awards recommended by the Compensation Committee, and our stockholders approved our executive compensation as disclosed in the Proxy Statement pursuant to Item 402 paragraphs (m) through (q) of Regulation S-K as shown below:

To Mr. James A. Joyce, an aggregate of 634,000 RSUs valued at \$6.28 per share, based on the August 9, 2016 closing price of the common stock. 158,500 of the RSUs are deemed vested upon grant and an additional 39,625 RSUs will vest each quarter beginning on January 1, 2017. This grant is intended to increase Mr. Joyce's beneficial ownership of our common stock to 9.0%, which target was recommended in 2015 and in June 2016 by the compensation consultant engaged by us. Previously, in 2004, the Board had approved a beneficial ownership target of 15% for Mr. Joyce. However, Mr. Joyce has agreed to the modified target of 9.0%.

To Mr. Rodney S. Kenley, an aggregate of 52,000 RSUs valued at \$6.28 per share, based on the August 9, 2016 closing price of the common stock. 13,000 of the RSUs are deemed vested upon grant and an additional 3,250 RSUs will vest each quarter beginning on January 1, 2017.

To Mr. James B. Frakes, an aggregate of 52,000 RSUs valued at \$6.28 per share, based on the August 9, 2016 closing price of the common stock. 13,000 of the RSUs are deemed vested upon grant and an additional 3,250 RSUs will vest each quarter beginning on January 1, 2017.

To each of our non-employee directors, Mr. Franklyn S. Barry, Jr., Mr. Edward G. Broenniman and Dr. Chetan S. Shah, 16,432 RSUs valued at an aggregate of \$105,000, based on the average of the closing prices of the common stock for the five trading days preceding and including August 9, 2016. These grants represent (a) \$70,000 worth of RSUs representing two years of grants under the amended 2012 Non-Employee Directors Compensation Program (the "2012 Program") because more than two years have elapsed since Messrs. Barry and Broenniman and Dr. Shah received grants under the program, all of which RSUs are deemed vested upon grant and (b) \$35,000 worth of RSUs representing the grant covering the fiscal year ending March 31, 2017, of which one-quarter were deemed vested upon grant and the remaining portion vested ratably at September 30, 2016, at December 31, 2016 and at March 31, 2017.

The RSUs were granted under our Amended 2010 Stock Incentive Plan and we recorded expense of \$2,076,535 in the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017 related to the RSU grants.

#### CHANGES TO 2012 NON-EMPLOYEE DIRECTORS COMPENSATION PROGRAM

In July 2012, the Board approved the 2012 Program, which modified and superseded the 2005 Directors Compensation Program that had been in effect previously. On June 6, 2014, the Board approved certain changes to the 2012 Program, and on August 9, 2016, the Board approved further modifications to the program. Under the modified 2012 Program, in which only non-employee directors may participate, a new eligible director will receive an initial grant of \$50,000 worth of RSUs or, at the discretion of the Board, options to acquire shares of Common Stock. RSUs granted under this provision will be valued based on the average of the closing prices of the Common Stock for the five trading days preceding and including the date of grant and will vest at a rate determined by the Board in its discretion. Options granted under this provision will be valued at the exercise price, which will be based on the average of the closing prices of the Common Stock for the five trading days preceding and including the date of grant. Such options will have a term of ten years and will vest at a rate determined by the Board in its discretion.

At the beginning of each fiscal year, each existing director eligible to participate in the 2012 Program will receive a grant of \$35,000 worth of RSUs or, at the discretion of the Board, options to acquire shares of Common Stock. RSUs granted under this provision will be valued based on the average of the closing prices of the Common Stock for the five trading days preceding and including the first day of the fiscal year (or preceding and including the date of grant, if such grant is not made on the first day of the fiscal year) and will vest at a rate determined by the Board in its discretion. Options granted under this provision will be valued at the exercise price, which will be based on the average of the closing prices of the Common Stock for the five trading days preceding and including the first day of the fiscal year (or preceding and including the date of grant, if such grant is not made on the first day of the fiscal year). Such options will have a term of ten years and will vest at a rate determined by the Board in its discretion.

In lieu of per meeting fees, under the 2012 Program eligible directors will receive an annual Board retainer fee of \$30,000. The modified 2012 Program also provides for the following annual retainer fees: Audit Committee Chair - \$5,000, Compensation Committee chair - \$5,000, Nominating Committee Chair - \$5,000, Audit Committee member - \$4,000, Compensation Committee member - \$4,000 and Lead independent director (currently an open position) - \$15,000.

The RSU grants and the changes to the 2012 Program were approved and recommended by our Compensation Committee prior to approval by the Board.

RSUs outstanding that have vested and are expected to vest as of March 31, 2017 are as follows:

	Number of RSUs
Vested	46,125
Expected to vest	507,375
Total	553,500

During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017, 36,150 RSUs held by our outside directors were exchanged into the same number of shares of our common stock. As two of our three outside directors elected to return 40% of their RSU's in exchange for cash in order to pay their withholding taxes on the share issuances, 13,146 of the RSUs were cancelled and we paid a total of \$75,550 in cash to those two outside directors.

Also during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017, 184,500 RSUs held by our executives were exchanged into the same number of shares of our common stock. Upon vesting, the RSUs held by our executives were net share-settled to cover the required withholding tax and the remaining amount is converted into an equivalent number of shares of common stock. Total payments for the employees' tax obligations to the taxing authorities are reflected as a financing activity within the Consolidated Statements of Cash Flows. These net-share settlements had the effect of share repurchases by the Company as they reduced and retired the number of shares that would have otherwise been issued as a result of the vesting and did not represent an expense to the Company. As a result of the net share-settlements, 70,786 of the RSUs were cancelled and we issued a net 113,714 shares to our executives.

#### STAND-ALONE GRANTS

From time to time our Board of Directors grants common stock or common share purchase options or warrants to selected directors, officers, employees and consultants as equity compensation to such persons on a stand-alone basis outside of any of our formal stock plans. The terms of these grants are individually negotiated.

#### STOCK OPTION ACTIVITY

There were no stock option grants during the fiscal years ended March 31, 2017 and March 31, 2016. There was no stock option activity during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017 other than the expiration of 6,500 stock options during the period.

The following is a summary of the stock options outstanding at March 31, 2017 and 2016 and the changes during the years then ended:

	Fiscal Year Ended March 31,			
	2017		2016	
	Options	Weighted Average Exercise Price	Options	Weighted Average Exercise Price
Outstanding, beginning of year	438,547	\$ 10.94	501,690	\$ 11.00
Granted	—	N/A	—	\$ N/A
Exercised	—	N/A	—	\$ N/A
Cancelled/Forfeited	(6,500)	\$ 7.96	(63,143)	\$ 11.45
Outstanding, end of year	432,047	\$ 10.98	438,547	\$ 10.94
Exercisable, end of year	414,547	\$ 11.24	388,414	\$ 11.53
Weighted average estimated fair value of options granted		N/A		\$ N/A

The detail of the options outstanding and exercisable as of March 31, 2017 is as follows:

Exercise Prices	Options Outstanding			Options Exercisable		
	Number Outstanding	Weighted Average Remaining Life (Years)	Weighted Average Exercise Price	Number Outstanding	Weighted Average Exercise Price	
\$3.80 - \$9.50	184,047	6.70 years	\$ 6.82	166,547	\$ 6.86	
\$12.50	163,000	3.39 years	\$ 12.50	163,000	\$ 12.50	
\$18.00 - \$20.50	85,000	1.02 years	\$ 19.03	85,000	\$ 19.03	
	<u>432,047</u>			<u>414,547</u>		

We recorded stock-based compensation expense related to share issuances and to options granted totaling \$2,186,309 and \$202,844 for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. These expenses were recorded as stock compensation included in payroll and related expenses in the accompanying consolidated statement of operations for the years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016.

Our total stock-based compensation for fiscal years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016 included the following:

	Fiscal Year Ended	
	March 31, 2017	March 31, 2016
Vesting of stock options	\$ 2,186,309	\$ 202,844
Total Stock-Based Compensation	<u>\$ 2,186,309</u>	<u>\$ 202,844</u>

We review share-based compensation on a quarterly basis for changes to the estimate of expected award forfeitures based on actual forfeiture experience. The cumulative effect of adjusting the forfeiture rate for all expense amortization is recognized in the period the forfeiture estimate is changed. The effect of forfeiture adjustments for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017 was insignificant.

As of March 31, 2017, we had \$3,203,208 of remaining unrecognized stock-based compensation expense, which is expected to be recognized over a weighted average remaining vesting period of 2.62 years.

On March 31, 2017, our stock options had a negative intrinsic value since the closing price on that date of \$3.27 per share was below the weighted average exercise price of our stock options.

## 6. RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS

### DUE TO RELATED PARTIES

Historically, certain of our officers and other related parties have advanced us funds, agreed to defer compensation and/or paid expenses on our behalf to cover working capital deficiencies. There were no such related party transactions during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017 except that we had accrued unpaid Board fees of \$28,250 owed to our outside directors as of March 31, 2017.

## 7. OTHER CURRENT LIABILITIES

Other current liabilities were comprised of the following items:

	March 31, 2017	March 31, 2016
Accrued interest	\$ 5,391	\$ 74,038
Other accrued liabilities	64,076	62,657
Total other current liabilities	<u>\$ 69,467</u>	<u>\$ 136,695</u>

## 8. INCOME TAXES

For the years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016, we had no income tax expense due to our net operating losses and 100% deferred tax asset valuation allowance.

At March 31, 2017 and 2016, we had net deferred tax assets as detailed below. These deferred tax assets are primarily composed of capitalized research and development costs and tax net operating loss carryforwards. Due to uncertainties surrounding our ability to generate future taxable income to realize these assets, a 100% valuation has been established to offset the net deferred tax assets.

Significant components of our net deferred tax assets at March 31, 2017 and 2016 are shown below:

	YEAR ENDED MARCH 31,	
	2017	2016
Deferred tax assets:		
Capitalized research and development	\$ 3,442,000	\$ 3,442,000
Net operating loss carryforwards	22,060,000	20,126,000
Stock compensation	318,000	—
Total deferred tax assets	25,820,000	23,568,000
Total deferred tax liabilities	—	—
Net deferred tax assets	25,820,000	23,568,000
Valuation allowance for deferred tax assets	(25,820,000)	(23,568,000)
Net deferred tax assets	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>

At March 31, 2017, we had tax net operating loss carryforwards for federal and state purposes approximating \$57 million and \$45 million, which begin to expire in the year 2023.

The provision for income taxes on earnings subject to income taxes differs from the statutory federal rate for the years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016 due to the following:

	2017	2016
Income taxes (benefit) at federal statutory rate of 34%	\$ (2,484,000)	\$ (1,686,000)
State income tax, net of federal benefit	(438,000)	(298,000)
Tax effect on non-deductible expenses and credits	382,000	69,000
Change in valuation allowance <sup>1</sup>	2,540,000	1,915,000
	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ —</u>

<sup>(1)</sup> Pursuant to Internal Revenue Code Sections 382, use of our tax net operating loss carryforwards may be limited.

ASC 740, "Income Taxes", clarifies the accounting for uncertainty in income taxes recognized in an entity's financial statements, and prescribes recognition thresholds and measurement attributes for financial statement disclosure of tax positions taken or expected to be taken on a tax return. Under ASC 740, the impact of an uncertain income tax position on the income tax return must be recognized at the largest amount that is more-likely-than-not to be sustained upon audit by the relevant taxing authority. An uncertain income tax position will not be recognized if it has less than a 50% likelihood of being sustained. Additionally, ASC 740 provides guidance on derecognition, classification, interest and penalties, accounting in interim periods, disclosure and transition. Our practice is to recognize interest and/or penalties related to income tax matters in income tax expense. During the years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016, we did not recognize any interest or penalties relating to tax matters.

At and for the years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016, management does not believe the Company has any uncertain tax positions. Accordingly, there are no unrecognized tax benefits at March 31, 2017 or March 31, 2016.

Our tax returns remain open for examination by the applicable authorities, generally 3 years for federal and 4 years for state. We are currently not under examination by any taxing authorities.

## 9. DARPA CONTRACT AND RELATED REVENUE RECOGNITION

As discussed in Note 1, we entered into a contract with DARPA on September 30, 2011. Under the DARPA award, we have been engaged to develop a therapeutic device to reduce the incidence of sepsis, a fatal bloodstream infection that often results in the death of combat-injured soldiers. The award from DARPA was a fixed-price contract with potential total payments to us of \$6,794,389 over the course of five years. Fixed price contracts require the achievement of multiple, incremental milestones to receive the full award during each year of the contract. Under the terms of the contract, we performed certain incremental work towards the achievement of specific milestones against which we invoiced the government for fixed payment amounts.

Originally, only the base year (year one of the contract) was effective for the parties; however, DARPA subsequently exercised its option on the remaining years of the contract. The milestones were comprised of planning, engineering and clinical targets, the achievement of which in some cases required the participation and contribution of third-party participants under the contract. We commenced work under the contract in October 2011 and completed the contract in September 2016.

In February 2014, DARPA reduced the scope of our contract in years three through five of the contract. The reduction in scope focused our research on exosomes, viruses and blood processing instrumentation. This scope reduction reduced the possible payments under the contract by \$858,469 over years three through five.

In the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017, we invoiced the U.S. Government for the final two milestones under our DARPA contract in the aggregate amount of \$387,438. In the fiscal year ended March 31, 2016, we invoiced the U.S. Government for four milestones under our DARPA contract in the amount of \$863,011.

### *Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2017*

In the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017, we invoiced the U.S. Government for the final two milestones under our DARPA contract in the aggregate amount of \$387,438.

The details of those milestones were as follows:

Milestone 2.6.1.3 - Quantify the degree to which the MERS virus can be extracted from circulation in vitro using miniature Hemopurifiers. The milestone payment was \$193,719. Management considers this milestone to be substantive as it was not dependent on the passage of time nor was it based solely on another party's efforts. We quantified the degree to which the MERS virus can be extracted from circulation in vitro using miniature Hemopurifiers. The report was accepted by the contracting officer's representative and the invoice was submitted thereafter.

Milestone 2.6.1.4 – Prepare and present Final Report for DARPA. The milestone payment was \$193,719. Management considers this milestone to be substantive as it was not dependent on the passage of time nor was it based solely on another party's efforts. We prepared and presented the Final Report for DARPA. The report was accepted by the contracting officer's representative and the invoice was submitted thereafter.

### *Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2016*

During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2016, we invoiced the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency for four milestones totaling \$863,011. The details of those milestones were as follows:

Milestone M6 – Define Aethlon's GMP manufacturing process and revise and upgrade Aethlon's quality procedures and policies to the current state of the art. The milestone payment was \$186,164. Management considers this milestone to be substantive as it was not dependent on the passage of time nor was it based solely on another party's efforts. We demonstrated that defined our GMP manufacturing process and that we revised and upgraded our quality procedures and policies to the current state of the art for a company of our size. The report was accepted by the contracting officer's representative and the invoice was submitted thereafter.

Milestone 2.5.1.1 - Complete Aethlon's GMP procedure and establish and maintain all GMP documentation for the company. The milestone payment was \$186,164. Management considers this milestone to be substantive as it was not dependent on the passage of time nor was it based solely on another party's efforts. We demonstrated that we completed our GMP procedures and established and maintained all GMP documentation for the company. The report was accepted by the contracting officer's representative and the invoice was submitted thereafter.

Milestone 2.5.2.2 – Finish construction and begin delivery of 50 prototype cartridges for testing by the systems integrator. The milestone payment was \$296,964. Management considers this milestone to be substantive as it was not dependent on the passage of time nor was it based solely on another party's efforts. We demonstrated that we completed the construction of 50 prototype cartridges and were prepared to deliver the cartridges to the systems integrator. The report was accepted by the contracting officer's representative and the invoice was submitted thereafter.

Milestone 2.6.1.1 – System integrator acceptance of the hemofilter device. The milestone payment was \$193,719. Management considers this milestone to be substantive as it was not dependent on the passage of time nor was it based solely on another party's efforts. We demonstrated that we completed this milestone by confirmation by the systems integrator that it was accepting the hemofilter device as part of their overall system.

## 10. SEGMENTS

We operate our businesses principally through two reportable segments: Aethlon, which represents our therapeutic business activities, and ESI, which represents our diagnostic business activities. Our reportable segments have been determined based on the nature of the potential products being developed. We record discrete financial information for ESI and our chief operating decision maker reviews ESI's operating results in order to make decisions about resources to be allocated to the ESI segment and to assess its performance.

Aethlon's revenue is generated primarily from government contracts to date and ESI does not yet have any revenues. We have not included any allocation of corporate overhead to the ESI segment.

The following tables set forth certain information regarding our segments:

	Fiscal Years Ended March 31,	
	2017	2016
Revenues:		
Aethlon	\$ 392,073	\$ 886,572
ESI	–	–
Total Revenues	<u>\$ 392,073</u>	<u>\$ 886,572</u>
Operating Losses:		
Aethlon	\$ (5,945,293)	\$ (3,953,402)
ESI	(153,064)	(431,432)
Total Operating Loss	<u>\$ (6,098,357)</u>	<u>\$ (4,384,834)</u>
Net Losses:		
Aethlon	\$ (7,153,662)	\$ (4,527,184)
ESI	(153,064)	(431,432)
Net Loss Before Non-Controlling Interests	<u>\$ (7,306,726)</u>	<u>\$ (4,958,616)</u>
Cash:		
Aethlon	\$ 1,558,667	\$ 2,114,285
ESI	1,034	9,452
Total Cash	<u>\$ 1,559,701</u>	<u>\$ 2,123,737</u>
Total Assets:		
Aethlon	\$ 1,698,249	\$ 2,475,686
ESI	28,119	53,430
Total Assets	<u>\$ 1,726,368</u>	<u>\$ 2,529,116</u>
Capital Expenditures:		
Aethlon	\$ 16,433	\$ 9,307
ESI	–	–
Capital Expenditures	<u>\$ 16,433</u>	<u>\$ 9,307</u>
Depreciation and Amortization:		
Aethlon	\$ 22,370	\$ 18,943
ESI	10,043	19,581
Total Depreciation and Amortization	<u>\$ 32,413</u>	<u>\$ 38,524</u>
Interest Expense:		
Aethlon	\$ 304,330	\$ 573,782
ESI	–	–
Total Interest Expense	<u>\$ 304,330</u>	<u>\$ 573,782</u>

## 11. SUBSEQUENT EVENTS

Management has evaluated events subsequent to March 31, 2017 through the date that the accompanying consolidated financial statements were filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission for transactions and other events which may require adjustment of and/or disclosure in such financial statements.

In April 2017, we agreed with two individual investors to exchange 11,497 restricted shares for the cancellation of 22,993 warrants.

In April 2017, we issued 15,000 shares of restricted common stock at a price of \$2.24 per share in payment for digital communications consulting services valued at \$33,600 based on the value of the services provided.

In April 2014, we terminated a previously recorded but unissued share issuance of 68,000 shares under a fully vested restricted stock grant to our CEO and issued to him 32,674 shares as a net settlement of shares and the Company paid the withholding taxes associated with that share issuance in return for the cancellation of 35,326 shares. The compensation cost of that restricted stock grant had been fully recorded over prior fiscal years, therefore no expense was recorded regarding this net issuance.

In April 2017, 46,125 RSUs held by our executives were exchanged into the same number of shares of our common stock. As our executives elected to net settle a portion of their RSU's in exchange for the Company paying the related withholding taxes on the share issuance, 23,655 of the RSUs were cancelled and we issued a net 22,470 shares to our executives.

In the period since March 31, 2017, sold 1,000 shares of common stock under our Common Stock Sales Agreement with H.C. Wainwright. We raised aggregate net proceeds of \$1,903 (net of \$63 in commissions to H.C. Wainwright and \$133 in other offering expenses) under this agreement at an average price of \$1.90 per share of net proceeds.

In June 2017, we issued options to four of our employees to purchase 34,500 shares of common stock at a price of \$1.68 per share, the closing price on the date of the approval of the option grants by our compensation committee.

In June 2017, we entered into an Exchange Agreement with two institutional investors under which we issued 57,844 restricted shares in exchange for the cancellation of 77,125 warrants held by those investors. Additionally, we agreed with those investors that they would extend the expiration dates of convertible notes held by those investors from July 1, 2018 to July 1, 2019 in exchange for the reduction of the conversion price of those notes from \$4.00 per share to \$3.00 per share.

## 12. COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES

### EMPLOYMENT CONTRACTS

We entered into an employment agreement with our Chairman of the Board ("Chairman") effective April 1, 1999. The agreement, which is cancelable by either party upon sixty days' notice, will be in effect until the Chairman retires or ceases to be employed by us. Under the terms of the agreement, if the Chairman is terminated he may become eligible to receive a salary continuation payment in the amount of at least twelve months' base salary, which was increased to \$385,000 per year in September 2015.

We entered into an employment agreement with Dr. Richard H. Tullis, Ph. D. ("Tullis") effective January 10, 2000 as our Chief Science Officer ("CSO"). Under the terms of the agreement, if Tullis is terminated he may become eligible to receive a salary continuation payment in the amount of twelve months' base salary, which is \$195,000 per year.

In February 2016, we entered into a part-time consulting agreement with Tullis. Under that agreement, Tullis continued to provide services under the terms of a consulting agreement with us. In connection with the change in his employment, Tullis resigned as our Vice President. Under the consulting agreement, Tullis rendered approximately twenty (20) hours per week of such services, for which we paid him a consulting fee of \$10,000 per month. The term of the consulting agreement was for an initial sixty-day period and, unless terminated earlier by either party, shall automatically extend for additional one-month periods. Either party to the consulting agreement may terminate it upon 30 day's prior written notice to the other party.

Concurrently with the entry into the consulting agreement, Tullis and the Company mutually agreed to terminate his employment agreement with us.

In November 2016, the scope of the consulting agreement was amended to reduce the hours from 20 hours per week to 20 hours per month with a reduction in monthly consulting fees from the original \$10,000 per month to \$4,000 per month.

Then in February 2017, the scope of the consulting agreement was further amended to reduce the hours from 20 hours per month to 10 hours per month with a reduction in monthly consulting fees from \$4,000 per month to \$2,000 per month.

#### RETENTION AGREEMENTS

On October 16, 2015, following a recommendation of our Compensation Committee, we approved retention bonus grants to three of our executive officers under a newly established Aethlon Senior Management Retention Program to maintain management stability going forward. The Board approved a \$100,000 retention bonus for Mr. James A. Joyce, our Chief Executive Officer, a \$50,000 retention bonus for Mr. Rodney S. Kenley, our President, and a \$50,000 retention bonus for Mr. James B. Frakes, our Chief Financial Officer.

In connection with the bonus granted to Mr. Joyce, we entered into an amendment of Mr. Joyce's Employment Agreement dated April 1, 1999. Pursuant to the amendment, if within two years of the effective date of the amendment, we terminate Mr. Joyce's employment with us for "Cause" (as defined in his employment agreement) or Mr. Joyce terminates his employment with us other than for "Good Reason" (as defined in his employment agreement), Mr. Joyce must repay in full the amount of the bonus received from us. In the event of his death or disability or termination by us other than for "Cause" or termination by Mr. Joyce for "Good Reason," Mr. Joyce will not be required to repay any portion of the bonus received by him.

In connection with the bonus granted to Mr. Kenley, we entered into an amendment of Mr. Kenley's Offer Letter dated October 27, 2010. Pursuant to the amendment, if within two years of the effective date of the amendment, we terminate Mr. Kenley's employment with us for "Cause" (as defined in the amendment) or Mr. Kenley terminates his employment with us other than for "Good Reason" (as defined in the amendment), Mr. Kenley must repay in full the amount of the bonus received from us. In the event of his death or disability or termination by us other than for "Cause" or termination by Mr. Kenley for "Good Reason," Mr. Kenley will not be required to repay any portion of the bonus received by him.

In connection with the bonus granted to Mr. Frakes, we entered into a Retention Bonus Agreement with Mr. Frakes. Pursuant to the agreement, if within two years of the effective date of the agreement, we terminate Mr. Frakes' employment with us for "Cause" (as defined in the agreement) or Mr. Frakes terminates his employment with us other than for "Good Reason" (as defined in the agreement), Mr. Frakes must repay in full the amount of the bonus received from us. In the event of his death or disability or termination by us other than for "Cause" or termination by Mr. Frakes for "Good Reason," Mr. Frakes will not be required to repay any portion of the bonus received by him.

#### LEASE COMMITMENTS

We currently rent approximately 2,600 square feet of executive office space at 9635 Granite Ridge Drive, Suite 100, San Diego, CA 92123 at the rate of \$6,054 per month on a four-year lease that expires in January 2019. We also rent approximately 1,700 square feet of laboratory space at 11585 Sorrento Valley Road, Suite 109, San Diego, California 92121 at the rate of \$4,838 per month on a one-year lease that expires in November 2016. Our current plans are to renew the lease prior to expiration or to secure alternative lab space in the San Diego area.

Our Exosome Sciences, Inc. subsidiary previously rented approximately 2,055 square feet of office and laboratory space at 11 Deer Park Drive, South Brunswick, NJ at the rate of \$3,917 per month on a one-year lease that expired in October 2015. In October 2015, Exosome Sciences, Inc. relocated to a different suite at the same office complex. That new suite was comprised of approximately 541 square feet of office and laboratory space and is located at 9 Deer Park Drive, South Brunswick, NJ at the rate of \$1,352 per month under a month to month lease basis. In January 2016, we exercised our 30-day notice to terminate the Exosome Sciences' lease in New Jersey as part of a consolidation of our laboratory operations in San Diego.



Rent expense, which is included in general and administrative expenses, approximated \$151,000 and \$144,000 for the fiscal years ended March 31, 2017 and 2016, respectively. As of March 31, 2017, our commitments under the lease agreements are as follows:

	Fiscal Year Ending	
	2018	2019
9635 Granite Ridge Drive, Suite 100, San Diego, CA 92123 office lease	\$ 78,156	\$ 21,446
11585 Sorrento Valley Road, Suite 109, San Diego, CA 92121 office lease	47,054	—
Total Lease Commitments	<u>\$ 125,210</u>	<u>\$ 21,446</u>

#### LEGAL MATTERS

From time to time, claims are made against us in the ordinary course of business, which could result in litigation. Claims and associated litigation are subject to inherent uncertainties and unfavorable outcomes could occur, such as monetary damages, fines, penalties or injunctions prohibiting us from selling one or more products or engaging in other activities.

The occurrence of an unfavorable outcome in any specific period could have a material adverse effect on our results of operations for that period or future periods. We are not presently a party to any pending or threatened legal proceedings.

AETHLON MEDICAL, INC. AND SUBSIDIARY  
CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED BALANCE SHEETS

	June 30, 2017 (Unaudited)	March 31, 2017
<b>ASSETS</b>		
Current assets		
Cash	\$ 327,206	\$ 1,559,701
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	38,450	37,551
Total current assets	365,656	1,597,252
Property and equipment, net	45,893	29,223
Patents and patents pending, net	82,705	84,996
Deposits	14,897	14,897
Total assets	<u>\$ 509,151</u>	<u>\$ 1,726,368</u>
<b>LIABILITIES AND STOCKHOLDERS' (DEFICIT) EQUITY</b>		
Current liabilities		
Accounts payable	\$ 277,094	\$ 484,423
Due to related parties	48,366	57,866
Other current liabilities	82,845	69,467
Total current liabilities	408,305	611,756
Convertible notes payable, net	1,050,911	519,200
Total liabilities	1,459,216	1,130,956
Commitments and Contingencies (Note 13)		
Stockholders' (Deficit) Equity		
Common stock, par value \$0.001 per share; 30,000,000 shares authorized as of June 30, 2017 and March 31, 2017; 8,869,571 and 8,797,086 shares issued and outstanding as of June 30, 2017 and March 31, 2017, respectively	8,869	8,796
Additional paid-in capital	94,745,740	94,445,739
Accumulated deficit	(95,619,939)	(93,778,156)
Total Aethlon Medical, Inc. stockholders' (deficit) equity before noncontrolling interests	(865,330)	676,379
Noncontrolling interests	(84,735)	(80,967)
Total stockholders' (deficit) equity	(950,065)	595,412
Total liabilities and stockholders' (deficit) equity	<u>\$ 509,151</u>	<u>\$ 1,726,368</u>

See accompanying notes.

AETHLON MEDICAL, INC. AND SUBSIDIARY  
CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF OPERATIONS  
For the Three Month Periods Ended June 30, 2017 and 2016  
(Unaudited)

	Three Months Ended June 30, 2017	Three Months Ended June 30, 2016
<b>REVENUES</b>		
Government contract revenue	\$ —	\$ 4,635
Total revenues	—	4,635
<b>OPERATING EXPENSES</b>		
Professional fees	343,023	567,749
Payroll and related expenses	630,227	344,987
General and administrative	186,999	223,551
Total operating expenses	1,160,249	1,136,287
<b>OPERATING LOSS</b>	<b>(1,160,249)</b>	<b>(1,131,652)</b>
<b>OTHER EXPENSE</b>		
Interest and other debt expenses	188,604	42,167
Loss on debt extinguishment	376,909	616,889
Loss on share for warrant exchanges	119,789	—
Warrant repricing expense	—	345,841
Total other expense	685,302	1,004,897
<b>NET LOSS BEFORE NONCONTROLLING INTERESTS</b>	<b>(1,845,551)</b>	<b>(2,136,549)</b>
<b>LOSS ATTRIBUTABLE TO NONCONTROLLING INTERESTS</b>	<b>(3,769)</b>	<b>(7,732)</b>
<b>NET LOSS ATTRIBUTABLE TO COMMON STOCKHOLDERS</b>	<b>\$ (1,841,782)</b>	<b>\$ (2,128,817)</b>
<b>BASIC AND DILUTED LOSS PER SHARE AVAILABLE TO COMMON STOCKHOLDERS</b>	<b>\$ (0.21)</b>	<b>\$ (0.28)</b>
<b>WEIGHTED AVERAGE NUMBER OF COMMON SHARES OUTSTANDING – BASIC AND DILUTED</b>	<b>8,805,522</b>	<b>7,622,393</b>

See accompanying notes.

AETHLON MEDICAL, INC. AND SUBSIDIARY  
CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED STATEMENTS OF CASH FLOWS  
For the Three Months Ended June 30, 2017 and 2016  
(Unaudited)

	Three Months Ended June 30, 2017	Three Months Ended June 30, 2016
Cash flows from operating activities:		
Net loss	\$ (1,845,551)	\$ (2,136,549)
Adjustments to reconcile net loss to net cash used in operating activities:		
Depreciation and amortization	9,326	10,218
Stock based compensation	280,911	50,710
Loss on warrant repricing	—	345,841
Common stock issued for services	33,600	—
Loss on share for warrant exchanges	119,789	—
Loss on debt extinguishment	376,909	616,889
Amortization of debt discount and deferred financing costs	154,802	27,641
Changes in operating assets and liabilities:		
Accounts receivable	—	199,471
Prepaid expenses and other current assets	(899)	30,462
Accounts payable and other current liabilities	(193,951)	144,246
Due to related parties	(9,500)	(116,862)
Net cash used in operating activities	<u>(1,074,564)</u>	<u>(827,933)</u>
Cash flows from investing activities:		
Purchases of property and equipment	<u>(23,705)</u>	<u>(1,545)</u>
Net cash used in investing activities	<u>(23,705)</u>	<u>(1,545)</u>
Cash flows from financing activities:		
Proceeds from the issuance of common stock, net	1,903	—
Cash paid for repurchase of restricted stock units	<u>(136,129)</u>	<u>—</u>
Net cash used in financing activities	<u>(134,226)</u>	<u>—</u>
Net decrease in cash	(1,232,495)	(829,478)
Cash at beginning of period	<u>1,559,701</u>	<u>2,123,737</u>
Cash at end of period	<u>\$ 327,206</u>	<u>\$ 1,294,259</u>
Supplemental disclosures of non-cash investing and financing activities:		
Debt discount on convertible notes payable	<u>\$ 242,299</u>	<u>\$ 75,994</u>
Issuance of shares under vested restricted stock units	<u>\$ 22</u>	<u>\$ —</u>
Reclassification of accrued interest to convertible notes payable	<u>\$ —</u>	<u>\$ 85,031</u>

See accompanying notes.

AETHLON MEDICAL, INC. AND SUBSIDIARY  
NOTES TO CONDENSED CONSOLIDATED FINANCIAL STATEMENTS (UNAUDITED)  
June 30, 2017

1. NATURE OF BUSINESS AND BASIS OF PRESENTATION

ORGANIZATION

Aethlon Medical, Inc. and subsidiary (“Aethlon”, the “Company”, “we” or “us”) is a medical device company focused on creating innovative devices that address unmet medical needs in global health and biodefense.

We create medical technologies to address unmet needs in global health and biodefense. The Aethlon Hemopurifier® is a clinical-stage therapeutic device that eliminates life-threatening viruses from the circulatory system of infected individuals. We believe the Aethlon Hemopurifier® can achieve the broad-spectrum countermeasure goal set forth by the U.S. Department of Health and Human Services (HHS). The device has been validated to capture Ebola, Zika, Lassa, MERS-CoV, HIV, Hepatitis C, Cytomegalovirus, Epstein-Barr, Herpes Simplex, Chikungunya, Dengue, West Nile, Smallpox related viruses, H1N1 Swine Flu, H5N1 Bird Flu, and the reconstructed Spanish flu virus of 1918. At present, the Hemopurifier is being advanced under an FDA approved clinical study. Aethlon is also the majority owner of Exosome Sciences, Inc., a company focused on the discovery of exosomal biomarkers to diagnose and monitor life-threatening diseases.

On June 25, 2013, the United States Food and Drug Administration (FDA) approved an Investigational Device Exemption (IDE) that allows us to initiate human feasibility studies of the Aethlon Hemopurifier® in the U.S. We ended the treatment phase of that study after treating eight end-stage renal disease patients who were infected with the Hepatitis C virus (HCV) to demonstrate the safety of Hemopurifier therapy. Successful completion of this study, including submission to and acceptance by the FDA of the final study documents and related patient treatment data, will allow us the opportunity to initiate pivotal studies that are required for market clearance to treat HCV and other disease conditions in the U.S.

Successful outcomes of human trials will also be required by the regulatory agencies of certain foreign countries where we intend to sell this device. Some of our patents may expire before FDA approval or approval in a foreign country, if any, is obtained. However, we believe that certain patent applications and/or other patents issued more recently will help protect the proprietary nature of the Hemopurifier(R) treatment technology.

In October 2013, our subsidiary, Exosome Sciences, Inc. (“ESI”), commenced operations with a focus on advancing exosome-based strategies to diagnose and monitor the progression of cancer, infectious disease and other life-threatening conditions.

Our common stock is quoted on the Nasdaq Capital Market under the symbol “AEMD.”

SUMMARY OF SIGNIFICANT ACCOUNTING POLICIES

During the three months ended June 30, 2017, there have been no changes to our significant accounting policies as described in our Annual Report on Form 10-K for the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017.

The accompanying unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements of the Company have been prepared in accordance with U.S. generally accepted accounting principles (GAAP) for interim financial information and with the instructions to Form 10-Q and Article 8 of the Securities and Exchange Commission (SEC) Regulation S-X. Accordingly, they should be read in conjunction with the audited financial statements and notes thereto for the year ended March 31, 2017, included in the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed with the SEC on June 28, 2017. The accompanying unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements include the accounts of Aethlon Medical, Inc. and its majority-owned subsidiary. All significant inter-company transactions and balances have been eliminated in consolidation. The unaudited condensed consolidated financial statements contain all normal recurring accruals and adjustments that, in the opinion of management, are necessary to present fairly the condensed consolidated financial statements as of and for the three months ended June 30, 2017, and the condensed consolidated statement of cash flows for the three months ended June 30, 2017. Estimates were made relating to useful lives of fixed assets, valuation allowances, the fair value of warrants, impairment of assets, share-based compensation expense and accruals for clinical trial and research and development expenses. Actual results could differ materially from those estimates. Certain amounts previously reported in the financial statements have been reclassified to conform to the current presentation. Such reclassifications did not affect net loss, equity or cash flows. The accompanying condensed consolidated balance sheet at March 31, 2017 has been derived from the audited consolidated balance sheet at March 31, 2017, contained in the above referenced 10-K. The results of operations for the three months ended June 30, 2017 are not necessarily indicative of the results to be expected for the full year or any future interim periods.

On March 31, 2016, we filed a Certificate of Amendment to our Articles of Incorporation to increase our authorized common stock from 10,000,000 to 30,000,000 shares. Our stockholders approved the amendment at our annual meeting of stockholders held on March 29, 2016.

## LIQUIDITY AND GOING CONCERN

Management does not expect existing cash as of June 30, 2017 to be sufficient to fund the Company's operations for at least twelve months from the issuance date of these interim financial statements. These financial statements have been prepared on a going concern basis which assumes the Company will continue to realize its assets and discharge its liabilities in the normal course of business. As of June 30, 2017, the Company has incurred losses totaling approximately \$95,620,000 since inception, has not yet generated material revenue from operations, and will require additional funds to maintain its operations. These factors raise substantial doubt regarding the Company's ability to continue as a going concern within one year after these consolidated financial statements are issued. The Company's ability to continue as a going concern is dependent upon its ability to generate future profitable operations and obtain the necessary financing to meet its obligations and repay its liabilities arising from normal business operations when they become due. The Company intends to finance operating costs over the next twelve months through its existing financial resources and we may also raise additional capital through equity offerings, including an equity offering of up to \$7.5 million based on a registration statement on Form S-1 that we filed with the SEC on July 31, 2017, debt financings, collaborations and/or licensing arrangements. If adequate funds are not available on acceptable terms, we may be required to delay, reduce the scope of, or curtail, our operations. The accompanying consolidated financial statements do not include any adjustments to the recoverability and classification of recorded asset amounts and classification of liabilities that might be necessary should the Company be unable to continue as a going concern.

## 2. LOSS PER COMMON SHARE

Basic loss per share is computed by dividing net income available to common stockholders by the weighted average number of common shares outstanding during the period of computation. The weighted average number of common shares outstanding for the three months ended June 30, 2017 includes 46,125 vested restricted stock units. Diluted loss per share is computed similar to basic loss per share except that the denominator is increased to include the number of additional common shares that would have been outstanding if potential common shares had been issued, if such additional common shares were dilutive. Since we had net losses for all periods presented, basic and diluted loss per share are the same, and additional potential common shares have been excluded as their effect would be antidilutive.

As of June 30, 2017 and 2016, a total of 3,893,303 and 2,771,780 potential common shares, consisting of shares underlying outstanding stock options, warrants, unvested restricted stock units and convertible notes payable were excluded as their inclusion would be antidilutive.

## 3. RESEARCH AND DEVELOPMENT EXPENSES

Our research and development costs are expensed as incurred. We incurred research and development expenses during the three month periods ended June 30, 2017 and 2016, which are included in various operating expense line items in the accompanying condensed consolidated statements of operations. Our research and development expenses in those periods were as follows:

	June 30, 2017	June 30, 2016
Three months ended	<u>\$ 157,463</u>	<u>\$ 117,664</u>

## 4. FUTURE ACCOUNTING PRONOUNCEMENTS

Management is evaluating significant recent accounting pronouncements that are not yet effective for us, including the new accounting standard on improvements to employee share based payment accounting, ASU 2016-09 (Topic 718), the new accounting standard related to leases, ASU 2016-02 (Topic 842), the new accounting standard for recognition and measurement of financial assets and financial liabilities, and the new accounting standard on revenue recognition, ASU 2014-09 (Topic 606), and have not yet concluded whether any such pronouncements will have a significant effect on our future consolidated financial statements.

## 5. CONVERTIBLE NOTES PAYABLE, NET

Convertible Notes Payable, Net consisted of the following at June 30, 2017:

	Principal	Unamortized Discount	Net Amount	Accrued Interest
Convertible Notes Payable, Net – Non-Current Portion:				
November 2014 10% Convertible Notes	\$ 612,811	\$ (114,850)	\$ 497,961	\$ 17,875
December 2016 10% Convertible Notes	680,400	(127,450)	552,950	19,846
Total Convertible Notes Payable, Net	<u>\$ 1,293,211</u>	<u>\$ (242,300)</u>	<u>\$ 1,050,911</u>	<u>\$ 37,721</u>

During the three months ended June 30, 2017, we recorded interest expense of \$33,802 related to the contractual interest rates of our convertible notes and interest expense of \$154,802 related to the amortization of the note discount for a total interest expense of \$188,604 related to our convertible notes in the three months ended June 30, 2017. All of the unamortized discount at June 30, 2017 related to the note discount established upon the June 2017 amendment to the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes and to the December 2016 10% Convertible Notes (see below).

Convertible Notes Payable, Net consisted of the following at March 31, 2017 (our most recent fiscal year end):

	Principal	Unamortized Discount	Net Amount	Accrued Interest
Convertible Notes Payable, Net – Non-Current Portion:				
November 2014 10% Convertible Notes	\$ 612,811	\$ (275,363)	\$ 337,448	\$ 2,555
December 2016 10% Convertible Notes	680,400	(498,648)	181,752	2,836
Total Convertible Notes Payable, Net	<u>\$ 1,293,211</u>	<u>\$ (774,011)</u>	<u>\$ 519,200</u>	<u>\$ 5,391</u>

During the three months ended June 30, 2016, we recorded interest expense of \$13,882 related to the contractual interest rates of our convertible notes and interest expense of \$27,641 related to the amortization of deferred financing costs for a total interest expense of \$41,523 related to our convertible notes in the three months ended June 30, 2016.

### NOVEMBER 2014 10% CONVERTIBLE NOTES

In November 2014, we entered into a subscription agreement with two accredited investors providing for the issuance and sale of (i) convertible promissory notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$527,780 (the “Notes”) and (ii) five year warrants to purchase up to 47,125 shares of common stock at a fixed exercise price of \$8.40 per share (the “Warrants”). These Notes bear interest at the annual rate of 10% and originally matured on April 1, 2016.

The aggregate gross cash proceeds to us were \$415,000 after subtracting legal fees of \$35,000, a \$27,780 due diligence fee and an original issuance discount of \$50,000. We recorded deferred financing costs of \$112,780 to reflect the legal fees, due diligence fee and original issuance discount and will amortize those costs over the life of the Notes using the effective interest method.

These Notes are convertible at the option of the holders into shares of our common stock at a fixed price of \$5.60 per share, for up to an aggregate of 94,246 shares of common stock. There are no registration requirements with respect to the shares of common stock underlying the Notes or the Warrants.

The estimated relative fair value of Warrants issued in connection with the Notes was recorded as a debt discount and is amortized as additional interest expense over the term of the underlying debt. We recorded debt discount of \$240,133 based on the relative fair value of these Warrants. In addition, as the effective conversion price of the Notes was less than market price of the underlying common stock on the date of issuance, we recorded an additional debt discount of \$287,647 related to the beneficial conversion feature.

### Initial Amendment of the November 2014 10% Convertible Note Terms

On November 12, 2015, we entered into an amendment of terms (“Amendment of Terms”) with the two investors that participated in the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes. The Amendment of Terms modified the terms of the subscription agreement, Notes and Warrants held by those investors to, among other things, extended the maturity date of the Notes from April 1, 2016 to June 1, 2016, temporarily reduced the number of shares that we must reserve with respect to conversion of the Notes, and temporarily suspended the time period during which one of the investors may exercise its Warrants. In exchange for the investors’ agreements in the Amendment of Terms, we paid one of the investors a cash fee of \$90,000, which we recorded as deferred financing costs and amortized over the remaining term of the notes.

## Second Amendment and Extension of the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes

On June 27, 2016, we and certain investors entered into further Amendments (the “Amendments”) to the Notes and the Warrants. The Amendments provide that the Maturity Date (as defined in the Notes) was extended from June 1, 2016 to July 1, 2017 and that the conversion price per share of the Notes was reduced from \$5.60 per share of common stock to \$5.00 per share of common stock. In addition, we reduced the purchase price (as defined in the Warrants) from \$8.40 per share to \$5.00 per share of common stock. In connection with these modifications, each of the investors signed a Consent and Waiver providing its consent under certain restrictive provisions, and waiving certain rights, including a right to participate in certain offerings made by us, under a Securities Purchase Agreement dated June 23, 2015, (the “2015 SPA”) to which we, the investors and certain other investors are parties, in order to facilitate an at-the-market equity program (see Note 6).

The Amendments also increase the principal amount of the Notes to \$692,811 (in the aggregate) to (i) include accrued and unpaid interest through June 15, 2016, and (ii) increase the principal amount by \$80,000 (in the aggregate) as an extension fee for the extended maturity date of the Notes. With respect to each Note, we entered into an Allonge to Convertible Promissory Note (each, an “Allonge”) reflecting the changes in the principal amount, Maturity Date and conversion price of the Note.

We also issued to the investors new warrants (the “New Warrants”) to purchase an aggregate of 30,000 shares of common stock with a Purchase Price (as defined in the New Warrants) of \$5.00 per share of common stock. We issued the New Warrants in substantially the same form as the prior Warrants, and the New Warrants will expire on November 6, 2019, the same date on which the prior Warrants will expire.

The modification of the Notes was evaluated under FASB Accounting Standards Codification (“ASC”) Topic No. 470-50-40, “Debt Modification and Extinguishments” (“ASC 470-50-40”). Therefore, according to the guidance, the instruments were determined to be substantially different, and the transaction qualified for extinguishment accounting. As a result, we recorded a loss on debt extinguishment of \$536,889 and recognized an extension fee expense of \$80,000, which are included in other (income) expenses in the accompanying condensed consolidated statements of operations. The debt extinguishment is comprised from the fair value of prior warrants issued in connection with the Notes of \$287,676, as well as \$325,206 related to beneficial conversion feature and offset by debt discount of \$75,993. The beneficial conversion feature is a result of the effective conversion price of the new Notes being less than the market price of the underlying common stock on the date of modification.

## Third Amendment and Extension of the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes

In connection with the issuance of the December 2016 10% Convertible Notes, the conversion price of the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes was reduced from \$5.00 to \$4.00 per share and the expiration date of the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes was extended from July 1, 2017 to July 1, 2018.

The modification of the Notes was evaluated under ASC 470-50-40 and the instruments were determined to be substantially different, and the transaction qualified for extinguishment accounting. As a result, we recorded a gain on debt extinguishment of \$58,691, which is included in other (income) expenses in the accompanying condensed consolidated statements of operations. The recording of the modified Notes resulted in a beneficial conversion of \$233,748 which is the result of the effective conversion price of the new Notes being less than the market price of the underlying common stock on the date of modification.

## June 2017 Amendment to the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes

In June 2017, we agreed with the holders of the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes to an extension of the expiration dates of the notes from July 1, 2018 to July 1, 2019 in exchange for the reduction of the conversion price of those notes from \$4.00 per share to \$3.00 per share. The modification of the Notes was evaluated under ASC 470-50-40 and the instruments were determined to be substantially different, and the transaction qualified for extinguishment accounting. Under the extinguishment accounting we recorded a loss on debt extinguishment of \$178,655 and recalculated a revised debt discount on the notes.

The following table shows the changes to the principal balance of the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes:

### Activity in the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes

Initial principal balance	\$	527,780
Increase in principal balance under the second amendment (see above)		165,031
Conversions during the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017		(80,000)
Balance as of June 30, 2017	\$	<u>612,811</u>



## DECEMBER 2016 10% CONVERTIBLE NOTES

In December 2016, we entered into a securities purchase agreement (the “Securities Purchase Agreement”) with two accredited investors (collectively, the “Holders”), pursuant to which the Holders purchased an aggregate of \$680,400 principal amount of Notes (inclusive of due diligence fee of \$30,000 deemed paid as a subscription amount in the form of a Note in the principal amount of \$32,400) for an aggregate cash subscription amount of \$600,000 and (b) warrants to purchase 127,575 shares of Common Stock (collectively, the “Warrants”).

The Notes bear interest at the rate of 10% per annum, and the principal amount and all accrued and unpaid interest thereon is convertible into shares of our common stock at a \$4.00 per share conversion price, which is subject to customary adjustment provisions for stock splits, dividends, recapitalizations and the like. The Notes mature on July 1, 2018 and are subject to customary and usual terms for events of default and the like. Each Holder has contractually agreed to restrict its ability to convert its Note such that the number of shares of the Common Stock held by the Holder and its affiliates after such exercise does not exceed 4.99% of our then issued and outstanding shares of Common Stock.

The Warrants issued to the Holders are exercisable for a period of five years from the date of issuance at an exercise price of \$4.50, subject to adjustment. A Holder may exercise a Warrant by paying the exercise price in cash or by exercising the Warrant on a cashless basis. In the event a Holder exercises a Warrant on a cashless basis, we will not receive any proceeds. The exercise price of the Warrants is subject to customary adjustments provision for stock splits, stock dividends, recapitalizations and the like. Each Holder has contractually agreed to restrict its ability to exercise its Warrant such that the number of shares of the Common Stock held by the Holder and its affiliates after such exercise does not exceed 4.99% of our then issued and outstanding shares of Common Stock.

The estimated relative fair value of Warrants issued in connection with the Notes was recorded as a debt discount and is being amortized as additional interest expense over the term of the underlying debt. We recorded debt discount of \$232,718 based on the relative fair value of these Warrants. In addition, as the effective conversion price of the Notes was less than market price of the underlying common stock on the date of issuance, we recorded an additional debt discount of \$262,718 related to the beneficial conversion feature. We also recorded deferred financing costs of \$102,940, which was composed of an 8% original issue discount of \$50,400, a \$30,000 due diligence fee (which was paid in the form of a note), \$22,500 in legal fees, and a \$40 bank charge. The combination of the above items led to a combined discount against the convertible notes of \$598,376.

### June 2017 Amendment to the December 2016 10% Convertible Notes

In June 2017, we agreed with the holders of the December 2016 10% Convertible Notes to an extension of the expiration dates of the notes from July 1, 2018 to July 1, 2019 in exchange for the reduction of the conversion price of those notes from \$4.00 per share to \$3.00 per share. The modification of the notes was evaluated under ASC 470-50-40 and the instruments were determined to be substantially different, and the transaction qualified for extinguishment accounting. Under the extinguishment accounting we recorded a loss on debt extinguishment of \$198,254 and recalculated a revised debt discount on the notes.

There have been no conversions of principal on the December 2016 10% Convertible Notes through June 30, 2017.

## 6. EQUITY TRANSACTIONS IN THE THREE MONTHS ENDED JUNE 30, 2017

### Common Stock Sales Agreement with H.C. Wainwright

On June 28, 2016, we entered into a Common Stock Sales Agreement (the “Agreement”) with H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC (“H.C. Wainwright”) which establishes an at-the-market equity program pursuant to which we may offer and sell shares of our common stock from time to time as set forth in the Agreement. The Agreement provides for the sale of shares of our common stock having an aggregate offering price of up to \$12,500,000 (the “Shares”).

Subject to the terms and conditions set forth in the Agreement, H.C. Wainwright will use its commercially reasonable efforts consistent with its normal trading and sales practices to sell the Shares from time to time, based upon our instructions. We have provided H.C. Wainwright with customary indemnification rights, and H.C. Wainwright will be entitled to a commission at a fixed rate equal to three percent (3.0%) of the gross proceeds per Share sold. In addition, we have agreed to pay certain expenses incurred by H.C. Wainwright in connection with the Agreement, including up to \$50,000 of the fees and disbursements of their counsel. The Agreement will terminate upon the sale of all of the Shares under the Agreement unless terminated earlier by either party as permitted under the Agreement (see Note 14).

Sales of the Shares, if any, under the Agreement shall be made in transactions that are deemed to be “at the market offerings” as defined in Rule 415 under the Securities Act, including sales made by means of ordinary brokers’ transactions, including on the Nasdaq Capital Market, at market prices or as otherwise agreed with H.C. Wainwright. We have no obligation to sell any of the Shares, and, at any time, we may suspend offers under the Agreement or terminate the Agreement.

In July 2016, we commenced sales of common stock under our Common Stock Sales Agreement with H.C. Wainwright. In the three months ended June 30, 2017, we raised aggregate net proceeds of \$1,903 (net of \$63 in commissions to H.C. Wainwright and \$133 in other offering expenses) under this agreement through the sale of 1,000 shares at an average price of \$1.90 per share of net proceeds.

#### **Restricted Shares Issued for Services**

During the three months ended June 30, 2017, we issued 15,000 shares of restricted common stock at a price of \$2.24 per share, the market price at time of issuance, in payment for investor relations consulting services valued at \$33,600 based on the value of the services provided.

#### **Share for Warrant Exchanges**

During the three months ended June 30, 2017, we agreed with two individual investors to exchange 11,497 restricted shares for the cancellation of 22,993 warrants.

Also during the three months ended June 30, 2017, we entered into an Exchange Agreement with two institutional investors under which we issued 57,844 restricted shares in exchange for the cancellation of 77,125 warrants held by those investors. Additionally, we agreed with those investors that they would extend the expiration dates of convertible notes held by those investors from July 1, 2018 to July 1, 2019 in exchange for the reduction of the conversion price of those notes from \$4.00 per share to \$3.00 per share (see Note 5). Based upon the fair value of the shares issued and warrants exchanged, we recorded a loss of \$119,789 during the three months ended June 30, 2017 for all of the above share for warrant exchanges.

#### **Stock Option Issuances**

During the three months ended June 30, 2017, we issued options to four of our employees to purchase 34,500 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$1.68 per share, the closing price on the date of the approval of the option grants by our compensation committee (see Note 9).

#### **Termination of Restricted Share Grant**

During the three months ended June 30, 2017, we terminated a previously recorded but unissued share issuance of 68,000 shares under a fully vested restricted stock grant to our CEO and issued to him 32,674 shares as a net settlement of shares and the Company paid the withholding taxes associated with that share issuance in return for the cancellation of 35,326 shares. The compensation cost of that restricted stock grant had been fully recorded over prior fiscal years, therefore no expense was recorded regarding this net issuance.

#### **Restricted Stock Unit Grants to Executive Officers**

During the three months ended June 30, 2017, 46,125 RSUs held by our executives were exchanged into the same number of shares of our common stock. As our executives elected to net settle a portion of their RSU’s in exchange for the Company paying the related withholding taxes on the share issuance, 23,655 of the RSUs were cancelled and we issued a net 22,470 shares to our executives (see Note 9).

### **7. RELATED PARTY TRANSACTIONS**

#### **DUE TO RELATED PARTIES**

During the three months June 30, 2017 we accrued unpaid Board fees of \$18,750 owed to our outside directors as of June 30, 2017.

## 8. OTHER CURRENT LIABILITIES

Other current liabilities were comprised of the following items:

	June 30, 2016	March 31, 2017
Accrued interest	\$ 37,721	\$ 5,391
Other accrued liabilities	45,124	64,076
Total other current liabilities	<u>\$ 82,845</u>	<u>\$ 69,467</u>

## 9. STOCK COMPENSATION

The following tables summarize share-based compensation expenses relating to Restricted Stock Units (“RSU”)s and options granted and the effect on basic and diluted loss per common share during the three month periods ended June 30, 2017 and 2016:

	Three Months Ended June 30, 2017	Three Months Ended June 30, 2016
Vesting of stock options and restricted stock units	\$ 280,911	\$ 50,710
Total stock-based compensation expense	<u>\$ 280,911</u>	<u>\$ 50,710</u>
Weighted average number of common shares outstanding – basic and diluted	<u>8,805,522</u>	<u>7,622,393</u>
Basic and diluted loss per common share attributable to stock-based compensation expense	<u>\$ (0.03)</u>	<u>\$ (0.01)</u>

All of the stock-based compensation expense recorded during the three months ended June 30, 2017 and 2016, which totaled \$280,911 and \$50,710, respectively, is included in payroll and related expense in the accompanying condensed consolidated statements of operations.

We review share-based compensation on a quarterly basis for changes to the estimate of expected award forfeitures based on actual forfeiture experience. The cumulative effect of adjusting the forfeiture rate for all expense amortization is recognized in the period the forfeiture estimate is changed. The effect of forfeiture adjustments for the three months ended June 30, 2017 was insignificant.

### Restricted Stock Unit Grants to Directors and Executive Officers

On August 9, 2016, our Board of Directors (the “Board”) granted RSUs to certain of our officers and directors. The RSUs represent the right to be issued on a future date shares of our common stock for vested RSUs. Our Compensation Committee recommended the grants based on a compensation assessment provided by a third-party compensation consulting firm engaged by us that developed a peer group of companies for market assessment and analyzed compensation at such companies.

The RSUs were granted under our Amended 2010 Stock Incentive Plan and we recorded expense of \$260,699 in the three months ended June 30, 2017 related to the RSU grants.

RSUs outstanding that have vested and are expected to vest as of June 30, 2017 are as follows:

	Number of RSUs
Vested	46,125
Expected to vest	461,250
Total	<u>507,375</u>

During the three months ended June 30, 2017, 46,125 vested RSUs held by our executives were exchanged into the same number of shares of our common stock. As our executives elected to net settle a portion of their RSU's in exchange for the Company paying the related withholding taxes on the share issuance, 23,655 of the RSUs were cancelled and we issued a net 22,470 shares to our executives.

### Stock Option Activity

During the three months ended June 30, 2017, we issued options to four of our employees to purchase 34,500 shares of common stock at a price of \$1.68 per share, the closing price on the date of the approval of the option grants by our compensation committee. There were no stock option grants during the three months ended June 30, 2016.

Options outstanding that have vested and are expected to vest as of June 30, 2017 are as follows:

	<b>Number of Shares</b>	<b>Weighted Average Exercise Price</b>	<b>Weighted Average Remaining Contractual Term in Years</b>
Vested	414,547	\$ 11.24	4.05
Expected to vest	52,000	\$ 2.80	8.71
Total	<u>466,547</u>		

The following outlines the significant weighted average assumptions used to estimate the fair value information presented, with respect to stock option grants utilizing the Binomial Lattice option pricing models at, and during the three months ended June 30, 2017:

Risk free interest rate	2.21%
Average expected life	10 years
Expected volatility	92.14%
Expected dividends	None

The expected volatility was based on the historic volatility. The expected life of options granted was based on the "simplified method" as described in the SEC's guidance due to changes in the vesting terms and contractual life of current option grants compared to our historical grants.

A summary of stock option activity during the three months ended June 30, 2017 is presented below:

	<b>Amount</b>	<b>Range of Exercise Price</b>	<b>Weighted Average Exercise Price</b>
Stock options outstanding at March 31, 2017	432,047	\$3.80-\$20.50	\$ 10.98
Exercised	—	—	—
Granted	34,500	\$1.68	\$ 1.68
Cancelled/Expired	—	—	—
Stock options outstanding at June 30, 2017	<u>466,547</u>	<u>\$1.68-\$20.50</u>	<u>\$ 10.30</u>
Stock options exercisable at June 30, 2017	<u>414,547</u>	<u>\$3.80-\$20.50</u>	<u>\$ 11.24</u>

On June 30, 2017, our stock options had no intrinsic value since the closing price on that date of \$2.14 per share was below the weighted average exercise price of our stock options.

At June 30, 2017, there was approximately \$2,666,508 of unrecognized compensation cost related to share-based payments, which is expected to be recognized over a weighted average period of 2.37 years.

## 10. WARRANTS

During the three months ended June 30, 2017, we did not issue any warrants

A summary of warrant activity during the three months ended June 30, 2017 is presented below:

	Amount	Range of Exercise Price	Weighted Average Exercise Price
Warrants outstanding at March 31, 2017	2,604,096	\$2.10 - \$15.00	\$ 3.64
Exercised	—	n/a	n/a
Issued	—	n/a	n/a
Cancelled/Expired	(128,357)	\$5.00 - \$9.00	\$ 5.80
Warrants outstanding at June 30, 2017	2,475,739	\$2.10 - \$15.00	\$ 3.47
Warrants exercisable at June 30, 2017	2,475,739	\$2.10 - \$15.00	\$ 3.47

The following outlines the significant weighted average assumptions used to estimate the fair value information presented, with respect to warrants utilizing the Binomial Lattice option pricing models at, and during the three months ended June 30, 2016:

Risk free interest rate	0.79% – 1.38%
Average expected life	3 months – 2.33 years
Expected volatility	68% – 111%
Expected dividends	None

The expected volatility was based on the historic volatility. The expected life of options granted was based on the "simplified method" as described in the SEC's guidance due to changes in the vesting terms and contractual life of current option grants compared to our historical grants.

Based on the above assumptions, we valued the warrants that were exchanged for common stock (see Note 6) during the three months ended June 30, 2017 at \$119,789.

## 11. DARPA CONTRACT AND RELATED REVENUE RECOGNITION

As discussed in Note 1, we entered into a contract with Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency ("DARPA") on September 30, 2011. Under the DARPA award, we have been engaged to develop a therapeutic device to reduce the incidence of sepsis, a fatal bloodstream infection that often results in the death of combat-injured soldiers. The award from DARPA was a fixed-price contract with potential total payments to us of \$6,794,389 over the course of five years. Fixed price contracts require the achievement of multiple, incremental milestones to receive the full award during each year of the contract. Under the terms of the contract, we performed certain incremental work towards the achievement of specific milestones against which we invoiced the government for fixed payment amounts.

Originally, only the base year (year one of the contract) was effective for the parties; however, DARPA subsequently exercised its option on the remaining years of the contract. The milestones were comprised of planning, engineering and clinical targets, the achievement of which in some cases required the participation and contribution of third-party participants under the contract. We commenced work under the contract in October 2011 and completed the contract in September 2016.

In February 2014, DARPA reduced the scope of our contract in years three through five of the contract. The reduction in scope focused our research on exosomes, viruses and blood processing instrumentation. This scope reduction reduced the possible payments under the contract by \$858,469 over years three through five.

The DARPA contract concluded on September 30, 2016. Also, during the three months ended June 30, 2016, we did not invoice the U.S. Government for any milestones.

## 12. SEGMENTS

We operate our businesses principally through two reportable segments: Aethlon, which represents our therapeutic business activities, and ESI, which represents our diagnostic business activities. Our reportable segments have been determined based on the nature of the potential products being developed. We record discrete financial information for ESI and our chief operating decision maker reviews ESI's operating results in order to make decisions about resources to be allocated to the ESI segment and to assess its performance.

Aethlon's revenue is generated primarily from government contracts to date and ESI does not yet have any revenues. We have not included any allocation of corporate overhead to the ESI segment.

The following tables set forth certain information regarding our segments:

	Three Months Ended June 30,	
	2017	2016
<b>Revenues:</b>		
Aethlon	\$ —	\$ 4,635
ESI	—	—
Total Revenues	<u>\$ 392,073</u>	<u>\$ 4,635</u>
<b>Operating Losses:</b>		
Aethlon	\$ (1,141,406)	\$ (1,092,990)
ESI	(18,843)	(38,662)
Total Operating Loss	<u>\$ (1,160,249)</u>	<u>\$ (1,131,652)</u>
<b>Net Losses:</b>		
Aethlon	\$ (1,826,708)	\$ (2,097,887)
ESI	(18,843)	(38,662)
Net Loss Before Non-Controlling Interests	<u>\$ (1,845,551)</u>	<u>\$ (2,136,549)</u>
<b>Cash:</b>		
Aethlon	\$ 326,464	\$ 1,291,537
ESI	742	2,722
Total Cash	<u>\$ 327,206</u>	<u>\$ 1,294,259</u>
<b>Total Assets:</b>		
Aethlon	\$ 492,324	\$ 1,419,226
ESI	16,827	41,806
Total Assets	<u>\$ 509,151</u>	<u>\$ 1,461,032</u>
<b>Capital Expenditures:</b>		
Aethlon	\$ 23,705	\$ 1,545
ESI	—	—
Capital Expenditures	<u>\$ 23,705</u>	<u>\$ 1,545</u>
<b>Depreciation and Amortization:</b>		
Aethlon	\$ 9,326	\$ 5,323
ESI	—	4,895
Total Depreciation and Amortization	<u>\$ 9,326</u>	<u>\$ 10,218</u>
<b>Interest Expense:</b>		
Aethlon	\$ (188,604)	\$ (42,167)
ESI	—	—
Total Interest Expense	<u>\$ (188,604)</u>	<u>\$ (42,167)</u>

### 13. COMMITMENTS AND CONTINGENCIES

#### LEASE COMMITMENTS

We currently rent approximately 2,600 square feet of executive office space at 9635 Granite Ridge Drive, Suite 100, San Diego, CA 92123 at the rate of \$6,054 per month on a four-year lease that expires in January 2019. We also rent approximately 1,700 square feet of laboratory space at 11585 Sorrento Valley Road, Suite 109, San Diego, California 92121 at the rate of \$4,394 per month on a one-year lease that was extended to an expiration date of November 30, 2017.

Rent expense, which is included in general and administrative expenses, approximated \$35,000 and \$34,000 for the three month periods ended June 30, 2017 and 2016, respectively.

#### LEGAL MATTERS

From time to time, claims are made against us in the ordinary course of business, which could result in litigation. Claims and associated litigation are subject to inherent uncertainties and unfavorable outcomes could occur, such as monetary damages, fines, penalties or injunctions prohibiting us from selling one or more products or engaging in other activities.

The occurrence of an unfavorable outcome in any specific period could have a material adverse effect on our results of operations for that period or future periods. We are not presently a party to any pending or threatened legal proceedings.

### 14. SUBSEQUENT EVENTS

Management has evaluated events subsequent to June 30, 2017 through the date that the accompanying condensed consolidated financial statements were filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission for transactions and other events which may require adjustment of and/or disclosure in such financial statements.

Subsequent to June 30, 2017, we continued selling common stock under our Common Stock Sales Agreement with H.C. Wainwright (see Note 6). Between the period of July 1, 2017 through August 10, 2017, we raised net proceeds of \$40,377 (after deducting \$1,290 in commissions to H.C. Wainwright and \$1,326 in other offering expenses) utilizing the sales agreement through the sale of 22,252 shares at an average price of \$1.81 per share of net proceeds.

Also subsequent to June 30, 2017, we agreed with a former placement agent to exchange 5,500 restricted shares for the cancellation of 11,000 warrants.

On July 31, 2017, we filed an S-1 registration statement with the SEC to raise up to \$7.5 million through the sale of common stock and warrants. We engaged H.C. Wainwright & Co, LLC as our exclusive placement agent on the financing.

Aethlon Medical, Inc.

Up to 4,777,070 Units (each Unit contains 1 Share of Common Stock and 1 Common Warrant to purchase .75 of a Share of Common Stock)

or

Up to 4,777,070 Pre-funded Units (each Pre-funded Unit contains 1 Pre-funded Warrant to Purchase 1 Share of Common Stock and 1 Common Warrant to purchase .75 of a Share of Common Stock)

(4,777,070 Shares of Common Stock Underlying the Pre-funded Warrants) and

(3,582,803 Shares of Common Stock Underlying the Common Warrants)

Prospectus

H.C. Wainwright & Co.

, 2017

---



**PART II**  
**INFORMATION NOT REQUIRED IN PROSPECTUS**

**Item 13. Other Expenses of Issuance and Distribution.**

The following table sets forth the various expenses to be incurred in connection with the registration of the securities being registered by this registration statement, all of which will be borne by us. All amounts shown are estimates except the Securities and Exchange Commission registration fee.

Securities and Exchange Commission registration fee	\$	2,446.22
FINRA filing fee*		
Transfer agent's fees and expenses*		
Printing and engraving expenses		
Legal fees and expenses*		
Accounting fees and expenses*		
Miscellaneous*		
Total expenses*	\$	

\*Not determinable at the time of filing and will be added by amendment.

**Item 14. Indemnification of Directors and Officers.**

***Nevada Law***

We are incorporated in Nevada. Subsection 1 of Section 78.7502 of the Nevada Revised Statutes empowers a corporation to indemnify any person who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any threatened, pending or completed action, suit or proceeding, whether civil, criminal, administrative or investigative (other than an action by or in the right of the corporation) by reason of the fact that he is or was a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation, or is or was serving at the request of the corporation as a director, officer, employee or agent of another corporation or other enterprise, against expenses (including attorneys' fees), judgments, fines and amounts paid in settlement actually and reasonably incurred by him in connection with such action, suit or proceeding if he is not liable pursuant to Section 78.138 of the Nevada Revised Statutes or if he acted in good faith and in a manner he reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of the corporation, and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, had no reasonable cause to believe his conduct was unlawful. Subsection 7 of Section 78.138 provides that, with certain exceptions, a director or officer is not individually liable to the corporation or its stockholders or creditors for any damages as a result of any act or failure to act in his capacity as a director or officer unless it is proven that (i) his act or failure to act constituted a breach of his fiduciary duties as a director or officer, and (ii) his breach of those duties involved intentional misconduct, fraud or a knowing violation of the law.

Subsection 2 of Section 78.7502 empowers a corporation to indemnify any person who was or is a party or is threatened to be made a party to any threatened, pending or completed action or suit by or in the right of the corporation to procure a judgment in its favor by reason of the fact that such person acted in any of the capacities set forth above against expenses, including amounts paid in settlement and attorneys' fees actually and reasonably incurred by him in connection with the defense or settlement of such action or suit if he acted under similar standards, except that no indemnification may be made in respect of any claim, issue or matter as to which such person shall have been adjudged by a court of competent jurisdiction to be liable to the corporation or for amounts paid in settlement to the corporation, unless and only to the extent that the court in which such action or suit was brought or other court of competent jurisdiction determines that, in view of all the circumstances of the case, such person is fairly and reasonably entitled to indemnity for such expenses as the court deems proper.

Section 78.7502 further provides that to the extent a director or officer of a corporation has been successful in the defense of any action, suit or proceeding referred to in subsections (1) and (2) thereof, or in the defense of any claim, issue or matter therein, he shall be indemnified against expenses (including attorneys' fees) actually and reasonably incurred by him in connection therewith. Subsection 3 of Section 78.751 of the Nevada Revised Statutes provides that the indemnification provided for by Section 78.7502 shall not be deemed exclusive or exclude any other rights to which the indemnified party may be entitled (except that indemnification will generally not be available to a person if a final adjudication establishes that his acts or omissions involved intentional misconduct, fraud or a knowing violation of the law and were material to the cause of action) and that the indemnification shall continue as to directors, officers, employees or agents who have ceased to hold such positions, and to their heirs, executors and administrators. Section 78.752 empowers the corporation to purchase and maintain insurance on behalf of a director, officer, employee or agent of the corporation against any liability asserted against him or incurred by him in any such capacity or arising out of his status as such whether or not the corporation would have the power to indemnify him against such liabilities under Section 78.7502.

#### ***By-Laws***

Our by-laws provide for the elimination of the personal liability of our officers, directors, corporate employees and agents to the fullest extent permitted by the provisions of the Nevada Law. Under such provisions, we shall indemnify a director or officer (and may indemnify a corporate employee or agent) who in his capacity as such is made, or threatened to be made, party to any suit or proceeding, if it is determined that such person acted in good faith and in a manner he reasonably believed to be in or not opposed to the best interests of our company and, with respect to any criminal action or proceeding, had no reasonable cause to believe his conduct was unlawful.

#### ***Liability Insurance***

We maintain directors' and officers' liability insurance covering our directors and officers against expenses and liabilities arising from certain actions to which they may become subject by reason of having served in such role, including insurance for claims against these persons brought under securities laws. Such insurance is subject to the coverage amounts, exceptions, deductibles and other conditions set forth in the policy as in effect at the time of a claim, if any. There is no assurance that we will maintain liability insurance for our directors and officers.

#### ***Public Policy Limitations***

Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act of 1933, or Securities Act, may be permitted to our directors, officers and controlling persons pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, we have been advised that in the opinion of the Securities and Exchange Commission such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by us of expenses incurred or paid by one of our directors, officers or controlling persons in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, we will, unless in the opinion of our counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by us is against public policy as expressed in the Securities Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

#### **Item 15. Recent Sales of Unregistered Securities.**

We have sold or issued the following securities not registered under the Securities Act in reliance upon the exemption from registration pursuant to Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act or Regulation D of the Securities Act during the three years preceding the filing of this registration statement. Except as stated below, no underwriting discounts or commissions were payable with respect to any of the following transactions.

*Equity Issuances in the Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2017.*

#### **Common Stock Sales Agreement with H.C. Wainwright**

On June 28, 2016, we entered into a Common Stock Sales Agreement (the "Agreement") with H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC ("H.C. Wainwright") which establishes an at-the-market equity program pursuant to which we may offer and sell shares of our common stock from time to time as set forth in the Agreement. The Agreement provides for the sale of shares of our common stock having an aggregate offering price of up to \$12,500,000 (the "Shares").

Subject to the terms and conditions set forth in the Agreement, H.C. Wainwright will use its commercially reasonable efforts consistent with its normal trading and sales practices to sell the Shares from time to time, based upon our instructions. We have provided H.C. Wainwright with customary indemnification rights, and H.C. Wainwright will be entitled to a commission at a fixed rate equal to three percent (3.0%) of the gross proceeds per Share sold. In addition, we have agreed to pay certain expenses incurred by H.C. Wainwright in connection with the Agreement, including up to \$50,000 of the fees and disbursements of their counsel. The Agreement will terminate upon the sale of all of the Shares under the Agreement unless terminated earlier by either party as permitted under the Agreement.

Sales of the Shares, if any, under the Agreement shall be made in transactions that are deemed to be “at the market offerings” as defined in Rule 415 under the Securities Act, including sales made by means of ordinary brokers’ transactions, including on the Nasdaq Capital Market, at market prices or as otherwise agreed with H.C. Wainwright. We have no obligation to sell any of the Shares, and, at any time, we may suspend offers under the Agreement or terminate the Agreement.

In July 2016, we commenced sales of common stock under our Common Stock Sales Agreement with H.C. Wainwright. In the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017, we raised aggregate net proceeds of \$955,206 (net of \$29,831 in commissions to H.C. Wainwright and \$9,432 in other offering expenses) under this agreement through the sale of 216,078 shares at an average price of \$4.42 per share of net proceeds.

#### **Warrant Issuances in July 2016**

In July 2016, we issued an aggregate of 2,660 shares of common stock to three investors upon the exercise of previously issued warrants. The warrants were exercised on a cashless or “net” basis. Accordingly, we did not receive any proceeds from such exercises. The cashless exercise of such warrants resulted in the cancellation of previously issued warrants to purchase an aggregate of 19,563 shares of common stock.

#### **Restricted Stock Unit Grants to Directors and Executive Officers**

During the fiscal year ended March 31, 2017, 149,864 Restricted Stock Units (“RSUs”) held by our outside directors and executive officers were exchanged into the same number of shares of our common stock (see Stock-Based Compensation below).

#### **Amendment of Warrants Issued in Conjunction with the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes**

Under the Second Amendment and Extension of the November 2014 10% Convertible Notes dated June 27, 2016 (See Note 4), we reduced the purchase price of 47,125 Warrants from \$8.40 per share to \$5.00 per share.

We also issued to the investors new warrants to purchase an aggregate of 30,000 shares of common stock with a purchase price of \$5.00 per share of common stock. We issued the new warrants in substantially the same form as the prior Warrants, and the new warrants will expire on November 6, 2019, the same date on which the prior warrants will expire (See Note 4).

#### **Amendment of December 2014 Warrants**

On June 27, 2016, we and certain investors (the “Unit Investors”) entered into Consent and Waiver and Amendment agreements (the “CWAs”), relating to an aggregate of 264,000 Warrants to Purchase Common Stock (the “Unit Warrants”) we had issued to the Unit Investors on December 2, 2014 pursuant to a Securities Purchase Agreement dated November 26, 2014 (the “2014 SPA”). In the CWAs, each of the Unit Investors provided its consent under certain restrictive provisions, and waived certain rights, including a right to participate in certain offerings made by us, under the 2014 SPA in order to facilitate the at-the-market equity program described above. Pursuant to the CWAs, we reduced the Exercise Price (as defined in the Unit Warrants) from \$15.00 per share of common stock to \$5.00 per share of common stock. At any time that the shares of common stock underlying the Unit Warrants are covered by an effective registration statement that permits the public resale of the shares, if the Unit Investors exercise the Unit Warrants, they must do so by a cash exercise, which could yield up to \$1,320,000 in proceeds to us.

On June 27, 2016, each of the Unit Investors also entered into a Consent and Waiver providing its consent under certain provisions, and waiving certain rights, including a right to participate in certain offerings made by us, under the 2015 SPA in order to facilitate the at-the-market equity program described above.

In accordance with applicable generally accepted accounting principles in the United States of America (GAAP) for warrant modifications, we measured the change in fair value that arose from the reduction in exercise price and recognized an expense of \$345,841, which is included in other (income) expenses in the accompanying condensed consolidated statements of operations.

#### **Warrants Issued in Conjunction with the December 2016 10% Convertible Notes**

On December 30, 2016, we entered into a securities purchase agreement (the “Securities Purchase Agreement”) with two accredited investors (collectively, the “Holders”), pursuant to which the Purchasers purchased an aggregate of \$680,400 principal amount of Notes (inclusive of due diligence fee of \$30,000 deemed paid as a subscription amount in the form of a Note in the principal amount of \$32,400) for an aggregate cash subscription amount of \$600,000 and (b) warrants to purchase 127,575 shares of Common Stock (collectively, the “Warrants”) (See Note 4).

The Warrants issued to the Holders are exercisable for a period of five years from the date of issuance at an exercise price of \$4.50, subject to adjustment. A Holder may exercise a Warrant by paying the exercise price in cash or by exercising the Warrant on a cashless basis. In the event a Holder exercises a Warrant on a cashless basis, we will not receive any proceeds. The exercise price of the Warrants is subject to customary adjustments provision for stock splits, stock dividends, recapitalizations and the like. Each Holder has contractually agreed to restrict its ability to exercise its Warrant such that the number of shares of the Common Stock held by the Holder and its affiliates after such exercise does not exceed 4.99% of our then issued and outstanding shares of Common Stock.

The estimated relative fair value of Warrants issued in connection with the Notes was recorded as a debt discount and is amortized as additional interest expense over the term of the underlying debt. We recorded debt discount of \$232,718 based on the relative fair value of these Warrants.

#### **March 2017 Registered Direct Offering**

On March 22, 2017, we entered into a Securities Purchase Agreement (the “Purchase Agreement”) with certain institutional investors (the “Investors”) for the sale of 575,000 shares (the “Common Shares”) of our common stock, par value \$0.001 per share (the “Common Stock”), at a purchase price of \$3.50 per share, in a registered direct offering. Concurrently with the sale of the Common Shares, pursuant to the Purchase Agreement, we also sold in a private placement warrants to purchase 575,000 shares of Common Stock (the “Warrants”). The aggregate gross proceeds for the sale of the Common Shares and Warrants will be approximately \$2 million. Subject to certain ownership limitations, the Warrants will be initially exercisable commencing six months from the issuance date at an exercise price equal to \$3.95 per share of Common Stock, subject to adjustments as provided under the terms of the Warrants. The Warrants will be exercisable for five years from the initial exercise date.

The net proceeds to us from the transactions, after deducting the placement agent’s fees and expenses (not including the Wainwright Warrants, as defined below), our estimated offering expenses, and excluding the proceeds, if any, from the exercise of the Warrants, were \$1,804,250. We intend to use the net proceeds from the transactions for general corporate purposes.

The Common Shares (but not the Warrants or shares issuable upon exercise of the Warrant) were sold by us pursuant to an effective shelf registration statement on Form S-3, which was filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “SEC”) on May 5, 2016 and subsequently declared effective on May 12, 2016 (File No. 333-211151) (the “Registration Statement”), and the base prospectus dated as of May 12, 2016 contained therein. We filed a prospectus supplement and the accompanying prospectus with the SEC in connection with this sale of the Common Shares.

The purchase agreement also covered the exchange of 264,000 warrants issued to the purchasers thereunder in December 2014 for 198,000 shares of our common stock. Further, in exchange for certain waivers given by the purchasers and certain other investors in a private placement of the Company in June 2015, the warrants issued in such private placement were amended to (i) reduce the exercise price to \$3.95 per share, (ii) make the warrants non-exercisable for a period of six months from the date of amendment, and (iii) extend the term of those warrants by six months.

The Warrants and the shares issuable upon exercise of the Warrants were sold and issued without registration under the Securities Act of 1933 (the “Securities Act”) in reliance on the exemptions provided by Section 4(a)(2) of the Securities Act as transactions not involving a public offering and Rule 506 promulgated under the Securities Act as sales to accredited investors, and in reliance on similar exemptions under applicable state laws.

We also entered into an engagement letter (the “Engagement Letter”) with Rodman & Renshaw, a unit of H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC (“Rodman”), pursuant to which Rodman agreed to serve as exclusive placement agent for the issuance and sale of the Common Shares and Warrants. We paid Rodman an aggregate fee equal to 6% of the gross proceeds received by us from the sale of the securities in the transactions. Pursuant to the Engagement Letter, we also agreed to grant to Rodman or its designees warrants to purchase up to 3% of the aggregate number of shares sold in the transaction (the “Rodman Warrants”). The Engagement Letter has a nine-month tail and right of first offer periods, indemnity and other customary provisions for transactions of this nature. The Rodman Warrants have substantially the same terms as the Warrants, except that the exercise price is 125% of \$3.50. We also paid Rodman a reimbursement for non-accountable expenses in the amount of \$50,000.

#### *Equity Issuances in the Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2016*

On June 25, 2015, we sold \$6,000,000 of units, comprised of common stock and warrants, to 18 accredited investors at a price of \$6.30 per unit. Each unit consisted of one share of common stock and 0.75 of a five-year warrant to purchase one share of common stock at an exercise price of \$6.30 per share. Accordingly, we issued a total of 952,383 shares of unregistered common stock and warrants to purchase 714,285 shares of common stock. For its services as sole placement agent for the financing, we paid Roth Capital Partners, LLC (“Roth”) a cash fee of \$285,512 and expense reimbursement of \$75,000 and we issued them a five-year warrant to purchase 32,371 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$6.30 per share. We received \$5,591,988 in net proceeds from this financing. As the warrants that were issued to the investors and to Roth were issued in connection with common stock for cash, they were considered issued in connection with the financing transaction and the warrant fair value, which was valued using a binomial lattice model, was recorded to additional paid-in-capital.

In connection with the financing, Mr. James Joyce, our Chief Executive Officer, Mr. James Frakes, our Chief Financial Officer and Dr. Chetan Shah, a director of our company, each agreed to waive their right to exercise certain stock options and warrants held by them representing the right to acquire 402,318 shares of common stock in the aggregate (the “Waivers”). The Waivers were required in order to make a sufficient number of shares of common stock available for issuance and the Waivers expired when we amended our Articles of Incorporation on March 31, 2016, to increase the number of authorized shares of our common stock from 10,000,000 to 30,000,000, following stockholder approval of such amendment at our annual stockholders’ meeting on March 29, 2016.

During the three months ended September 30, 2015, we issued an aggregate of 5,292 shares of common stock to an accredited investor upon the exercise of previously issued warrants. The warrants were exercised on a cashless or “net” basis. Accordingly, we did not receive any proceeds from such exercises. The cashless exercise of such warrants resulted in the cancellation of previously issued warrants to purchase an aggregate of 1,744 shares of common stock.

During the three months ended December 31, 2015, we issued an aggregate of 6,757 unregistered shares of common stock to two investors upon the exercise of previously issued warrants. The warrants were exercised for cash and we received cash proceeds of \$14,766 for an average purchase price of \$2.19 per share per the terms of the warrants.

#### *Equity Transactions in the Fiscal Year Ended March 31, 2015*

On May 20, 2014, May 23, 2014, June 6, 2014, June 11, 2014 and June 26, 2014, we sold seven accredited investors 43,849 shares of restricted common stock for an aggregate purchase price of \$320,800 and an average price of \$7.50 per share. The common stock purchase price was calculated as 80% of the average closing price of our common stock for the five-day period immediately preceding the date of each subscription agreement.

On June 24, 2014, we issued the holder of a convertible note 466,365 shares of restricted common stock and five-year warrants to acquire up to 136,190 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$2.10 per share and up to 7,944 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$5.40 per share. We issued the stock and warrants upon the conversion of a combined principal and interest balance of \$1,003,200 due under the note. We also issued the holder 1,500 shares of common stock as a service fee for converting the note in full and for agreeing to waive anti-dilution price protection in certain warrants previously issued to the holder by us.

On July 8, 2014, we issued the holder of a convertible note 51,837 shares of restricted common stock and five-year warrants to acquire up to 46,429 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$2.10 per share and up to 2,708 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$5.40 per share. We issued the stock and warrants upon the conversion of the interest balance of \$116,970 due under the note and for the holder’s agreement to extend the expiration date of the note. We also issued the holder 500 shares of common stock as a service fee for extending the note, for converting the interest due under the note and for agreeing to waive anti-dilution price protection in certain warrants previously issued to the holder by us.

On August 6, 2014, we issued 7,806 shares of restricted common stock at an average price of \$12.00 per share to a consultant in payment for investor relations consulting services valued at \$75,000 based on the value of the services provided.

On July 15, 2014, we issued 38,750 shares of restricted common stock to the holders of three convertible notes in exchange for the partial or full conversion of principal and interest in the aggregate amount of \$81,375 at a conversion price of \$2.10 per share.

On July 24, 2014, we issued an aggregate of 50,079 shares of restricted common stock and a seven-year warrant to issue up to 25,040 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$6.60 per share to Dr. Chetan Shah, one of our directors. We issued the common stock and warrant to Dr. Shah upon the conversion of an aggregate of \$220,349 of unpaid principal and accrued interest due under a 10% Convertible Note previously issued to Dr. Shah by us on July 9, 2013.

On September 17, 2014, we issued to the holder of the remaining 2008 10% Convertible Note units consisting of an aggregate of 9,564 shares of restricted common stock and unit warrants to acquire up to an aggregate of 4,782 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$4.80 per share. The units were issued to the note holder upon the conversion of an aggregate of \$45,906 of unpaid principal and accrued interest due under the promissory note, which represented the entire amount outstanding under the note.

On July 29, 2014, August 4, 2014 and August 6, 2014, we issued to four investors 53,465 shares of restricted common stock through the cash exercise of eight warrants for \$259,474 of cash at an average exercise price of approximately \$5.00 per share. As an inducement to those investors, we issued them replacement warrants to acquire up to an aggregate of 53,465 shares of common stock on the same terms as the warrants they exercised.

On August 29, 2014, September 2, 2014 and September 22, 2014, we issued and sold to three accredited investors units consisting of (a) 2,000 restricted shares of our common stock at prices per share ranging from \$4.55 to \$4.70 and (b) a five-year warrant to purchase 1,000 shares of common stock at exercise prices ranging from \$6.80 to \$7.15 per share. In total, the investors purchased for cash an aggregate of \$90,000 of units. The investors acquired an aggregate of 19,500 shares of common stock and warrants to acquire up to an aggregate of 9,750 shares of common stock.

On November 7, 2014, we issued 3,400 shares of restricted common stock at price of \$10.25 per share, along with a cash payment of \$50,000, in full repayment of the outstanding principal balance and interest balance on the Law Firm Note.

On October 10, 2014, October 14, 2014 and October 15, 2014, we issued and sold to eight accredited investors units consisting of (a) 2,000 restricted shares of common stock at prices per share ranging from \$5.25 to \$5.70 and (b) a five-year warrant to purchase 1,000 shares of common stock at exercise prices ranging from \$7.70 to \$8.35 per share. In total, the investors purchased for cash an aggregate of \$502,700 of units. The investors acquired an aggregate of 90,125 shares of common stock and warrants to acquire up to an aggregate of 45,063 shares of common stock.

On October 9, 2014, we issued to an accredited investor units consisting of an aggregate of 36,716 shares of restricted common stock and warrants to acquire up to an aggregate of 18,358 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$7.70 per share. We issued the units to the investor upon the conversion of an aggregate of \$189,087 of unpaid principal and accrued interest due under two promissory notes (the remaining October and November 2009 10% Convertible Note and the April 2010 10% Convertible Note) previously issued to the investor by us. The amounts converted represented the entire principal and interest outstanding under the notes and the notes held by that holder were retired.

On October 17, 2014 and October 20, 2014, we issued an aggregate of 113,422 shares of restricted common stock and seven-year warrants to issue up to an aggregate of 113,422 shares of common stock at exercise prices ranging from \$4.30 to \$6.25 per share to eight accredited investors. One of the investors is Dr. Shah. The common stock and warrants were issued to the investors upon the cash exercise of previously issued warrants held by them. The investors paid an aggregate of \$579,251 upon exercise of the previously outstanding warrants at exercise prices ranging from \$4.30 to \$6.25 per share.

On October 15, 2014, we issued an aggregate of 70,460 shares of restricted common stock to two accredited investors upon the conversion of an aggregate of \$147,965 of unpaid principal and accrued interest due under promissory notes previously issued to the investors by us. The conversion price per share was \$2.10.

On November 6, 2014, we sold two accredited investors (i) convertible promissory notes in the aggregate principal amount of \$527,780 and (ii) five year warrants to purchase up to 47,123 shares of common stock at a fixed exercise price of \$8.40 per share. The convertible promissory notes bear interest at the annual rate of 10% and mature on April 1, 2016. The aggregate gross cash proceeds to us were \$415,000 after subtracting legal fees of \$35,000; the balance of the principal amount of the notes represents a \$27,780 due diligence fee and an original issuance discount. The convertible promissory notes are convertible at the option of the holders into shares of our common stock at a fixed price of \$5.60 per share, for up to an aggregate of 94,246 shares of common stock.

On October 21, 2014, we issued an aggregate of 328,463 shares of restricted common stock to three accredited investors upon the cashless exercise of warrants previously issued to the investors by us with an exercise price of \$2.10 per share.

On November 12, 2014, we issued 780 shares of restricted common stock to a consultant in payment for investor relations services valued at \$8,000 based on the value of the services provided.

On November 18, 2014, we issued an aggregate of 112,500 shares of restricted common stock to two investors upon the conversion of an aggregate of \$236,250 of unpaid principal and accrued interest under a promissory note previously issued by us. The conversion price was \$2.10 per share.

On November 19, 2014 we issued 285 shares of restricted common stock to an investor upon the cashless exercise of warrants previously issued by us with an exercise price of \$5.50 per share.

On November 25, 2014, we issued an aggregate of 214,286 shares of restricted common stock to two accredited investors upon the conversion of an aggregate of \$450,000 of unpaid principal and accrued interest due under promissory notes previously issued by us with a conversion price of \$2.10 per share.

On November 26, 2014, we authorized the issuance of an aggregate of 88,165 shares of restricted common stock to 38 accredited investors upon the cashless exercise of warrants previously issued to the investors by us with an exercise price of \$11.00 per share.

On November 26, 2014, we authorized the issuance of 9,921 shares of restricted common stock to an accredited investor upon the cashless exercise of warrants previously issued by us with an exercise price of \$5.50 per share.

On December 2, 2014, we sold \$3,300,000 of units, comprised of common stock and warrants, to three affiliated institutional investors at a price of \$15.00 per unit. Each unit consisted of one share of common stock and five-year warrants to purchase 1.2 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$15.00 per share. Accordingly, we issued a total of 220,000 shares of restricted common stock and warrants to purchase 264,000 shares of common stock. For its services as sole placement agent for the financing, we paid Roth Capital Partners, LLC a cash fee of \$231,000 and expense reimbursement of \$25,000 and we issued it a five-year warrant to purchase 11,000 shares of common stock at an exercise price of \$15.00 per share.

On December 5, 2014, we issued an aggregate of 3,500 shares of restricted common stock to two affiliated accredited investors upon the cashless exercise of warrants previously issued by us with an exercise price of \$2.10 per share.

On January 2, 2015, we issued 47,619 shares of common stock to an accredited investor upon the conversion of \$100,000 of unpaid principal due under a promissory note we previously issued to the investor. The conversion price per share was \$2.10.

On January 14, 2015, we authorized the issuance of 3,574 shares of common stock to an accredited investor upon the cashless exercise of warrants previously issued by us with an exercise price of \$5.50 per share.

On March 16, 2015, we issued 37,265 shares of common stock to an accredited investor upon the conversion of an aggregate of \$78,257 of unpaid principal and accrued interest due under a promissory note we previously issued to the investor. The conversion price per share was \$2.10.

On March 30, 2015, we issued 13,803 shares of common stock to an accredited investor upon the conversion of an aggregate of \$28,988 of unpaid principal and accrued interest due under a promissory note we previously issued to the investor. The conversion price per share was \$2.10.

**Item 16. Exhibits and Financial Statement Schedules.**

Reference is made to the Exhibit Index filed as part of this registration statement. All exhibits have been filed previously unless otherwise noted.

**Item 17. Undertakings.**

(a) The undersigned registrant hereby undertakes:

(1) To file, during any period in which offers or sales are being made, a post-effective amendment to this registration statement:

(i) To include any prospectus required by section 10(a)(3) of the Securities Act of 1933;

(ii) To reflect in the prospectus any facts or events arising after the effective date of this registration statement (or the most recent post-effective amendment hereof) which, individually or in the aggregate, represent a fundamental change in the information set forth in this registration statement. Notwithstanding the foregoing, any increase or decrease in volume of securities offered (if the total dollar value of securities offered would not exceed that which was registered) and any deviation from the low or high end of the estimated maximum offering range may be reflected in the form of prospectus filed with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b) if, in the aggregate, the changes in volume and price represent no more than 20% change in the maximum aggregate offering price set forth in the "Calculation of Registration Fee" table in the effective registration statement; and

(iii) To include any material information with respect to the plan of distribution not previously disclosed in this registration statement or any material change to such information in this registration statement.

(2) That, for the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each such post-effective amendment shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof;

(3) To remove from registration by means of a post-effective amendment any of the securities being registered which remain unsold at the termination of the offering; and

(4) That, for the purpose of determining liability of the registrant under the Securities Act of 1933 to any purchaser in the initial distribution of the securities, in a primary offering of securities of the undersigned registrant pursuant to this registration statement, regardless of the underwriting method used to sell the securities to the purchaser, if the securities are offered or sold to such purchaser by means of any of the following communications, the undersigned registrant will be a seller to the purchaser and will be considered to offer or sell such securities to such purchaser:

(iv) Any preliminary prospectus or prospectus of the undersigned registrant relating to the offering required to be filed pursuant to Rule 424;

(v) Any free writing prospectus relating to the offering prepared by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant or used or referred to by the undersigned registrant;

(vi) The portion of any other free writing prospectus relating to the offering containing material information about the undersigned registrant or its securities provided by or on behalf of the undersigned registrant; and

(vii) Any other communication that is an offer in the offering made by the undersigned registrant to the purchaser.



(5) That, for purposes of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, the information omitted from the form of prospectus filed as part of this registration statement in reliance upon Rule 430A and contained in a form of prospectus filed by the registrant pursuant to Rule 424(b) (1) or (4) or 497(h) under the Securities Act shall be deemed to be part of this registration statement as of the time it was declared effective. Each prospectus filed pursuant to Rule 424(b) as part of a registration statement relating to an offering, other than registration statements relying on Rule 430B or other than prospectuses filed in reliance on Rule 430A (§230.430A of this chapter), shall be deemed to be part of and included in the registration statement as of the date it is first used after effectiveness. *Provided, however,* that no statement made in a registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement or made in a document incorporated or deemed incorporated by reference into the registration statement or prospectus that is part of the registration statement will, as to a purchaser with a time of contract of sale prior to such first use, supersede or modify any statement that was made in the registration statement or prospectus that was part of the registration statement or made in any such document immediately prior to such date of first use.

(6) That, for the purpose of determining any liability under the Securities Act of 1933, each post-effective amendment that contains a form of prospectus shall be deemed to be a new registration statement relating to the securities offered therein, and the offering of such securities at that time shall be deemed to be the initial bona fide offering thereof.

(b) Insofar as indemnification for liabilities arising under the Securities Act of 1933 may be permitted to directors, officers and controlling persons of the registrant pursuant to the foregoing provisions, or otherwise, the registrant has been advised that in the opinion of the Securities and Exchange Commission such indemnification is against public policy as expressed in the Act and is, therefore, unenforceable. In the event that a claim for indemnification against such liabilities (other than the payment by the registrant of expenses incurred or paid by a director, officer or controlling person of the registrant in the successful defense of any action, suit or proceeding) is asserted by such director, officer or controlling person in connection with the securities being registered, the registrant will, unless in the opinion of its counsel the matter has been settled by controlling precedent, submit to a court of appropriate jurisdiction the question whether such indemnification by it is against public policy as expressed in the Act and will be governed by the final adjudication of such issue.

## SIGNATURES

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, the registrant has duly caused this registration statement to be signed on its behalf by the undersigned, thereunto duly authorized, in the City of San Diego, State of California, on September 15, 2017.

**AETHLON MEDICAL, INC.,**  
a Nevada corporation

/s/ James A. Joyce

By: James A. Joyce

Its: Chief Executive Officer

Pursuant to the requirements of the Securities Act of 1933, this registration statement has been signed by the following persons in the capacities and on the dates indicated:

<b><u>Signature</u></b>	<b><u>Title</u></b>	<b><u>Date</u></b>
<u>/s/ James A. Joyce</u> James A. Joyce	Chairman, Chief Executive Officer, Principal Executive Officer	September 15, 2017
<u>/s/ James B. Frakes</u> James B. Frakes	Chief Financial Officer, Principal Accounting Officer	September 15, 2017
<u>/s/ Edward G. Broenniman</u> Edward G. Broenniman	Director	September 15, 2017
<u>/s/ Rodney S. Kenley</u> Rodney S. Kenley	Director	September 15, 2017
<u>/s/ Chetan S. Shah</u> Chetan S. Shah, MD	Director	September 15, 2017

## INDEX TO EXHIBITS

No.	Description
1.1	<a href="#">Engagement Agreement, dated July 28, 2017, between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and H.C. Wainwright &amp; Co., LLC</a> (46)
2.1	<a href="#">Agreement and Plan of Reorganization Between Aethlon Medical, Inc. (formerly, Bishop Equities, Inc.) and Aethlon, Inc. dated March 10, 1999</a> (1)
2.2	<a href="#">Agreement and Plan of Reorganization Between Aethlon Medical, Inc. (formerly, Bishop Equities, Inc.) and Hemex, Inc. dated March 10, 1999</a> (1)
3.1	<a href="#">Articles of Incorporation of Aethlon Medical, Inc., as amended</a> (2)
3.2	<a href="#">Bylaws of Aethlon Medical, Inc., as amended</a> (35)
4.1	<a href="#">Form of Common Stock Certificate</a> (3)
4.2	<a href="#">Form of Amended and Restated Warrant dated June 14, 2010</a> (12)
4.3	<a href="#">Form of Amended and Restated Warrant dated June 14, 2010</a> (QB) (12)
4.4	<a href="#">Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant dated March 29, 2012 and April 15, 2012</a> (14)
4.5	<a href="#">Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant dated June 19, 2012</a> (15)
4.6	<a href="#">Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant dated August 29, 2012</a> (16)
4.7	<a href="#">Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant dated October, November and December 2012</a> (17)
4.8	<a href="#">Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant dated June 14, 2013</a> (18)
4.9	<a href="#">Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant October 30, 2013</a> (19)
4.10	<a href="#">Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant November 12, 2013</a> (20)
4.11	<a href="#">Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant December 10, 2013</a> (21)
4.12	<a href="#">Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant December 30, 2013</a> (22)
4.13	<a href="#">Form of Amendment to Notes and Warrants dated March 31, 2014</a> (23)
4.14	<a href="#">Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant dated June 24, 2014</a> (24)
4.15	<a href="#">Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant dated July 8, 2014</a> (25)
4.16	<a href="#">Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant dated July 24, 2014</a> (26)
4.17	<a href="#">Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant issued August and September 2014</a> (27)
4.18	<a href="#">Form of Class A Common Stock Purchase Warrant dated November 6, 2014</a> (27)
4.19	<a href="#">Form of Convertible Promissory Note dated November 6, 2014</a> (27)

4.20	<a href="#">Form of Common Stock Purchase Warrant issued December 2, 2014</a> (29)
4.21	<a href="#">Form of Purchase Agent Warrant dated December 2, 2014</a> (30)
4.22	<a href="#">Form of Warrant to Purchase Common Stock issued June 25, 2015</a> (32)
4.23	<a href="#">Form of Purchase Agent Warrant issued June 25, 2015</a> (33)
4.24	<a href="#">Form of Amendment to Notes and Warrants dated June 27, 2016</a> (40)
4.25	<a href="#">Form of Allonge to Convertible Promissory Note dated June 27, 2016</a> (40)
4.26	<a href="#">Form of Class A Common Stock Purchase Warrant issued June 27, 2016</a> (40)
4.27	<a href="#">Form of Consent and Waiver and Amendment dated June 27, 2016</a> (40)
4.28	<a href="#">Form of Warrant Agreement issued March 22, 2017</a> (43)
4.29	<a href="#">Form of Warrant</a> *
4.30	Form of Placement Agent Warrant **
4.31	<a href="#">Form of Pre-Funded Warrant</a> *
5.1	<a href="#">Opinion of Jolie Kahn, Esq.</a> *
10.1	<a href="#">2000 Stock Option Plan</a> (34)++
10.2	<a href="#">Amended 2010 Stock Incentive Plan</a> (4)
10.3	<a href="#">2005 Directors Compensation Program</a> (34)++
10.4	<a href="#">2012 Directors Compensation Program, as amended on June 6, 2014</a> (34)++
10.5	<a href="#">Employment Agreement between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and James A. Joyce dated April 1, 1999</a> (5)++
10.6	<a href="#">Patent License Agreement by and amongst Aethlon Medical, Inc., Hemex, Inc., Dr. Julian L. Ambrus and Dr. David O. Scamurra</a> (6)
10.7	<a href="#">Employment Agreement by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and Dr. Richard H. Tullis dated January 10, 2000</a> (6)++
10.8	<a href="#">Stock Option Agreement by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and James A Joyce dated February 23, 2005</a> (7)++
10.9	<a href="#">Stock Option Agreement by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and Richard Tullis dated February 23, 2005</a> (7)++
10.10	<a href="#">Stock Option Agreement by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and Franklyn S. Barry, Jr. dated February 23, 2005</a> (7)++
10.11	<a href="#">Stock Option Agreement by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and Ed Broenniman dated February 23, 2005</a> (7)++
10.12	<a href="#">Stock Option Agreement by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and James A. Joyce dated September 9, 2005</a> (8)++
10.13	<a href="#">Stock Option Agreement by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and James A. Joyce dated June 13, 2007</a> (9)++
10.14	<a href="#">Stock Option Agreement by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and James A. Joyce dated December 15, 2008</a> (10)++
10.15	<a href="#">Stock Option Agreement by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and Franklyn S. Barry dated December 15, 2008</a> (10)++

10.16	<a href="#">Stock Option Agreement by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and Edward G. Broenniman dated December 15, 2008</a> (10)++
10.17	<a href="#">Stock Option Agreement by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and Richard H. Tullis dated December 15, 2008</a> (10)++
10.18	<a href="#">Standard Industrial Net Lease by and between Sorrento Business Complex and Aethlon Medical, Inc. dated September 28, 2009</a> (11)
10.19	<a href="#">Offer of Employment by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and Rodney S. Kenley dated October 27, 2010</a> (13)++
10.20	<a href="#">Stock Option Agreement of Rodney S. Kenley dated October 27, 2010</a> (13)++
10.21	<a href="#">Unit Subscription Agreement dated March 29, 2012 and April 5, 2012</a> (14)
10.22	<a href="#">Unit Subscription Agreement dated June 19, 2012</a> (15)
10.23	<a href="#">Unit Subscription Agreement dated August 29, 2012</a> (16)
10.24	<a href="#">Unit Subscription Agreement dated October, November and December 2012</a> (17)
10.25	<a href="#">Unit Subscription Agreement dated June 14, 2013</a> (18)
10.26	<a href="#">Form of Unit Purchase Agreement dated October 30, 2013</a> (19)
10.27	<a href="#">Form of Subscription Agreement October 30, 2013</a> (19)
10.28	<a href="#">Form of Unit Purchase Agreement dated November 12, 2013</a> (20)
10.29	<a href="#">Form of Subscription Agreement November 12, 2013</a> (20)
10.30	<a href="#">Form of Unit Purchase Agreement dated December 10, 2013</a> (21)
10.31	<a href="#">Form of Subscription Agreement December 10, 2013</a> (21)
10.32	<a href="#">Form of Unit Purchase Agreement dated December 30, 2013</a> (22)
10.33	<a href="#">Form of Subscription Agreement December 30, 2013</a> (22)
10.34	<a href="#">Form of Restructuring Agreement dated June 24, 2014</a> (24)
10.35	<a href="#">Form of Restructuring Agreement dated June 24, 2014</a> (24)
10.36	<a href="#">Form of Restructuring Agreement dated July 8, 2014</a> (25)
10.37	<a href="#">Second Amendment to Standard Industrial Net Lease by and between Sorrento Business Complex and Aethlon Medical, Inc. dated October 10, 2014</a> (3)
10.38	<a href="#">Form of Subscription Agreement dated November 6, 2014</a> (27)
10.39	<a href="#">Office Lease between T-C Stonecrest LLC and Aethlon Medical, Inc. dated November 13, 2014</a> (28)
10.40	<a href="#">Securities Purchase Agreement dated November 26, 2014</a> (29)

10.41	<a href="#">Registration Rights Agreement dated November 26, 2014</a> (29)
10.42	<a href="#">DARPA Contract dated September 30, 2011</a> (3) (Portions of this exhibit have been omitted pursuant to a request for confidential treatment.)
10.43	<a href="#">DARPA Contract Extension dated August 8, 2012</a> (3)
10.44	<a href="#">DARPA Contract Extension dated September 15, 2013</a> (3)
10.45	<a href="#">DARPA Contract Extension dated September 29, 2014</a> (3)
10.46	<a href="#">DARPA Contract Modification dated March 12, 2015</a> (34) (Portions of this exhibit have been omitted pursuant to a request for confidential treatment.)
10.47	<a href="#">UCI Clinical Trial Agreement signed April 9, 2015</a> (31)
10.48	<a href="#">Protocol for UCI Clinical Trial</a> (31)
10.49	<a href="#">Budget for UCI Clinical Trial</a> (31)
10.50	<a href="#">DaVita Master Services Agreement</a> (35)
10.51	<a href="#">First Amendment to DaVita Master Services Agreement</a> (35)
10.52	<a href="#">Work Order #1 under DaVita Master Services Agreement</a> (35) (Portions of this exhibit have been omitted pursuant to a request for confidential treatment.)
10.53	<a href="#">Securities Purchase Agreement dated June 23, 2015</a> (32)
10.54	<a href="#">Registration Rights Agreement dated June 23, 2015</a> (32)
10.55	<a href="#">DARPA Contract Extension dated September 25, 2015</a> (36)
10.56	<a href="#">Amendment No. 1 to Joyce Employment Agreement dated October 16, 2015</a> (37)++
10.57	<a href="#">Amendment No. 1 to Kenley Offer Letter dated October 16, 2015</a> (37)++
10.58	<a href="#">Retention Bonus Agreement dated October 16, 2015</a> (37)++
10.59	<a href="#">Third Amendment to Standard Industrial Net Lease dated October 21, 2015</a> (38)
10.60	<a href="#">Amendment of Terms dated November 12, 2015</a> (38)
10.61	<a href="#">Consulting Agreement dated February 9, 2016</a> (39)
10.62	<a href="#">Stock Option Agreement by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and Richard Tullis dated September 27, 2010</a> (44)++

10.63	<a href="#">Stock Option Agreement by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and Richard Tullis dated July 1, 2013</a> (44)++
10.64	<a href="#">Stock Option Agreement by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and Richard Tullis dated June 6, 2014</a> (44)++
10.65	<a href="#">Amendment No. 1 to Stock Option Agreement by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and Richard Tullis dated December 15, 2008</a> (44)++
10.66	<a href="#">Amendment No. 1 to Stock Option Agreement by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and Richard Tullis dated September 27, 2010</a> (44)++
10.67	<a href="#">Amendment No. 1 to Stock Option Agreement by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and Richard Tullis dated July 1, 2013</a> (44)++
10.68	<a href="#">Amendment No. 1 to Stock Option Agreement by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and Richard Tullis dated June 6, 2014</a> (44)++
10.69	<a href="#">Common Stock Sales Agreement dated June 28, 2016 between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and H.C. Wainwright &amp; Co., LLC</a> (40)
10.70	<a href="#">Form of Consent and Waiver dated June 27, 2016</a> (40)
10.71	<a href="#">Aethlon Medical, Inc. 2012 Non-Employee Directors Compensation Program, as Modified on August 9, 2016</a> (41) ++
10.72	<a href="#">DARPA Contract dated September 30, 2011</a> (42)
10.73	<a href="#">2012 Non-Employee Directors Compensation Program, as amended August 9, 2016</a> (45)++
10.74	<a href="#">Stock Unit Agreement by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and James A. Joyce dated August 29, 2016</a> (45)++
10.75	<a href="#">Stock Unit Agreement by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and Rodney S. Kenley dated August 29, 2016</a> (45)++
10.76	<a href="#">Stock Unit Agreement by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and James B. Frakes dated August 29, 2016</a> (45)++
10.77	<a href="#">Stock Unit Agreement by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and Franklyn S. Barry, Jr. dated August 29, 2016</a> (45)++
10.78	<a href="#">Stock Unit Agreement by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and Edward G. Broenniman dated August 29, 2016</a> (45)++
10.79	<a href="#">Stock Unit Agreement by and between Aethlon Medical, Inc. and Chetan S. Shah, MD dated August 29, 2016</a> (45)++
10.80	<a href="#">Fourth Amendment to Standard Industrial Net Lease by and between AGP Sorrento Business Complex, L.P. and Aethlon Medical, Inc. dated October 5, 2016</a> (45)
10.81	<a href="#">Form of Securities Purchase Agreement, dated March 22, 2017</a> (43)
10.82	<a href="#">Form of Engagement Letter, dated March 15, 2017</a> (43)
10.83	<a href="#">Form of Exchange Agreement</a> (45)
10.84	<a href="#">Form of Securities Purchase Agreement</a> *
14	<a href="#">Code of Ethics</a> (45)

21.1	<a href="#">List of subsidiaries</a> (3)
23.1	<a href="#">Consent of Independent Registered Public Accounting Firm (Squar Milner LLP)</a> *
23.2	<a href="#">Consent of Jolie Kahn, Esq.</a> (included in Exhibit 5.1) *
99.1	<a href="#">Letter from FDA to Registrant, dated September 8, 2017</a> (47)
101	Interactive Data Files *
101.INS	XBRL Instance Document*
101.SCH	XBRL Schema Document*
101.CAL	XBRL Calculation Linkbase Document*
101.DEF	XBRL Definition Linkbase Document*
101.LAB	XBRL Label Linkbase Document*
101.PRE	XBRL Presentation Linkbase Document*

*	Filed herewith
**	To be filed by amendment
***	Indicates a management contract or compensatory plan or arrangement

(1)	Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K/A dated March 26, 1999 and incorporated by reference.
(2)	Filed with the Company's Registration Statement on Form S-3 (File No. 333-211151) filed on May 5, 2016 and incorporated by reference.
(3)	Filed with the Company's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-201334) filed on December 31, 2014 and incorporated by reference.
(4)	Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated March 30, 2016 and incorporated by reference.
(5)	Filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-KSB filed on July 15, 1999 for the year ended March 31, 1999 and incorporated by reference.
(6)	Filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-KSB/A filed on September 10, 2004 for the year ended March 31, 2004 and incorporated by reference.
(7)	Filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-KSB filed on July 14, 2005 for the year ended March 31, 2005 and incorporated by reference.
(8)	Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K filed on September 12, 2005 and incorporated by reference.
(9)	Filed with the Company's Registration Statement on Form S-8 (File No. 333-168483) filed on August 2, 2010 and incorporated by reference.
(10)	Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated December 19, 2008 and incorporated by reference.
(11)	Filed with the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on November 16, 2009 for the period ended September 30, 2009 and incorporated by reference.
(12)	Filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on July 2, 2010 for the year ended March 31, 2010 and incorporated by reference.
(13)	Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated November 1, 2010 and incorporated by reference.
(14)	Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated April 6, 2012 and incorporated by reference.
(15)	Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated June 27, 2012 and incorporated by reference.
(16)	Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated September 6, 2012 and incorporated by reference.
(17)	Filed with the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on February 12, 2013 for the period ended December 31, 2012 and incorporated by reference.
(18)	Filed with the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on August 13, 2013 for the period ended June 30, 2013 and incorporated by reference.
(19)	Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated November 6, 2013 and incorporated by reference.
(20)	Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated November 20, 2013 and incorporated by reference.
(21)	Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated December 16, 2013 and incorporated by reference.
(22)	Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated January 7, 2014 and incorporated by reference.
(23)	Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated April 4, 2014 and incorporated by reference.
(24)	Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated June 30, 2014 and incorporated by reference.
(25)	Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated July 10, 2014 and incorporated by reference.
(26)	Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated July 28, 2014 and incorporated by reference.
(27)	Filed with the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on November 10, 2014 for the period ended September 30, 2014 and incorporated by reference.



- (28) Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K/A dated November 19, 2014 and incorporated by reference.
- (29) Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated November 28, 2014 and incorporated by reference.
- (30) Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated December 3, 2014 and incorporated by reference.
- (31) Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated April 15, 2015 and incorporated by reference.
- (32) Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated June 24, 2015 and incorporated by reference.
- (33) Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated June 26, 2015 and incorporated by reference.
- (34) Filed with the Company's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-203487) filed on April 17, 2015 and incorporated by reference.
- (35) Filed with the Company's Annual Report on Form 10-K filed on June 26, 2015 for the year ended March 31, 2015 and incorporated by reference.
- (36) Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated September 28, 2015 and incorporated by reference.
- (37) Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated October 22, 2015 and incorporated by reference.
- (38) Filed with the Company's Quarterly Report on Form 10-Q filed on November 16, 2015 for the period ended September 30, 2015 and incorporated by reference.
- (39) Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated February 16, 2016 and incorporated by reference.
- (40) Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated June 28, 2016 and incorporated by reference.
- (41) Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated August 10, 2016 and incorporated by reference.
- (42) Filed with the Company's Quarterly Report for the quarter ended September 30, 2016 dated November 10, 2016 and incorporated by reference.
- (43) Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated March 22, 2017 and incorporated by reference.
- (44) Filed with the Company's Annual Report for the year ended March 31, 2016, dated June 29, 2016
- (45) Filed with the Company's Annual Report for the year ended March 31, 2017, dated June 28, 2017
- (46) Filed with the Company's Registration Statement on Form S-1 (File No. 333-219589), dated July 31, 2017 and incorporated by reference.
- (47) Filed with the Company's Current Report on Form 8-K dated September 12, 2017 and incorporated herein by reference.

## COMMON STOCK PURCHASE WARRANT

AETHLON MEDICAL, INC.

Warrant Shares: \_\_\_\_\_

Initial Exercise Date: \_\_\_\_\_, 2017

THIS COMMON STOCK PURCHASE WARRANT (the “Warrant”) certifies that, for value received, \_\_\_\_\_ or its assigns (the “Holder”) is entitled, upon the terms and subject to the limitations on exercise and the conditions hereinafter set forth, at any time on or after the date hereof (the “Initial Exercise Date”) and on or prior to 5:00 p.m. (New York City time) on \_\_\_\_\_<sup>[1]</sup> (the “Termination Date”) but not thereafter, to subscribe for and purchase from Aethlon Medical, Inc., a Nevada corporation (the “Company”), up to \_\_\_\_\_ shares (as subject to adjustment hereunder, the “Warrant Shares”) of Common Stock. The purchase price of one share of Common Stock under this Warrant shall be equal to the Exercise Price, as defined in Section 2(b).

Section 1. Definitions. In addition to the terms defined elsewhere in this Agreement, the following terms have the meanings indicated in this Section 1:

“Affiliate” means any Person that, directly or indirectly through one or more intermediaries, controls or is controlled by or is under common control with a Person, as such terms are used in and construed under Rule 405 under the Securities Act.

“Bid Price” means, for any date, the price determined by the first of the following clauses that applies: (a) if the Common Stock is then listed or quoted on a Trading Market, the bid price of the Common Stock for the time in question (or the nearest preceding date) on the Trading Market on which the Common Stock is then listed or quoted as reported by Bloomberg L.P. (based on a Trading Day from 9:30 a.m. (New York City time) to 4:02 p.m. (New York City time)), (b) if OTCQB or OTCQX is not a Trading Market, the volume weighted average price of the Common Stock for such date (or the nearest preceding date) on OTCQB or OTCQX as applicable, (c) if the Common Stock is not then listed or quoted for trading on OTCQB or OTCQX and if prices for the Common Stock are then reported in the “Pink Sheets” published by OTC Markets Group, Inc. (or a similar organization or agency succeeding to its functions of reporting prices), the most recent bid price per share of the Common Stock so reported, or (d) in all other cases, the fair market value of a share of Common Stock as determined by an independent appraiser selected in good faith by the Purchasers of a majority in interest of the Securities then outstanding and reasonably acceptable to the Company, the fees and expenses of which shall be paid by the Company.

“Business Day” means any day except any Saturday, any Sunday, any day which is a federal legal holiday in the United States or any day on which banking institutions in the State of New York are authorized or required by law or other governmental action to close.

“Commission” means the United States Securities and Exchange Commission.

“Exchange Act” means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder.

“Person” means an individual or corporation, partnership, trust, incorporated or unincorporated association, joint venture, limited liability company, joint stock company, government (or an agency or subdivision thereof) or other entity of any kind.

“Securities Act” means the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder.

<sup>[1]</sup> The date that is the \_\_\_\_\_ year anniversary of the Initial Exercise Date, provided that, if such date is not a Trading Day, insert the immediately following Trading Day.

“Trading Day” means a day on which the Common Stock is traded on a Trading Market.

“Trading Market” means any of the following markets or exchanges on which the Common Stock is listed or quoted for trading on the date in question: the NYSE American, the Nasdaq Capital Market, the Nasdaq Global Market, the Nasdaq Global Select Market, the New York Stock Exchange or the OTC Bulletin Board (or any successors to any of the foregoing).

“Transfer Agent” means Computershare Investor Services, the current transfer agent of the Company, with a mailing address of 350 Indiana Street, Suite 800, Golden, Colorado 80401 and a facsimile number of \_\_\_\_\_, and any successor transfer agent of the Company.

“VWAP” means, for any date, the price determined by the first of the following clauses that applies: (a) if the Common Stock is then listed or quoted on a Trading Market, the daily volume weighted average price of the Common Stock for such date (or the nearest preceding date) on the Trading Market on which the Common Stock is then listed or quoted as reported by Bloomberg L.P. (based on a Trading Day from 9:30 a.m. (New York City time) to 4:02 p.m. (New York City time)), (b) if OTCQB or OTCQX is not a Trading Market, the volume weighted average price of the Common Stock for such date (or the nearest preceding date) on OTCQB or OTCQX as applicable, (c) if the Common Stock is not then listed or quoted for trading on OTCQB or OTCQX and if prices for the Common Stock are then reported in the “Pink Sheets” published by OTC Markets Group, Inc. (or a similar organization or agency succeeding to its functions of reporting prices), the most recent bid price per share of the Common Stock so reported, or (d) in all other cases, the fair market value of a share of Common Stock as determined by an independent appraiser selected in good faith by the Purchasers of a majority in interest of the Securities then outstanding and reasonably acceptable to the Company, the fees and expenses of which shall be paid by the Company.

## Section 2. Exercise.

a) Exercise of Warrant. Exercise of the purchase rights represented by this Warrant may be made, in whole or in part, at any time or times on or after the Initial Exercise Date and on or before the Termination Date by delivery to the Company of a duly executed facsimile copy (or e-mail attachment) of the Notice of Exercise in the form annexed hereto (the “Notice of Exercise”). By the Standard Settlement Period Delivery Date (as defined in Section 2(d)(i) herein) following the date of exercise as aforesaid, the Holder shall deliver the aggregate Exercise Price for the shares specified in the applicable Notice of Exercise by wire transfer or cashier’s check drawn on a United States bank unless the cashless exercise procedure specified in Section 2(c) below is specified in the applicable Notice of Exercise. No ink-original Notice of Exercise shall be required, nor shall any medallion guarantee (or other type of guarantee or notarization) of any Notice of Exercise be required. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, the Holder shall not be required to physically surrender this Warrant to the Company until the Holder has purchased all of the Warrant Shares available hereunder and the Warrant has been exercised in full, in which case, the Holder shall surrender this Warrant to the Company for cancellation within three (3) Trading Days of the date on which the final Notice of Exercise is delivered to the Company. Partial exercises of this Warrant resulting in purchases of a portion of the total number of Warrant Shares available hereunder shall have the effect of lowering the outstanding number of Warrant Shares purchasable hereunder in an amount equal to the applicable number of Warrant Shares purchased. The Holder and the Company shall maintain records showing the number of Warrant Shares purchased and the date of such purchases. The Company shall deliver any objection to any Notice of Exercise within one (1) Business Day of receipt of such notice. **The Holder and any assignee, by acceptance of this Warrant, acknowledge and agree that, by reason of the provisions of this paragraph, following the purchase of a portion of the Warrant Shares hereunder, the number of Warrant Shares available for purchase hereunder at any given time may be less than the amount stated on the face hereof.**

b) Exercise Price. The exercise price per share of Common Stock under this Warrant shall be \$ \_\_\_\_\_, subject to adjustment hereunder (the “Exercise Price”).

c) Cashless Exercise. If at the time of exercise hereof there is no effective registration statement registering, or the prospectus contained therein is not available for the issuance of the Warrant Shares to the Holder, then this Warrant may also be exercised, in whole or in part, at such time by means of a "cashless exercise" in which the Holder shall be entitled to receive a number of Warrant Shares equal to the quotient obtained by dividing [(A-B) (X)] by (A), where:

(A) = as applicable: (i) the VWAP on the Trading Day immediately preceding the date of the applicable Notice of Exercise if such Notice of Exercise is (1) both executed and delivered pursuant to Section 2(a) hereof on a day that is not a Trading Day or (2) both executed and delivered pursuant to Section 2(a) hereof on a Trading Day prior to the opening of "regular trading hours" (as defined in Rule 600(b)(64) of Regulation NMS promulgated under the federal securities laws) on such Trading Day, (ii) at the option of the Holder, either (y) the VWAP on the Trading Day immediately preceding the date of the applicable Notice of Exercise or (z) the Bid Price of the Common Stock on the principal Trading Market as reported by Bloomberg L.P. as of the time of the Holder's execution of the applicable Notice of Exercise if such Notice of Exercise is executed during "regular trading hours" on a Trading Day and is delivered within two (2) hours thereafter pursuant to Section 2(a) hereof or (iii) the VWAP on the date of the applicable Notice of Exercise if the date of such Notice of Exercise is a Trading Day and such Notice of Exercise is both executed and delivered pursuant to Section 2(a) hereof after the close of "regular trading hours" on such Trading Day;

(B) = the Exercise Price of this Warrant, as adjusted hereunder; and

(X) = the number of Warrant Shares that would be issuable upon exercise of this Warrant in accordance with the terms of this Warrant if such exercise were by means of a cash exercise rather than a cashless exercise.

If Warrant Shares are issued in such a cashless exercise, the parties acknowledge and agree that in accordance with Section 3(a)(9) of the Securities Act, the Warrant Shares shall take on the registered characteristics of the Warrants being exercised. The Company agrees not to take any position contrary to this Section 2(c).

Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, on the Termination Date, this Warrant shall be automatically exercised via cashless exercise pursuant to this Section 2(c).

d) Mechanics of Exercise.

i. Delivery of Warrant Shares Upon Exercise. The Company shall cause the Warrant Shares purchased hereunder to be transmitted by the Transfer Agent to the Holder by crediting the account of the Holder's or its designee's balance account with The Depository Trust Company through its Deposit or Withdrawal at Custodian system ("DWAC") if the Company is then a participant in such system and either (A) there is an effective registration statement permitting the issuance of the Warrant Shares to or resale of the Warrant Shares by Holder or (B) this Warrant is being exercised via cashless exercise, and otherwise by physical delivery of a certificate, registered in the Company's share register in the name of the Holder or its designee, for the number of Warrant Shares to which the Holder is entitled pursuant to such exercise to the address specified by the Holder in the Notice of Exercise by the date that is the earlier of (A) the Standard Settlement Period Delivery Date after the delivery to the Company of the Notice of Exercise and (B) one (1) Trading Day after delivery of the aggregate Exercise Price to the Company (such date, the "Warrant Share Delivery Date"). Upon delivery of the Notice of Exercise, the Holder shall be deemed for all corporate purposes to have become the holder of record of the Warrant Shares with respect to which this Warrant has been exercised, irrespective of the date of delivery of the Warrant Shares, provided that payment of the aggregate Exercise Price (other than in the case of a cashless exercise) is received by the Standard Settlement Period Delivery Date following delivery of the Notice of Exercise. If the Company fails for any reason to deliver to the Holder the Warrant Shares subject to a Notice of Exercise by the Warrant Share Delivery Date, the Company shall pay to the Holder, in cash, as liquidated damages and not as a penalty, for each \$1,000 of Warrant Shares subject to such exercise (based on the VWAP of the Common Stock on the date of the applicable Notice of Exercise), \$10 per Trading Day (increasing to \$20 per Trading Day on the fifth Trading Day after such liquidated damages begin to accrue) for each Trading Day after such Warrant Share Delivery Date until such Warrant Shares are delivered or Holder rescinds such exercise. The Company agrees to maintain a transfer agent that is a participant in the FAST program so long as this Warrant remains outstanding and exercisable. As used herein, "Standard Settlement Period" means the standard settlement period, expressed in a number of Trading Days, on the Company's primary Trading Market with respect to the Common Stock as in effect on the date of delivery of the Notice of Exercise and "Standard Settlement Period Delivery Date" means the Trading Day for delivery of Warrant Shares in compliance with the Standard Settlement Period.

- ii. Delivery of New Warrants Upon Exercise. If this Warrant shall have been exercised in part, the Company shall, at the request of a Holder and upon surrender of this Warrant certificate, at the time of delivery of the Warrant Shares, deliver to the Holder a new Warrant evidencing the rights of the Holder to purchase the unpurchased Warrant Shares called for by this Warrant, which new Warrant shall in all other respects be identical with this Warrant.
- iii. Rescission Rights. If the Company fails to cause the Transfer Agent to transmit to the Holder the Warrant Shares pursuant to Section 2(d)(i) by the Warrant Share Delivery Date, then the Holder will have the right to rescind such exercise.
- iv. Compensation for Buy-In on Failure to Timely Deliver Warrant Shares Upon Exercise. In addition to any other rights available to the Holder, if the Company fails to cause the Transfer Agent to transmit to the Holder the Warrant Shares in accordance with the provisions of Section 2(d)(i) above pursuant to an exercise on or before the Warrant Share Delivery Date, and if after such date the Holder is required by its broker to purchase (in an open market transaction or otherwise) or the Holder's brokerage firm otherwise purchases, shares of Common Stock to deliver in satisfaction of a sale by the Holder of the Warrant Shares which the Holder anticipated receiving upon such exercise (a "Buy-In"), then the Company shall (A) pay in cash to the Holder the amount, if any, by which (x) the Holder's total purchase price (including brokerage commissions, if any) for the shares of Common Stock so purchased exceeds (y) the amount obtained by multiplying (1) the number of Warrant Shares that the Company was required to deliver to the Holder in connection with the exercise at issue times (2) the price at which the sell order giving rise to such purchase obligation was executed, and (B) at the option of the Holder, either reinstate the portion of the Warrant and equivalent number of Warrant Shares for which such exercise was not honored (in which case such exercise shall be deemed rescinded) or deliver to the Holder the number of shares of Common Stock that would have been issued had the Company timely complied with its exercise and delivery obligations hereunder. For example, if the Holder purchases Common Stock having a total purchase price of \$11,000 to cover a Buy-In with respect to an attempted exercise of shares of Common Stock with an aggregate sale price giving rise to such purchase obligation of \$10,000, under clause (A) of the immediately preceding sentence the Company shall be required to pay the Holder \$1,000. The Holder shall provide the Company written notice indicating the amounts payable to the Holder in respect of the Buy-In and, upon request of the Company, evidence of the amount of such loss. Nothing herein shall limit a Holder's right to pursue any other remedies available to it hereunder, at law or in equity including, without limitation, a decree of specific performance and/or injunctive relief with respect to the Company's failure to timely deliver shares of Common Stock upon exercise of the Warrant as required pursuant to the terms hereof.
- v. No Fractional Shares or Scrip. No fractional shares or scrip representing fractional shares shall be issued upon the exercise of this Warrant. As to any fraction of a share which the Holder would otherwise be entitled to purchase upon such exercise, the Company shall, at its election, either pay a cash adjustment in respect of such final fraction in an amount equal to such fraction multiplied by the Exercise Price or round up to the next whole share.
- vi. Charges, Taxes and Expenses. Issuance of Warrant Shares shall be made without charge to the Holder for any issue or transfer tax or other incidental expense in respect of the issuance of such Warrant Shares, all of which taxes and expenses shall be paid by the Company, and such Warrant Shares shall be issued in the name of the Holder or in such name or names as may be directed by the Holder; provided, however, that in the event that Warrant Shares are to be issued in a name other than the name of the Holder, this Warrant when surrendered for exercise shall be accompanied by the Assignment Form attached hereto duly executed by the Holder and the Company may require, as a condition thereto, the payment of a sum sufficient to reimburse it for any transfer tax incidental thereto. The Company shall pay all Transfer Agent fees required for same-day processing of any Notice of Exercise and all fees to the Depository Trust Company (or another established clearing corporation performing similar functions) required for same-day electronic delivery of the Warrant Shares.
- vii. Closing of Books. The Company will not close its stockholder books or records in any manner which prevents the timely exercise of this Warrant, pursuant to the terms hereof.

e) Holder's Exercise Limitations. The Company shall not effect any exercise of this Warrant, and a Holder shall not have the right to exercise any portion of this Warrant, pursuant to Section 2 or otherwise, to the extent that after giving effect to such issuance after exercise as set forth on the applicable Notice of Exercise, the Holder (together with the Holder's Affiliates, and any other Persons acting as a group together with the Holder or any of the Holder's Affiliates (such Persons, "Attribution Parties")), would beneficially own in excess of the Beneficial Ownership Limitation (as defined below). For purposes of the foregoing sentence, the number of shares of Common Stock beneficially owned by the Holder and its Affiliates and Attribution Parties shall include the number of shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of this Warrant with respect to which such determination is being made, but shall exclude the number of shares of Common Stock which would be issuable upon (i) exercise of the remaining, nonexercised portion of this Warrant beneficially owned by the Holder or any of its Affiliates or Attribution Parties and (ii) exercise or conversion of the unexercised or nonconverted portion of any other securities of the Company (including, without limitation, any other Common Stock Equivalents) subject to a limitation on conversion or exercise analogous to the limitation contained herein beneficially owned by the Holder or any of its Affiliates or Attribution Parties. Except as set forth in the preceding sentence, for purposes of this Section 2(e), beneficial ownership shall be calculated in accordance with Section 13(d) of the Exchange Act and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder, it being acknowledged by the Holder that the Company is not representing to the Holder that such calculation is in compliance with Section 13(d) of the Exchange Act and the Holder is solely responsible for any schedules required to be filed in accordance therewith. To the extent that the limitation contained in this Section 2(e) applies, the determination of whether this Warrant is exercisable (in relation to other securities owned by the Holder together with any Affiliates and Attribution Parties) and of which portion of this Warrant is exercisable shall be in the sole discretion of the Holder, and the submission of a Notice of Exercise shall be deemed to be the Holder's determination of whether this Warrant is exercisable (in relation to other securities owned by the Holder together with any Affiliates and Attribution Parties) and of which portion of this Warrant is exercisable, in each case subject to the Beneficial Ownership Limitation, and the Company shall have no obligation to verify or confirm the accuracy of such determination. In addition, a determination as to any group status as contemplated above shall be determined in accordance with Section 13(d) of the Exchange Act and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder. For purposes of this Section 2(e), in determining the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock, a Holder may rely on the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock as reflected in (A) the Company's most recent periodic or annual report filed with the Commission, as the case may be, (B) a more recent public announcement by the Company or (C) a more recent written notice by the Company or the Transfer Agent setting forth the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding. Upon the written or oral request of a Holder, the Company shall within two Trading Days confirm orally and in writing to the Holder the number of shares of Common Stock then outstanding. In any case, the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock shall be determined after giving effect to the conversion or exercise of securities of the Company, including this Warrant, by the Holder or its Affiliates or Attribution Parties since the date as of which such number of outstanding shares of Common Stock was reported. The "Beneficial Ownership Limitation" shall be 4.99%/9.99% of the number of shares of the Common Stock outstanding immediately after giving effect to the issuance of shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of this Warrant. The Holder, upon notice to the Company, may increase or decrease the Beneficial Ownership Limitation provisions of this Section 2(e), provided that the Beneficial Ownership Limitation in no event exceeds 9.99% of the number of shares of the Common Stock outstanding immediately after giving effect to the issuance of shares of Common Stock upon exercise of this Warrant held by the Holder and the provisions of this Section 2(e) shall continue to apply. Any increase in the Beneficial Ownership Limitation will not be effective until the 61<sup>st</sup> day after such notice is delivered to the Company. The provisions of this paragraph shall be construed and implemented in a manner otherwise than in strict conformity with the terms of this Section 2(e) to correct this paragraph (or any portion hereof) which may be defective or inconsistent with the intended Beneficial Ownership Limitation herein contained or to make changes or supplements necessary or desirable to properly give effect to such limitation. The limitations contained in this paragraph shall apply to a successor holder of this Warrant.

### Section 3.

#### Certain Adjustments.

a) Stock Dividends and Splits. If the Company, at any time while this Warrant is outstanding: (i) pays a stock dividend or otherwise makes a distribution or distributions on shares of its Common Stock or any other equity or equity equivalent securities payable in shares of Common Stock (which, for avoidance of doubt, shall not include any shares of Common Stock issued by the Company upon exercise of this Warrant), (ii) subdivides outstanding shares of Common Stock into a larger number of shares, (iii) combines (including by way of reverse stock split) outstanding shares of Common Stock into a smaller number of shares, or (iv) issues by reclassification of shares of the Common Stock any shares of capital stock of the Company, then in each case the Exercise Price shall be multiplied by a fraction of which the numerator shall be the number of shares of Common Stock (excluding treasury shares, if any) outstanding immediately before such event and of which the denominator shall be the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding immediately after such event, and the number of shares issuable upon exercise of this Warrant shall be proportionately adjusted such that the aggregate Exercise Price of this Warrant shall remain unchanged. Any adjustment made pursuant to this Section 3(a) shall become effective immediately after the record date for the determination of stockholders entitled to receive such dividend or distribution and shall become effective immediately after the effective date in the case of a subdivision, combination or re-classification.

b) [Reserved]

c) Subsequent Rights Offerings. In addition to any adjustments pursuant to Section 3(a) above, if at any time the Company grants, issues or sells any Common Stock Equivalents or rights to purchase stock, warrants, securities or other property pro rata to the record holders of any class of shares of Common Stock (the “Purchase Rights”), then the Holder will be entitled to acquire, upon the terms applicable to such Purchase Rights, the aggregate Purchase Rights which the Holder could have acquired if the Holder had held the number of shares of Common Stock acquirable upon complete exercise of this Warrant (without regard to any limitations on exercise hereof, including without limitation, the Beneficial Ownership Limitation) immediately before the date on which a record is taken for the grant, issuance or sale of such Purchase Rights, or, if no such record is taken, the date as of which the record holders of shares of Common Stock are to be determined for the grant, issue or sale of such Purchase Rights (provided, however, to the extent that the Holder’s right to participate in any such Purchase Right would result in the Holder exceeding the Beneficial Ownership Limitation, then the Holder shall not be entitled to participate in such Purchase Right to such extent (or beneficial ownership of such shares of Common Stock as a result of such Purchase Right to such extent) and such Purchase Right to such extent shall be held in abeyance for the Holder until such time, if ever, as its right thereto would not result in the Holder exceeding the Beneficial Ownership Limitation).

d) Pro Rata Distributions. During such time as this Warrant is outstanding, if the Company shall declare or make any dividend or other distribution of its assets (or rights to acquire its assets) to holders of shares of Common Stock, by way of return of capital or otherwise (including, without limitation, any distribution of cash, stock or other securities, property or options by way of a dividend, spin off, reclassification, corporate rearrangement, scheme of arrangement or other similar transaction) (a “Distribution”), at any time after the issuance of this Warrant, then, in each such case, the Holder shall be entitled to participate in such Distribution to the same extent that the Holder would have participated therein if the Holder had held the number of shares of Common Stock acquirable upon complete exercise of this Warrant (without regard to any limitations on exercise hereof, including without limitation, the Beneficial Ownership Limitation) immediately before the date of which a record is taken for such Distribution, or, if no such record is taken, the date as of which the record holders of shares of Common Stock are to be determined for the participation in such Distribution (provided, however, to the extent that the Holder’s right to participate in any such Distribution would result in the Holder exceeding the Beneficial Ownership Limitation, then the Holder shall not be entitled to participate in such Distribution to such extent (or in the beneficial ownership of any shares of Common Stock as a result of such Distribution to such extent) and the portion of such Distribution shall be held in abeyance for the benefit of the Holder until such time, if ever, as its right thereto would not result in the Holder exceeding the Beneficial Ownership Limitation).

e) Fundamental Transaction. If, at any time while this Warrant is outstanding, (i) the Company, directly or indirectly, in one or more related transactions effects any merger or consolidation of the Company with or into another Person, (ii) the Company, directly or indirectly, effects any sale, lease, license, assignment, transfer, conveyance or other disposition of all or substantially all of its assets in one or a series of related transactions, (iii) any, direct or indirect, purchase offer, tender offer or exchange offer (whether by the Company or another Person) is completed pursuant to which holders of Common Stock are permitted to sell, tender or exchange their shares for other securities, cash or property and has been accepted by the holders of 50% or more of the outstanding Common Stock, (iv) the Company, directly or indirectly, in one or more related transactions effects any reclassification, reorganization or recapitalization of the Common Stock or any compulsory share exchange pursuant to which the Common Stock is effectively converted into or exchanged for other securities, cash or property, or (v) the Company, directly or indirectly, in one or more related transactions consummates a stock or share purchase agreement or other business combination (including, without limitation, a reorganization, recapitalization, spin-off or scheme of arrangement) with another Person or group of Persons whereby such other Person or group acquires more than 50% of the outstanding shares of Common Stock (not including any shares of Common Stock held by the other Person or other Persons making or party to, or associated or affiliated with the other Persons making or party to, such stock or share purchase agreement or other business combination) (each a "Fundamental Transaction"), then, upon any subsequent exercise of this Warrant, the Holder shall have the right to receive, for each Warrant Share that would have been issuable upon such exercise immediately prior to the occurrence of such Fundamental Transaction, at the option of the Holder (without regard to any limitation in Section 2(e) on the exercise of this Warrant), the number of shares of Common Stock of the successor or acquiring corporation or of the Company, if it is the surviving corporation, and any additional consideration (the "Alternate Consideration") receivable as a result of such Fundamental Transaction by a holder of the number of shares of Common Stock for which this Warrant is exercisable immediately prior to such Fundamental Transaction (without regard to any limitation in Section 2(e) on the exercise of this Warrant). For purposes of any such exercise, the determination of the Exercise Price shall be appropriately adjusted to apply to such Alternate Consideration based on the amount of Alternate Consideration issuable in respect of one share of Common Stock in such Fundamental Transaction, and the Company shall apportion the Exercise Price among the Alternate Consideration in a reasonable manner reflecting the relative value of any different components of the Alternate Consideration. If holders of Common Stock are given any choice as to the securities, cash or property to be received in a Fundamental Transaction, then the Holder shall be given the same choice as to the Alternate Consideration it receives upon any exercise of this Warrant following such Fundamental Transaction. The Company shall cause any successor entity in a Fundamental Transaction in which the Company is not the survivor (the "Successor Entity") to assume in writing all of the obligations of the Company under this Warrant and the other Transaction Documents in accordance with the provisions of this Section 3(e) pursuant to written agreements in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Holder and approved by the Holder (without unreasonable delay) prior to such Fundamental Transaction and shall, at the option of the Holder, deliver to the Holder in exchange for this Warrant a security of the Successor Entity evidenced by a written instrument substantially similar in form and substance to this Warrant which is exercisable for a corresponding number of shares of capital stock of such Successor Entity (or its parent entity) equivalent to the shares of Common Stock acquirable and receivable upon exercise of this Warrant (without regard to any limitations on the exercise of this Warrant) prior to such Fundamental Transaction, and with an exercise price which applies the exercise price hereunder to such shares of capital stock (but taking into account the relative value of the shares of Common Stock pursuant to such Fundamental Transaction and the value of such shares of capital stock, such number of shares of capital stock and such exercise price being for the purpose of protecting the economic value of this Warrant immediately prior to the consummation of such Fundamental Transaction), and which is reasonably satisfactory in form and substance to the Holder. Upon the occurrence of any such Fundamental Transaction, the Successor Entity shall succeed to, and be substituted for (so that from and after the date of such Fundamental Transaction, the provisions of this Warrant and the other Transaction Documents referring to the "Company" shall refer instead to the Successor Entity), and may exercise every right and power of the Company and shall assume all of the obligations of the Company under this Warrant and the other Transaction Documents with the same effect as if such Successor Entity had been named as the Company herein.

f) Calculations. All calculations under this Section 3 shall be made to the nearest cent or the nearest 1/100th of a share, as the case may be. For purposes of this Section 3, the number of shares of Common Stock deemed to be issued and outstanding as of a given date shall be the sum of the number of shares of Common Stock (excluding treasury shares, if any) issued and outstanding.



g) Notice to Holder.

i. Adjustment to Exercise Price. Whenever the Exercise Price is adjusted pursuant to any provision of this Section 3, the Company shall promptly deliver to the Holder by facsimile or email a notice setting forth the Exercise Price after such adjustment and any resulting adjustment to the number of Warrant Shares and setting forth a brief statement of the facts requiring such adjustment.

ii. Notice to Allow Exercise by Holder. If (A) the Company shall declare a dividend (or any other distribution in whatever form) on the Common Stock, (B) the Company shall declare a special nonrecurring cash dividend on or a redemption of the Common Stock, (C) the Company shall authorize the granting to all holders of the Common Stock rights or warrants to subscribe for or purchase any shares of capital stock of any class or of any rights, (D) the approval of any stockholders of the Company shall be required in connection with any reclassification of the Common Stock, any consolidation or merger to which the Company is a party, any sale or transfer of all or substantially all of the assets of the Company, or any compulsory share exchange whereby the Common Stock is converted into other securities, cash or property, or (E) the Company shall authorize the voluntary or involuntary dissolution, liquidation or winding up of the affairs of the Company, then, in each case, the Company shall cause to be delivered by facsimile or email to the Holder at its last facsimile number or email address as it shall appear upon the Warrant Register of the Company, at least 20 calendar days prior to the applicable record or effective date hereinafter specified, a notice stating (x) the date on which a record is to be taken for the purpose of such dividend, distribution, redemption, rights or warrants, or if a record is not to be taken, the date as of which the holders of the Common Stock of record to be entitled to such dividend, distributions, redemption, rights or warrants are to be determined or (y) the date on which such reclassification, consolidation, merger, sale, transfer or share exchange is expected to become effective or close, and the date as of which it is expected that holders of the Common Stock of record shall be entitled to exchange their shares of the Common Stock for securities, cash or other property deliverable upon such reclassification, consolidation, merger, sale, transfer or share exchange; provided that the failure to deliver such notice or any defect therein or in the delivery thereof shall not affect the validity of the corporate action required to be specified in such notice. To the extent that any notice provided in this Warrant constitutes, or contains, material, non-public information regarding the Company or any of the Subsidiaries, the Company shall simultaneously file such notice with the Commission pursuant to a Current Report on Form 8-K. The Holder shall remain entitled to exercise this Warrant during the period commencing on the date of such notice to the effective date of the event triggering such notice except as may otherwise be expressly set forth herein.

Section 4. Transfer of Warrant.

a) Transferability. This Warrant and all rights hereunder (including, without limitation, any registration rights) are transferable, in whole or in part, upon surrender of this Warrant at the principal office of the Company or its designated agent, together with a written assignment of this Warrant substantially in the form attached hereto duly executed by the Holder or its agent or attorney and funds sufficient to pay any transfer taxes payable upon the making of such transfer. Upon such surrender and, if required, such payment, the Company shall execute and deliver a new Warrant or Warrants in the name of the assignee or assignees, as applicable, and in the denomination or denominations specified in such instrument of assignment, and shall issue to the assignor a new Warrant evidencing the portion of this Warrant not so assigned, and this Warrant shall promptly be cancelled. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, the Holder shall not be required to physically surrender this Warrant to the Company unless the Holder has assigned this Warrant in full, in which case, the Holder shall surrender this Warrant to the Company within three (3) Trading Days of the date on which the Holder delivers an assignment form to the Company assigning this Warrant in full. The Warrant, if properly assigned in accordance herewith, may be exercised by a new holder for the purchase of Warrant Shares without having a new Warrant issued.

b) New Warrants. This Warrant may be divided or combined with other Warrants upon presentation hereof at the aforesaid office of the Company, together with a written notice specifying the names and denominations in which new Warrants are to be issued, signed by the Holder or its agent or attorney. Subject to compliance with Section 4(a), as to any transfer which may be involved in such division or combination, the Company shall execute and deliver a new Warrant or Warrants in exchange for the Warrant or Warrants to be divided or combined in accordance with such notice. All Warrants issued on transfers or exchanges shall be dated the initial issuance date of this Warrant and shall be identical with this Warrant except as to the number of Warrant Shares issuable pursuant thereto.

c) Warrant Register. The Company shall register this Warrant, upon records to be maintained by the Company for that purpose (the “Warrant Register”), in the name of the record Holder hereof from time to time. The Company may deem and treat the registered Holder of this Warrant as the absolute owner hereof for the purpose of any exercise hereof or any distribution to the Holder, and for all other purposes, absent actual notice to the contrary.

Section 5. Miscellaneous.

a) No Rights as Stockholder Until Exercise. This Warrant does not entitle the Holder to any voting rights, dividends or other rights as a stockholder of the Company prior to the exercise hereof as set forth in Section 2(d)(i), except as expressly set forth in Section 3.

b) Loss, Theft, Destruction or Mutilation of Warrant. The Company covenants that upon receipt by the Company of evidence reasonably satisfactory to it of the loss, theft, destruction or mutilation of this Warrant or any stock certificate relating to the Warrant Shares, and in case of loss, theft or destruction, of indemnity or security reasonably satisfactory to it (which, in the case of the Warrant, shall not include the posting of any bond), and upon surrender and cancellation of such Warrant or stock certificate, if mutilated, the Company will make and deliver a new Warrant or stock certificate of like tenor and dated as of such cancellation, in lieu of such Warrant or stock certificate.

c) Saturdays, Sundays, Holidays, etc. If the last or appointed day for the taking of any action or the expiration of any right required or granted herein shall not be a Business Day, then, such action may be taken or such right may be exercised on the next succeeding Business Day.

d) Authorized Shares.

The Company covenants that, during the period the Warrant is outstanding, it will reserve from its authorized and unissued Common Stock a sufficient number of shares to provide for the issuance of the Warrant Shares upon the exercise of any purchase rights under this Warrant. The Company further covenants that its issuance of this Warrant shall constitute full authority to its officers who are charged with the duty of issuing the necessary Warrant Shares upon the exercise of the purchase rights under this Warrant. The Company will take all such reasonable action as may be necessary to assure that such Warrant Shares may be issued as provided herein without violation of any applicable law or regulation, or of any requirements of the Trading Market upon which the Common Stock may be listed. The Company covenants that all Warrant Shares which may be issued upon the exercise of the purchase rights represented by this Warrant will, upon exercise of the purchase rights represented by this Warrant and payment for such Warrant Shares in accordance herewith, be duly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable and free from all taxes, liens and charges created by the Company in respect of the issue thereof (other than taxes in respect of any transfer occurring contemporaneously with such issue).

Except and to the extent as waived or consented to by the Holder, the Company shall not by any action, including, without limitation, amending its certificate of incorporation or through any reorganization, transfer of assets, consolidation, merger, dissolution, issue or sale of securities or any other voluntary action, avoid or seek to avoid the observance or performance of any of the terms of this Warrant, but will at all times in good faith assist in the carrying out of all such terms and in the taking of all such actions as may be necessary or appropriate to protect the rights of Holder as set forth in this Warrant against impairment. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, the Company will (i) not increase the par value of any Warrant Shares above the amount payable therefor upon such exercise immediately prior to such increase in par value, (ii) take all such action as may be necessary or appropriate in order that the Company may validly and legally issue fully paid and nonassessable Warrant Shares upon the exercise of this Warrant and (iii) use commercially reasonable efforts to obtain all such authorizations, exemptions or consents from any public regulatory body having jurisdiction thereof, as may be, necessary to enable the Company to perform its obligations under this Warrant.

Before taking any action which would result in an adjustment in the number of Warrant Shares for which this Warrant is exercisable or in the Exercise Price, the Company shall obtain all such authorizations or exemptions thereof, or consents thereto, as may be necessary from any public regulatory body or bodies having jurisdiction thereof.

e) Jurisdiction. All questions concerning the construction, validity, enforcement and interpretation of this Warrant shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of the Purchase Agreement.

f) Restrictions. The Holder acknowledges that the Warrant Shares acquired upon the exercise of this Warrant, if not registered, and the Holder does not utilize cashless exercise, will have restrictions upon resale imposed by state and federal securities laws.

g) Nonwaiver and Expenses. No course of dealing or any delay or failure to exercise any right hereunder on the part of Holder shall operate as a waiver of such right or otherwise prejudice the Holder's rights, powers or remedies. Without limiting any other provision of this Warrant or the Purchase Agreement, if the Company willfully and knowingly fails to comply with any provision of this Warrant, which results in any material damages to the Holder, the Company shall pay to the Holder such amounts as shall be sufficient to cover any costs and expenses including, but not limited to, reasonable attorneys' fees, including those of appellate proceedings, incurred by the Holder in collecting any amounts due pursuant hereto or in otherwise enforcing any of its rights, powers or remedies hereunder.

h) Notices. Any notice, request or other document required or permitted to be given or delivered to the Holder by the Company shall be delivered in accordance with the notice provisions of the Purchase Agreement.

i) Limitation of Liability. No provision hereof, in the absence of any affirmative action by the Holder to exercise this Warrant to purchase Warrant Shares, and no enumeration herein of the rights or privileges of the Holder, shall give rise to any liability of the Holder for the purchase price of any Common Stock or as a stockholder of the Company, whether such liability is asserted by the Company or by creditors of the Company.

j) Remedies. The Holder, in addition to being entitled to exercise all rights granted by law, including recovery of damages, will be entitled to specific performance of its rights under this Warrant. The Company agrees that monetary damages would not be adequate compensation for any loss incurred by reason of a breach by it of the provisions of this Warrant and hereby agrees to waive and not to assert the defense in any action for specific performance that a remedy at law would be adequate.

k) Successors and Assigns. Subject to applicable securities laws, this Warrant and the rights and obligations evidenced hereby shall inure to the benefit of and be binding upon the successors and permitted assigns of the Company and the successors and permitted assigns of Holder. The provisions of this Warrant are intended to be for the benefit of any Holder from time to time of this Warrant and shall be enforceable by the Holder or holder of Warrant Shares.

l) Amendment. This Warrant may be modified or amended or the provisions hereof waived with the written consent of the Company and the Holder.

m) Severability. Wherever possible, each provision of this Warrant shall be interpreted in such manner as to be effective and valid under applicable law, but if any provision of this Warrant shall be prohibited by or invalid under applicable law, such provision shall be ineffective to the extent of such prohibition or invalidity, without invalidating the remainder of such provisions or the remaining provisions of this Warrant.

n) Headings. The headings used in this Warrant are for the convenience of reference only and shall not, for any purpose, be deemed a part of this Warrant.

\*\*\*\*\*

*(Signature Page Follows)*

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Company has caused this Warrant to be executed by its officer thereunto duly authorized as of the date first above indicated.

**AETHLON MEDICAL, INC.**

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name:

Title:

**NOTICE OF EXERCISE**

TO: AETHLON MEDICAL, INC.

(1) The undersigned hereby elects to purchase \_\_\_\_\_ Warrant Shares of the Company pursuant to the terms of the attached Warrant (only if exercised in full), and tenders herewith payment of the exercise price in full, together with all applicable transfer taxes, if any.

(2) Payment shall take the form of (check applicable box):

☐ in lawful money of the United States; or

☐ if permitted the cancellation of such number of Warrant Shares as is necessary, in accordance with the formula set forth in subsection 2(c), to exercise this Warrant with respect to the maximum number of Warrant Shares purchasable pursuant to the cashless exercise procedure set forth in subsection 2(c).

(3) Please issue said Warrant Shares in the name of the undersigned or in such other name as is specified below:

\_\_\_\_\_

The Warrant Shares shall be delivered to the following DWAC Account Number:

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

[SIGNATURE OF HOLDER]

Name of Investing Entity: \_\_\_\_\_

*Signature of Authorized Signatory of Investing Entity:* \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Authorized Signatory: \_\_\_\_\_

Title of Authorized Signatory: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**ASSIGNMENT FORM**

*(To assign the foregoing Warrant, execute this form and supply required information. Do not use this form to purchase shares.)*

FOR VALUE RECEIVED, the foregoing Warrant and all rights evidenced thereby are hereby assigned to

Name:	_____
	(Please Print)
Address:	_____
	(Please Print)
Phone Number:	_____
Email Address:	_____
Dated: _____, _____	
Holder's Signature: _____	
Holder's Address: _____	

## PRE-FUNDED COMMON STOCK PURCHASE WARRANT

AETHLON MEDICAL, INC.

Warrant Shares: \_\_\_\_\_

Initial Exercise Date: \_\_\_\_\_, 2017

THIS PRE-FUNDED COMMON STOCK PURCHASE WARRANT (the "Warrant") certifies that, for value received, \_\_\_\_\_ or its assigns (the "Holder") is entitled, upon the terms and subject to the limitations on exercise and the conditions hereinafter set forth, at any time on or after the date hereof (the "Initial Exercise Date") until this Warrant is exercised in full (the "Termination Date") but not thereafter, to subscribe for and purchase from Aethlon Medical, Inc., a Nevada corporation (the "Company"), up to \_\_\_\_\_ shares (as subject to adjustment hereunder, the "Warrant Shares") of Common Stock. The purchase price of one share of Common Stock under this Warrant shall be equal to the Exercise Price, as defined in Section 2(b).

Section 1. Definitions. Capitalized terms used and not otherwise defined herein shall have the meanings set forth in that certain Securities Purchase Agreement (the "Purchase Agreement"), dated \_\_\_\_\_, 2017, among the Company and the purchasers signatory thereto.

Section 2. Exercise.

a) Exercise of Warrant. Exercise of the purchase rights represented by this Warrant may be made, in whole or in part, at any time or times on or after the Initial Exercise Date and on or before the Termination Date by delivery to the Company of a duly executed facsimile copy (or e-mail attachment) of the Notice of Exercise in the form annexed hereto (the "Notice of Exercise"). By the Standard Settlement Period Delivery Date (as defined in Section 2(d)(i) herein) following the date of exercise as aforesaid, the Holder shall deliver the aggregate Exercise Price for the shares specified in the applicable Notice of Exercise by wire transfer or cashier's check drawn on a United States bank unless the cashless exercise procedure specified in Section 2(c) below is specified in the applicable Notice of Exercise. No ink-original Notice of Exercise shall be required, nor shall any medallion guarantee (or other type of guarantee or notarization) of any Notice of Exercise be required. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, the Holder shall not be required to physically surrender this Warrant to the Company until the Holder has purchased all of the Warrant Shares available hereunder and the Warrant has been exercised in full, in which case, the Holder shall surrender this Warrant to the Company for cancellation within three (3) Trading Days of the date on which the final Notice of Exercise is delivered to the Company. Partial exercises of this Warrant resulting in purchases of a portion of the total number of Warrant Shares available hereunder shall have the effect of lowering the outstanding number of Warrant Shares purchasable hereunder in an amount equal to the applicable number of Warrant Shares purchased. The Holder and the Company shall maintain records showing the number of Warrant Shares purchased and the date of such purchases. The Company shall deliver any objection to any Notice of Exercise within one (1) Business Day of receipt of such notice. **The Holder and any assignee, by acceptance of this Warrant, acknowledge and agree that, by reason of the provisions of this paragraph, following the purchase of a portion of the Warrant Shares hereunder, the number of Warrant Shares available for purchase hereunder at any given time may be less than the amount stated on the face hereof.**

b) Exercise Price. The aggregate exercise price of this Warrant, except for a nominal exercise price of \$0.01 per Warrant Share, was pre-funded to the Company on or prior to the Initial Exercise Date and, consequently, no additional consideration (other than the nominal exercise price of \$0.01 per Warrant Share) shall be required to be paid by the Holder to any Person to effect any exercise of this Warrant. The Holder shall not be entitled to the return or refund of all, or any portion, of such pre-paid aggregate exercise price under any circumstance or for any reason whatsoever, including in the event this Warrant shall not have been exercised prior to the Termination Date. The remaining unpaid exercise price per share of Common Stock under this Warrant shall be \$0.01, subject to adjustment hereunder (the "Exercise Price").

c) Cashless Exercise. If at the time of exercise hereof there is no effective registration statement registering, or the prospectus contained therein is not available for the issuance of the Warrant Shares to the Holder, then this Warrant may also be exercised, in whole or in part, at such time by means of a “cashless exercise” in which the Holder shall be entitled to receive a number of Warrant Shares equal to the quotient obtained by dividing  $[(A-B)(X)]$  by (A), where:

(A) = as applicable: (i) the VWAP on the Trading Day immediately preceding the date of the applicable Notice of Exercise if such Notice of Exercise is (1) both executed and delivered pursuant to Section 2(a) hereof on a day that is not a Trading Day or (2) both executed and delivered pursuant to Section 2(a) hereof on a Trading Day prior to the opening of “regular trading hours” (as defined in Rule 600(b)(64) of Regulation NMS promulgated under the federal securities laws) on such Trading Day, (ii) at the option of the Holder, either (y) the VWAP on the Trading Day immediately preceding the date of the applicable Notice of Exercise or (z) the Bid Price of the Common Stock on the principal Trading Market as reported by Bloomberg L.P. as of the time of the Holder’s execution of the applicable Notice of Exercise if such Notice of Exercise is executed during “regular trading hours” on a Trading Day and is delivered within two (2) hours thereafter pursuant to Section 2(a) hereof or (iii) the VWAP on the date of the applicable Notice of Exercise if the date of such Notice of Exercise is a Trading Day and such Notice of Exercise is both executed and delivered pursuant to Section 2(a) hereof after the close of “regular trading hours” on such Trading Day;

(B) = the Exercise Price of this Warrant, as adjusted hereunder; and

(X) = the number of Warrant Shares that would be issuable upon exercise of this Warrant in accordance with the terms of this Warrant if such exercise were by means of a cash exercise rather than a cashless exercise.

If Warrant Shares are issued in such a cashless exercise, the parties acknowledge and agree that in accordance with Section 3(a)(9) of the Securities Act, the Warrant Shares shall take on the registered characteristics of the Warrants being exercised. The Company agrees not to take any position contrary to this Section 2(c).

“Bid Price” means, for any date, the price determined by the first of the following clauses that applies: (a) if the Common Stock is then listed or quoted on a Trading Market, the bid price of the Common Stock for the time in question (or the nearest preceding date) on the Trading Market on which the Common Stock is then listed or quoted as reported by Bloomberg L.P. (based on a Trading Day from 9:30 a.m. (New York City time) to 4:02 p.m. (New York City time)), (b) if OTCQB or OTCQX is not a Trading Market, the volume weighted average price of the Common Stock for such date (or the nearest preceding date) on OTCQB or OTCQX as applicable, (c) if the Common Stock is not then listed or quoted for trading on OTCQB or OTCQX and if prices for the Common Stock are then reported in the “Pink Sheets” published by OTC Markets Group, Inc. (or a similar organization or agency succeeding to its functions of reporting prices), the most recent bid price per share of the Common Stock so reported, or (d) in all other cases, the fair market value of a share of Common Stock as determined by an independent appraiser selected in good faith by the Purchasers of a majority in interest of the Securities then outstanding and reasonably acceptable to the Company, the fees and expenses of which shall be paid by the Company.

“VWAP” means, for any date, the price determined by the first of the following clauses that applies: (a) if the Common Stock is then listed or quoted on a Trading Market, the daily volume weighted average price of the Common Stock for such date (or the nearest preceding date) on the Trading Market on which the Common Stock is then listed or quoted as reported by Bloomberg L.P. (based on a Trading Day from 9:30 a.m. (New York City time) to 4:02 p.m. (New York City time)), (b) if OTCQB or OTCQX is not a Trading Market, the volume weighted average price of the Common Stock for such date (or the nearest preceding date) on OTCQB or OTCQX as applicable, (c) if the Common Stock is not then listed or quoted for trading on OTCQB or OTCQX and if prices for the Common Stock are then reported in the “Pink Sheets” published by OTC Markets Group, Inc. (or a similar organization or agency succeeding to its functions of reporting prices), the most recent bid price per share of the Common Stock so reported, or (d) in all other cases, the fair market value of a share of Common Stock as determined by an independent appraiser selected in good faith by the Purchasers of a majority in interest of the Securities then outstanding and reasonably acceptable to the Company, the fees and expenses of which shall be paid by the Company.



Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, on the Termination Date, this Warrant shall be automatically exercised via cashless exercise pursuant to this Section 2(c).

d) Mechanics of Exercise.

i. Delivery of Warrant Shares Upon Exercise. The Company shall cause the Warrant Shares purchased hereunder to be transmitted by the Transfer Agent to the Holder by crediting the account of the Holder's or its designee's balance account with The Depository Trust Company through its Deposit or Withdrawal at Custodian system ("DWAC") if the Company is then a participant in such system and either (A) there is an effective registration statement permitting the issuance of the Warrant Shares to or resale of the Warrant Shares by Holder or (B) this Warrant is being exercised via cashless exercise, and otherwise by physical delivery of a certificate, registered in the Company's share register in the name of the Holder or its designee, for the number of Warrant Shares to which the Holder is entitled pursuant to such exercise to the address specified by the Holder in the Notice of Exercise by the date that is the earlier of (A) the Standard Settlement Period Delivery Date after the delivery to the Company of the Notice of Exercise and (B) one (1) Trading Day after delivery of the aggregate Exercise Price to the Company (such date, the "Warrant Share Delivery Date"). Upon delivery of the Notice of Exercise, the Holder shall be deemed for all corporate purposes to have become the holder of record of the Warrant Shares with respect to which this Warrant has been exercised, irrespective of the date of delivery of the Warrant Shares, provided that payment of the aggregate Exercise Price (other than in the case of a cashless exercise) is received by the Standard Settlement Period Delivery Date following delivery of the Notice of Exercise. If the Company fails for any reason to deliver to the Holder the Warrant Shares subject to a Notice of Exercise by the Warrant Share Delivery Date, the Company shall pay to the Holder, in cash, as liquidated damages and not as a penalty, for each \$1,000 of Warrant Shares subject to such exercise (based on the VWAP of the Common Stock on the date of the applicable Notice of Exercise), \$10 per Trading Day (increasing to \$20 per Trading Day on the fifth Trading Day after such liquidated damages begin to accrue) for each Trading Day after such Warrant Share Delivery Date until such Warrant Shares are delivered or Holder rescinds such exercise. The Company agrees to maintain a transfer agent that is a participant in the FAST program so long as this Warrant remains outstanding and exercisable. As used herein, "Standard Settlement Period" means the standard settlement period, expressed in a number of Trading Days, on the Company's primary Trading Market with respect to the Common Stock as in effect on the date of delivery of the Notice of Exercise and "Standard Settlement Period Delivery Date" means the Trading Day for delivery of Warrant Shares in compliance with the Standard Settlement Period. Notwithstanding the foregoing, with respect to any Notice(s) of Exercise delivered on or prior to 12:00 p.m. (New York City time) on the Initial Exercise Date, which may be delivered at any time after the time of execution of the Purchase Agreement, the Company agrees to deliver the Warrant Shares subject to such notice(s) by 4:00 p.m. (New York City time) on the Initial Exercise Date.

ii. Delivery of New Warrants Upon Exercise. If this Warrant shall have been exercised in part, the Company shall, at the request of a Holder and upon surrender of this Warrant certificate, at the time of delivery of the Warrant Shares, deliver to the Holder a new Warrant evidencing the rights of the Holder to purchase the unpurchased Warrant Shares called for by this Warrant, which new Warrant shall in all other respects be identical with this Warrant.

iii. Rescission Rights. If the Company fails to cause the Transfer Agent to transmit to the Holder the Warrant Shares pursuant to Section 2(d)(i) by the Warrant Share Delivery Date, then the Holder will have the right to rescind such exercise.

iv. Compensation for Buy-In on Failure to Timely Deliver Warrant Shares Upon Exercise. In addition to any other rights available to the Holder, if the Company fails to cause the Transfer Agent to transmit to the Holder the Warrant Shares in accordance with the provisions of Section 2(d)(i) above pursuant to an exercise on or before the Warrant Share Delivery Date, and if after such date the Holder is required by its broker to purchase (in an open market transaction or otherwise) or the Holder's brokerage firm otherwise purchases, shares of Common Stock to deliver in satisfaction of a sale by the Holder of the Warrant Shares which the Holder anticipated receiving upon such exercise (a "Buy-In"), then the Company shall (A) pay in cash to the Holder the amount, if any, by which (x) the Holder's total purchase price (including brokerage commissions, if any) for the shares of Common Stock so purchased exceeds (y) the amount obtained by multiplying (1) the number of Warrant Shares that the Company was required to deliver to the Holder in connection with the exercise at issue times (2) the price at which the sell order giving rise to such purchase obligation was executed, and (B) at the option of the Holder, either reinstate the portion of the Warrant and equivalent number of Warrant Shares for which such exercise was not honored (in which case such exercise shall be deemed rescinded) or deliver to the Holder the number of shares of Common Stock that would have been issued had the Company timely complied with its exercise and delivery obligations hereunder. For example, if the Holder purchases Common Stock having a total purchase price of \$11,000 to cover a Buy-In with respect to an attempted exercise of shares of Common Stock with an aggregate sale price giving rise to such purchase obligation of \$10,000, under clause (A) of the immediately preceding sentence the Company shall be required to pay the Holder \$1,000. The Holder shall provide the Company written notice indicating the amounts payable to the Holder in respect of the Buy-In and, upon request of the Company, evidence of the amount of such loss. Nothing herein shall limit a Holder's right to pursue any other remedies available to it hereunder, at law or in equity including, without limitation, a decree of specific performance and/or injunctive relief with respect to the Company's failure to timely deliver shares of Common Stock upon exercise of the Warrant as required pursuant to the terms hereof.

v. No Fractional Shares or Scrip. No fractional shares or scrip representing fractional shares shall be issued upon the exercise of this Warrant. As to any fraction of a share which the Holder would otherwise be entitled to purchase upon such exercise, the Company shall, at its election, either pay a cash adjustment in respect of such final fraction in an amount equal to such fraction multiplied by the Exercise Price or round up to the next whole share.

vi. Charges, Taxes and Expenses. Issuance of Warrant Shares shall be made without charge to the Holder for any issue or transfer tax or other incidental expense in respect of the issuance of such Warrant Shares, all of which taxes and expenses shall be paid by the Company, and such Warrant Shares shall be issued in the name of the Holder or in such name or names as may be directed by the Holder; provided, however, that in the event that Warrant Shares are to be issued in a name other than the name of the Holder, this Warrant when surrendered for exercise shall be accompanied by the Assignment Form attached hereto duly executed by the Holder and the Company may require, as a condition thereto, the payment of a sum sufficient to reimburse it for any transfer tax incidental thereto. The Company shall pay all Transfer Agent fees required for same-day processing of any Notice of Exercise and all fees to the Depository Trust Company (or another established clearing corporation performing similar functions) required for same-day electronic delivery of the Warrant Shares.

vii. Closing of Books. The Company will not close its stockholder books or records in any manner which prevents the timely exercise of this Warrant, pursuant to the terms hereof.

e) Holder's Exercise Limitations. The Company shall not effect any exercise of this Warrant, and a Holder shall not have the right to exercise any portion of this Warrant, pursuant to Section 2 or otherwise, to the extent that after giving effect to such issuance after exercise as set forth on the applicable Notice of Exercise, the Holder (together with the Holder's Affiliates, and any other Persons acting as a group together with the Holder or any of the Holder's Affiliates (such Persons, "Attribution Parties")), would beneficially own in excess of the Beneficial Ownership Limitation (as defined below). For purposes of the foregoing sentence, the number of shares of Common Stock beneficially owned by the Holder and its Affiliates and Attribution Parties shall include the number of shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of this Warrant with respect to which such determination is being made, but shall exclude the number of shares of Common Stock which would be issuable upon (i) exercise of the remaining, nonexercised portion of this Warrant beneficially owned by the Holder or any of its Affiliates or Attribution Parties and (ii) exercise or conversion of the unexercised or nonconverted portion of any other securities of the Company (including, without limitation, any other Common Stock Equivalents) subject to a limitation on conversion or exercise analogous to the limitation contained herein beneficially owned by the Holder or any of its Affiliates or Attribution Parties. Except as set forth in the preceding sentence, for purposes of this Section 2(e), beneficial ownership shall be calculated in accordance with Section 13(d) of the Exchange Act and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder, it being acknowledged by the Holder that the Company is not representing to the Holder that such calculation is in compliance with Section 13(d) of the Exchange Act and the Holder is solely responsible for any schedules required to be filed in accordance therewith. To the extent that the limitation contained in this Section 2(e) applies, the determination of whether this Warrant is exercisable (in relation to other securities owned by the Holder together with any Affiliates and Attribution Parties) and of which portion of this Warrant is exercisable shall be in the sole discretion of the Holder, and the submission of a Notice of Exercise shall be deemed to be the Holder's determination of whether this Warrant is exercisable (in relation to other securities owned by the Holder together with any Affiliates and Attribution Parties) and of which portion of this Warrant is exercisable, in each case subject to the Beneficial Ownership Limitation, and the Company shall have no obligation to verify or confirm the accuracy of such determination. In addition, a determination as to any group status as contemplated above shall be determined in accordance with Section 13(d) of the Exchange Act and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder. For purposes of this Section 2(e), in determining the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock, a Holder may rely on the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock as reflected in (A) the Company's most recent periodic or annual report filed with the Commission, as the case may be, (B) a more recent public announcement by the Company or (C) a more recent written notice by the Company or the Transfer Agent setting forth the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding. Upon the written or oral request of a Holder, the Company shall within two Trading Days confirm orally and in writing to the Holder the number of shares of Common Stock then outstanding. In any case, the number of outstanding shares of Common Stock shall be determined after giving effect to the conversion or exercise of securities of the Company, including this Warrant, by the Holder or its Affiliates or Attribution Parties since the date as of which such number of outstanding shares of Common Stock was reported. The "Beneficial Ownership Limitation" shall be 4.99%/9.99% of the number of shares of the Common Stock outstanding immediately after giving effect to the issuance of shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of this Warrant. The Holder, upon notice to the Company, may increase or decrease the Beneficial Ownership Limitation provisions of this Section 2(e), provided that the Beneficial Ownership Limitation in no event exceeds 9.99% of the number of shares of the Common Stock outstanding immediately after giving effect to the issuance of shares of Common Stock upon exercise of this Warrant held by the Holder and the provisions of this Section 2(e) shall continue to apply. Any increase in the Beneficial Ownership Limitation will not be effective until the 61<sup>st</sup> day after such notice is delivered to the Company. The provisions of this paragraph shall be construed and implemented in a manner otherwise than in strict conformity with the terms of this Section 2(e) to correct this paragraph (or any portion hereof) which may be defective or inconsistent with the intended Beneficial Ownership Limitation herein contained or to make changes or supplements necessary or desirable to properly give effect to such limitation. The limitations contained in this paragraph shall apply to a successor holder of this Warrant.

Section 3. Certain Adjustments.

a) Stock Dividends and Splits. If the Company, at any time while this Warrant is outstanding: (i) pays a stock dividend or otherwise makes a distribution or distributions on shares of its Common Stock or any other equity or equity equivalent securities payable in shares of Common Stock (which, for avoidance of doubt, shall not include any shares of Common Stock issued by the Company upon exercise of this Warrant), (ii) subdivides outstanding shares of Common Stock into a larger number of shares, (iii) combines (including by way of reverse stock split) outstanding shares of Common Stock into a smaller number of shares, or (iv) issues by reclassification of shares of the Common Stock any shares of capital stock of the Company, then in each case the Exercise Price shall be multiplied by a fraction of which the numerator shall be the number of shares of Common Stock (excluding treasury shares, if any) outstanding immediately before such event and of which the denominator shall be the number of shares of Common Stock outstanding immediately after such event, and the number of shares issuable upon exercise of this Warrant shall be proportionately adjusted such that the aggregate Exercise Price of this Warrant shall remain unchanged. Any adjustment made pursuant to this Section 3(a) shall become effective immediately after the record date for the determination of stockholders entitled to receive such dividend or distribution and shall become effective immediately after the effective date in the case of a subdivision, combination or re-classification.

b) [Reserved]

c) Subsequent Rights Offerings. In addition to any adjustments pursuant to Section 3(a) above, if at any time the Company grants, issues or sells any Common Stock Equivalents or rights to purchase stock, warrants, securities or other property pro rata to the record holders of any class of shares of Common Stock (the "Purchase Rights"), then the Holder will be entitled to acquire, upon the terms applicable to such Purchase Rights, the aggregate Purchase Rights which the Holder could have acquired if the Holder had held the number of shares of Common Stock acquirable upon complete exercise of this Warrant (without regard to any limitations on exercise hereof, including without limitation, the Beneficial Ownership Limitation) immediately before the date on which a record is taken for the grant, issuance or sale of such Purchase Rights, or, if no such record is taken, the date as of which the record holders of shares of Common Stock are to be determined for the grant, issue or sale of such Purchase Rights (provided, however, to the extent that the Holder's right to participate in any such Purchase Right would result in the Holder exceeding the Beneficial Ownership Limitation, then the Holder shall not be entitled to participate in such Purchase Right to such extent (or beneficial ownership of such shares of Common Stock as a result of such Purchase Right to such extent) and such Purchase Right to such extent shall be held in abeyance for the Holder until such time, if ever, as its right thereto would not result in the Holder exceeding the Beneficial Ownership Limitation).

d) Pro Rata Distributions. During such time as this Warrant is outstanding, if the Company shall declare or make any dividend or other distribution of its assets (or rights to acquire its assets) to holders of shares of Common Stock, by way of return of capital or otherwise (including, without limitation, any distribution of cash, stock or other securities, property or options by way of a dividend, spin off, reclassification, corporate rearrangement, scheme of arrangement or other similar transaction) (a "Distribution"), at any time after the issuance of this Warrant, then, in each such case, the Holder shall be entitled to participate in such Distribution to the same extent that the Holder would have participated therein if the Holder had held the number of shares of Common Stock acquirable upon complete exercise of this Warrant (without regard to any limitations on exercise hereof, including without limitation, the Beneficial Ownership Limitation) immediately before the date of which a record is taken for such Distribution, or, if no such record is taken, the date as of which the record holders of shares of Common Stock are to be determined for the participation in such Distribution (provided, however, to the extent that the Holder's right to participate in any such Distribution would result in the Holder exceeding the Beneficial Ownership Limitation, then the Holder shall not be entitled to participate in such Distribution to such extent (or in the beneficial ownership of any shares of Common Stock as a result of such Distribution to such extent) and the portion of such Distribution shall be held in abeyance for the benefit of the Holder until such time, if ever, as its right thereto would not result in the Holder exceeding the Beneficial Ownership Limitation).

e) Fundamental Transaction. If, at any time while this Warrant is outstanding, (i) the Company, directly or indirectly, in one or more related transactions effects any merger or consolidation of the Company with or into another Person, (ii) the Company, directly or indirectly, effects any sale, lease, license, assignment, transfer, conveyance or other disposition of all or substantially all of its assets in one or a series of related transactions, (iii) any, direct or indirect, purchase offer, tender offer or exchange offer (whether by the Company or another Person) is completed pursuant to which holders of Common Stock are permitted to sell, tender or exchange their shares for other securities, cash or property and has been accepted by the holders of 50% or more of the outstanding Common Stock, (iv) the Company, directly or indirectly, in one or more related transactions effects any reclassification, reorganization or recapitalization of the Common Stock or any compulsory share exchange pursuant to which the Common Stock is effectively converted into or exchanged for other securities, cash or property, or (v) the Company, directly or indirectly, in one or more related transactions consummates a stock or share purchase agreement or other business combination (including, without limitation, a reorganization, recapitalization, spin-off or scheme of arrangement) with another Person or group of Persons whereby such other Person or group acquires more than 50% of the outstanding shares of Common Stock (not including any shares of Common Stock held by the other Person or other Persons making or party to, or associated or affiliated with the other Persons making or party to, such stock or share purchase agreement or other business combination) (each a “Fundamental Transaction”), then, upon any subsequent exercise of this Warrant, the Holder shall have the right to receive, for each Warrant Share that would have been issuable upon such exercise immediately prior to the occurrence of such Fundamental Transaction, at the option of the Holder (without regard to any limitation in Section 2(e) on the exercise of this Warrant), the number of shares of Common Stock of the successor or acquiring corporation or of the Company, if it is the surviving corporation, and any additional consideration (the “Alternate Consideration”) receivable as a result of such Fundamental Transaction by a holder of the number of shares of Common Stock for which this Warrant is exercisable immediately prior to such Fundamental Transaction (without regard to any limitation in Section 2(e) on the exercise of this Warrant). For purposes of any such exercise, the determination of the Exercise Price shall be appropriately adjusted to apply to such Alternate Consideration based on the amount of Alternate Consideration issuable in respect of one share of Common Stock in such Fundamental Transaction, and the Company shall apportion the Exercise Price among the Alternate Consideration in a reasonable manner reflecting the relative value of any different components of the Alternate Consideration. If holders of Common Stock are given any choice as to the securities, cash or property to be received in a Fundamental Transaction, then the Holder shall be given the same choice as to the Alternate Consideration it receives upon any exercise of this Warrant following such Fundamental Transaction. The Company shall cause any successor entity in a Fundamental Transaction in which the Company is not the survivor (the “Successor Entity”) to assume in writing all of the obligations of the Company under this Warrant and the other Transaction Documents in accordance with the provisions of this Section 3(e) pursuant to written agreements in form and substance reasonably satisfactory to the Holder and approved by the Holder (without unreasonable delay) prior to such Fundamental Transaction and shall, at the option of the Holder, deliver to the Holder in exchange for this Warrant a security of the Successor Entity evidenced by a written instrument substantially similar in form and substance to this Warrant which is exercisable for a corresponding number of shares of capital stock of such Successor Entity (or its parent entity) equivalent to the shares of Common Stock acquirable and receivable upon exercise of this Warrant (without regard to any limitations on the exercise of this Warrant) prior to such Fundamental Transaction, and with an exercise price which applies the exercise price hereunder to such shares of capital stock (but taking into account the relative value of the shares of Common Stock pursuant to such Fundamental Transaction and the value of such shares of capital stock, such number of shares of capital stock and such exercise price being for the purpose of protecting the economic value of this Warrant immediately prior to the consummation of such Fundamental Transaction), and which is reasonably satisfactory in form and substance to the Holder. Upon the occurrence of any such Fundamental Transaction, the Successor Entity shall succeed to, and be substituted for (so that from and after the date of such Fundamental Transaction, the provisions of this Warrant and the other Transaction Documents referring to the “Company” shall refer instead to the Successor Entity), and may exercise every right and power of the Company and shall assume all of the obligations of the Company under this Warrant and the other Transaction Documents with the same effect as if such Successor Entity had been named as the Company herein.

f) Calculations. All calculations under this Section 3 shall be made to the nearest cent or the nearest 1/100th of a share, as the case may be. For purposes of this Section 3, the number of shares of Common Stock deemed to be issued and outstanding as of a given date shall be the sum of the number of shares of Common Stock (excluding treasury shares, if any) issued and outstanding.

g) Notice to Holder.

i. Adjustment to Exercise Price. Whenever the Exercise Price is adjusted pursuant to any provision of this Section 3, the Company shall promptly deliver to the Holder by facsimile or email a notice setting forth the Exercise Price after such adjustment and any resulting adjustment to the number of Warrant Shares and setting forth a brief statement of the facts requiring such adjustment.

ii. Notice to Allow Exercise by Holder. If (A) the Company shall declare a dividend (or any other distribution in whatever form) on the Common Stock, (B) the Company shall declare a special nonrecurring cash dividend on or a redemption of the Common Stock, (C) the Company shall authorize the granting to all holders of the Common Stock rights or warrants to subscribe for or purchase any shares of capital stock of any class or of any rights, (D) the approval of any stockholders of the Company shall be required in connection with any reclassification of the Common Stock, any consolidation or merger to which the Company is a party, any sale or transfer of all or substantially all of the assets of the Company, or any compulsory share exchange whereby the Common Stock is converted into other securities, cash or property, or (E) the Company shall authorize the voluntary or involuntary dissolution, liquidation or winding up of the affairs of the Company, then, in each case, the Company shall cause to be delivered by facsimile or email to the Holder at its last facsimile number or email address as it shall appear upon the Warrant Register of the Company, at least 20 calendar days prior to the applicable record or effective date hereinafter specified, a notice stating (x) the date on which a record is to be taken for the purpose of such dividend, distribution, redemption, rights or warrants, or if a record is not to be taken, the date as of which the holders of the Common Stock of record to be entitled to such dividend, distributions, redemption, rights or warrants are to be determined or (y) the date on which such reclassification, consolidation, merger, sale, transfer or share exchange is expected to become effective or close, and the date as of which it is expected that holders of the Common Stock of record shall be entitled to exchange their shares of the Common Stock for securities, cash or other property deliverable upon such reclassification, consolidation, merger, sale, transfer or share exchange; provided that the failure to deliver such notice or any defect therein or in the delivery thereof shall not affect the validity of the corporate action required to be specified in such notice. To the extent that any notice provided in this Warrant constitutes, or contains, material, non-public information regarding the Company or any of the Subsidiaries, the Company shall simultaneously file such notice with the Commission pursuant to a Current Report on Form 8-K. The Holder shall remain entitled to exercise this Warrant during the period commencing on the date of such notice to the effective date of the event triggering such notice except as may otherwise be expressly set forth herein.

Section 4. Transfer of Warrant.

a) Transferability. This Warrant and all rights hereunder (including, without limitation, any registration rights) are transferable, in whole or in part, upon surrender of this Warrant at the principal office of the Company or its designated agent, together with a written assignment of this Warrant substantially in the form attached hereto duly executed by the Holder or its agent or attorney and funds sufficient to pay any transfer taxes payable upon the making of such transfer. Upon such surrender and, if required, such payment, the Company shall execute and deliver a new Warrant or Warrants in the name of the assignee or assignees, as applicable, and in the denomination or denominations specified in such instrument of assignment, and shall issue to the assignor a new Warrant evidencing the portion of this Warrant not so assigned, and this Warrant shall promptly be cancelled. Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, the Holder shall not be required to physically surrender this Warrant to the Company unless the Holder has assigned this Warrant in full, in which case, the Holder shall surrender this Warrant to the Company within three (3) Trading Days of the date on which the Holder delivers an assignment form to the Company assigning this Warrant in full. The Warrant, if properly assigned in accordance herewith, may be exercised by a new holder for the purchase of Warrant Shares without having a new Warrant issued.

b) New Warrants. This Warrant may be divided or combined with other Warrants upon presentation hereof at the aforesaid office of the Company, together with a written notice specifying the names and denominations in which new Warrants are to be issued, signed by the Holder or its agent or attorney. Subject to compliance with Section 4(a), as to any transfer which may be involved in such division or combination, the Company shall execute and deliver a new Warrant or Warrants in exchange for the Warrant or Warrants to be divided or combined in accordance with such notice. All Warrants issued on transfers or exchanges shall be dated the initial issuance date of this Warrant and shall be identical with this Warrant except as to the number of Warrant Shares issuable pursuant thereto.

c) Warrant Register. The Company shall register this Warrant, upon records to be maintained by the Company for that purpose (the “Warrant Register”), in the name of the record Holder hereof from time to time. The Company may deem and treat the registered Holder of this Warrant as the absolute owner hereof for the purpose of any exercise hereof or any distribution to the Holder, and for all other purposes, absent actual notice to the contrary.

#### Section 5. Miscellaneous.

a) No Rights as Stockholder Until Exercise. This Warrant does not entitle the Holder to any voting rights, dividends or other rights as a stockholder of the Company prior to the exercise hereof as set forth in Section 2(d)(i), except as expressly set forth in Section 3.

b) Loss, Theft, Destruction or Mutilation of Warrant. The Company covenants that upon receipt by the Company of evidence reasonably satisfactory to it of the loss, theft, destruction or mutilation of this Warrant or any stock certificate relating to the Warrant Shares, and in case of loss, theft or destruction, of indemnity or security reasonably satisfactory to it (which, in the case of the Warrant, shall not include the posting of any bond), and upon surrender and cancellation of such Warrant or stock certificate, if mutilated, the Company will make and deliver a new Warrant or stock certificate of like tenor and dated as of such cancellation, in lieu of such Warrant or stock certificate.

c) Saturdays, Sundays, Holidays, etc. If the last or appointed day for the taking of any action or the expiration of any right required or granted herein shall not be a Business Day, then, such action may be taken or such right may be exercised on the next succeeding Business Day.

d) Authorized Shares.

The Company covenants that, during the period the Warrant is outstanding, it will reserve from its authorized and unissued Common Stock a sufficient number of shares to provide for the issuance of the Warrant Shares upon the exercise of any purchase rights under this Warrant. The Company further covenants that its issuance of this Warrant shall constitute full authority to its officers who are charged with the duty of issuing the necessary Warrant Shares upon the exercise of the purchase rights under this Warrant. The Company will take all such reasonable action as may be necessary to assure that such Warrant Shares may be issued as provided herein without violation of any applicable law or regulation, or of any requirements of the Trading Market upon which the Common Stock may be listed. The Company covenants that all Warrant Shares which may be issued upon the exercise of the purchase rights represented by this Warrant will, upon exercise of the purchase rights represented by this Warrant and payment for such Warrant Shares in accordance herewith, be duly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable and free from all taxes, liens and charges created by the Company in respect of the issue thereof (other than taxes in respect of any transfer occurring contemporaneously with such issue).

Except and to the extent as waived or consented to by the Holder, the Company shall not by any action, including, without limitation, amending its certificate of incorporation or through any reorganization, transfer of assets, consolidation, merger, dissolution, issue or sale of securities or any other voluntary action, avoid or seek to avoid the observance or performance of any of the terms of this Warrant, but will at all times in good faith assist in the carrying out of all such terms and in the taking of all such actions as may be necessary or appropriate to protect the rights of Holder as set forth in this Warrant against impairment. Without limiting the generality of the foregoing, the Company will (i) not increase the par value of any Warrant Shares above the amount payable therefor upon such exercise immediately prior to such increase in par value, (ii) take all such action as may be necessary or appropriate in order that the Company may validly and legally issue fully paid and nonassessable Warrant Shares upon the exercise of this Warrant and (iii) use commercially reasonable efforts to obtain all such authorizations, exemptions or consents from any public regulatory body having jurisdiction thereof, as may be, necessary to enable the Company to perform its obligations under this Warrant.

Before taking any action which would result in an adjustment in the number of Warrant Shares for which this Warrant is exercisable or in the Exercise Price, the Company shall obtain all such authorizations or exemptions thereof, or consents thereto, as may be necessary from any public regulatory body or bodies having jurisdiction thereof.

- e) Jurisdiction. All questions concerning the construction, validity, enforcement and interpretation of this Warrant shall be determined in accordance with the provisions of the Purchase Agreement.
- f) Restrictions. The Holder acknowledges that the Warrant Shares acquired upon the exercise of this Warrant, if not registered, and the Holder does not utilize cashless exercise, will have restrictions upon resale imposed by state and federal securities laws.
- g) Nonwaiver and Expenses. No course of dealing or any delay or failure to exercise any right hereunder on the part of Holder shall operate as a waiver of such right or otherwise prejudice the Holder's rights, powers or remedies. Without limiting any other provision of this Warrant or the Purchase Agreement, if the Company willfully and knowingly fails to comply with any provision of this Warrant, which results in any material damages to the Holder, the Company shall pay to the Holder such amounts as shall be sufficient to cover any costs and expenses including, but not limited to, reasonable attorneys' fees, including those of appellate proceedings, incurred by the Holder in collecting any amounts due pursuant hereto or in otherwise enforcing any of its rights, powers or remedies hereunder.
- h) Notices. Any notice, request or other document required or permitted to be given or delivered to the Holder by the Company shall be delivered in accordance with the notice provisions of the Purchase Agreement.
- i) Limitation of Liability. No provision hereof, in the absence of any affirmative action by the Holder to exercise this Warrant to purchase Warrant Shares, and no enumeration herein of the rights or privileges of the Holder, shall give rise to any liability of the Holder for the purchase price of any Common Stock or as a stockholder of the Company, whether such liability is asserted by the Company or by creditors of the Company.
- j) Remedies. The Holder, in addition to being entitled to exercise all rights granted by law, including recovery of damages, will be entitled to specific performance of its rights under this Warrant. The Company agrees that monetary damages would not be adequate compensation for any loss incurred by reason of a breach by it of the provisions of this Warrant and hereby agrees to waive and not to assert the defense in any action for specific performance that a remedy at law would be adequate.
- k) Successors and Assigns. Subject to applicable securities laws, this Warrant and the rights and obligations evidenced hereby shall inure to the benefit of and be binding upon the successors and permitted assigns of the Company and the successors and permitted assigns of Holder. The provisions of this Warrant are intended to be for the benefit of any Holder from time to time of this Warrant and shall be enforceable by the Holder or holder of Warrant Shares.
- l) Amendment. This Warrant may be modified or amended or the provisions hereof waived with the written consent of the Company and the Holder.
- m) Severability. Wherever possible, each provision of this Warrant shall be interpreted in such manner as to be effective and valid under applicable law, but if any provision of this Warrant shall be prohibited by or invalid under applicable law, such provision shall be ineffective to the extent of such prohibition or invalidity, without invalidating the remainder of such provisions or the remaining provisions of this Warrant.
- n) Headings. The headings used in this Warrant are for the convenience of reference only and shall not, for any purpose, be deemed a part of this Warrant.

\*\*\*\*\*

*(Signature Page Follows)*



IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the Company has caused this Warrant to be executed by its officer thereunto duly authorized as of the date first above indicated.

**AETHLON MEDICAL, INC.**

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name:

Title:

**NOTICE OF EXERCISE**

TO: AETHLON MEDICAL, INC.

(1) The undersigned hereby elects to purchase \_\_\_\_\_ Warrant Shares of the Company pursuant to the terms of the attached Warrant (only if exercised in full), and tenders herewith payment of the exercise price in full, together with all applicable transfer taxes, if any.

(2) Payment shall take the form of (check applicable box):

☐ in lawful money of the United States; or

☐ if permitted the cancellation of such number of Warrant Shares as is necessary, in accordance with the formula set forth in subsection 2(c), to exercise this Warrant with respect to the maximum number of Warrant Shares purchasable pursuant to the cashless exercise procedure set forth in subsection 2(c).

(3) Please issue said Warrant Shares in the name of the undersigned or in such other name as is specified below:

\_\_\_\_\_

The Warrant Shares shall be delivered to the following DWAC Account Number:

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

[SIGNATURE OF HOLDER]

Name of Investing Entity: \_\_\_\_\_

*Signature of Authorized Signatory of Investing Entity:* \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Authorized Signatory: \_\_\_\_\_

Title of Authorized Signatory: \_\_\_\_\_

Date: \_\_\_\_\_

**ASSIGNMENT FORM**

*(To assign the foregoing Warrant, execute this form and supply required information. Do not use this form to purchase shares.)*

FOR VALUE RECEIVED, the foregoing Warrant and all rights evidenced thereby are hereby assigned to

Name:

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Please Print)

Address:

\_\_\_\_\_  
(Please Print)

Phone Number:

\_\_\_\_\_

Email Address:

\_\_\_\_\_

Dated: \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_

Holder's Signature: \_\_\_\_\_

Holder's Address: \_\_\_\_\_

**Jolie Kahn, Esq.**  
**33 Edgewood**  
**Locust Valley, NY 11560**  
**(516) 217-6379**

September 15, 2017

Aethlon Medical, Inc.  
 9635 Granite Ridge Drive, Suite 100  
 San Diego, California 92123

Ladies and Gentlemen:

I have acted as counsel to Aethlon Medical, Inc., a Nevada corporation (the “Company”), in connection with the Company’s registration statement on Form S-1 (the “Registration Statement”), filed with the Securities and Exchange Commission (the “Commission”) under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “Securities Act”), relating to the issuance and sale of 4,777,070 shares of common stock of the Company, par value \$0.001 per share (the “Shares”) and 4,777,070 warrants to purchase common stock (the “Warrants”) and the shares of common stock of the Company issuable from time to time upon exercise of the Warrants (the “Warrant Shares”); and any pre-funded warrants to purchase shares (the “Pre-funded Warrants”) and any shares issuable upon exercise of the Pre-funded Warrants (the “Pre-Funded Warrant Shares”; the Shares, Warrants, Warrant Shares, Pre-funded Warrants and Pre-funded Warrant Shares are collectively referred to herein as the “Securities”), issued by the Company. The Securities are to be sold by Company pursuant to a Engagement Agreement (the “Engagement Agreement”) entered into by and between the Company and H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC the form of which is to be filed as Exhibit 1.1 to the Registration Statement. The Company is also registering warrants to purchase shares of common stock of the Company to be issued to the placement agent as additional compensation pursuant to the Engagement Agreement (the “Placement Agent’s Warrant”), as well as the shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Placement Agents’s Warrant (the “Placement Agent’s Warrant Shares”).

In connection with this opinion, I have examined originals or copies, certified or otherwise identified to our satisfaction, of (i) the Registration Statement, including the form of prospectus included therein and the documents incorporated by reference therein, (ii) the Company’s certificate of incorporation, as amended to date, (iii) the Company’s by-laws, as amended to date, and (iv) certain resolutions of the Board of Directors of the Company. I have also examined originals or copies, certified or otherwise identified to our satisfaction, of such other documents, certificates and records as I have deemed necessary or appropriate, and I have made such investigations of law as I have deemed appropriate as a basis for the opinions expressed below.

In rendering the opinions expressed below, I have assumed and have not verified (i) the genuineness of the signatures on all documents that I have examined, (ii) the legal capacity of all natural persons, (iii) the authenticity of all documents supplied to us as originals and (iv) the conformity to the authentic originals of all documents supplied to us as certified or photostatic or faxed copies.

Based upon and subject to the foregoing and subject also to the limitations, qualifications, exceptions and assumptions set forth herein, I am of the opinion that:

1. the Shares have been duly authorized for issuance and, when issued, delivered and paid for in accordance with the terms of the Engagement Agreement, will be validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable;
2. the Warrants and Pre-Funded Warrants have been duly authorized for issuance, and, when issued, delivered and paid for in accordance with the terms of the Engagement Agreement, will be validly issued and will constitute the legal, valid and binding obligation of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with its terms, except as the same may be limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium or similar laws affecting the enforcement of creditors’ rights generally and equitable principles of general applicability;
3. the Warrant Shares and Pre-Funded Warrant Shares have been duly authorized, and when issued and sold by the Company and delivered by the Company against receipt of the exercise price therefor, in accordance with and in the manner described in the Registration Statement and Warrants, will be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable;
4. the Placement Agent’s Warrant, when executed and delivered by the Company in accordance with and in the manner described in the Registration Statement and the Engagement Agreement, will be validly issued and will constitute a valid and binding agreement of the Company, enforceable against the Company in accordance with its terms, except as the same may be limited by applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium or similar laws affecting the enforcement of creditors’ rights generally and equitable principles of general applicability; and

5. the Placement Agent's Warrant Shares, when issued and sold by the Company and delivered by the Company upon valid exercise thereof and against receipt of the exercise price therefor, in accordance with and in the manner described in the Registration Statement and the Placement Agent's Warrant, will be validly issued, fully paid and non-assessable.

I express no opinion other than as to the federal laws of the United States of America and the Nevada Corporation Law (Chapter 78 of the Nevada Revised Statutes, as amended, and including the statutory provisions, all applicable provisions of the Nevada Constitution and reported judicial decisions interpreting the forgoing). I hereby consent to the filing of this opinion as an exhibit to the Registration Statement and the reference to this firm under the caption "Legal Matters" in the prospectus included in the Registration Statement. In giving this consent, I do not admit that I am an "expert" under the Securities Act or under the rules and regulations of the Commission relating thereto with respect to any part of the Registration Statement.

Very truly yours,

/s/ Jolie G. Kahn, Esq.

## SECURITIES PURCHASE AGREEMENT

This Securities Purchase Agreement (this “Agreement”) is dated as of September \_\_, 2017, between Aethlon Medical, Inc., a Nevada corporation (the “Company”), and each purchaser identified on the signature pages hereto (each, including its successors and assigns, a “Purchaser” and collectively the “Purchasers”).

WHEREAS, subject to the terms and conditions set forth in this Agreement and pursuant to an effective registration statement under the Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the “Securities Act”), the Company desires to issue and sell to each Purchaser, and each Purchaser, severally and not jointly, desires to purchase from the Company, securities of the Company as more fully described in this Agreement.

NOW, THEREFORE, IN CONSIDERATION of the mutual covenants contained in this Agreement, and for other good and valuable consideration the receipt and adequacy of which are hereby acknowledged, the Company and each Purchaser agree as follows:

## ARTICLE I.

## DEFINITIONS

1.1 Definitions. In addition to the terms defined elsewhere in this Agreement, for all purposes of this Agreement, the following terms have the meanings set forth in this Section 1.1:

“Acquiring Person” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 4.5.

“Action” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 3.1(j).

“Affiliate” means any Person that, directly or indirectly through one or more intermediaries, controls or is controlled by or is under common control with a Person as such terms are used in and construed under Rule 405 under the Securities Act.

“Board of Directors” means the board of directors of the Company.

“Business Day” means any day except any Saturday, any Sunday, any day which is a federal legal holiday in the United States or any day on which banking institutions in the State of New York are authorized or required by law or other governmental action to close.

“Class A Warrants” means, collectively, the Common Stock purchase warrants delivered to the Purchasers at the Closing in accordance with Section 2.2(a) hereof, which Warrants shall be exercisable immediately and have a term of exercise equal to five (5) years, in the form of Exhibit A attached hereto.

“Class B Warrants” means, collectively, the Common Stock purchase warrants delivered to the Purchasers at the Closing in accordance with Section 2.2(a) hereof, which Warrants shall be exercisable immediately, in the form of Exhibit B attached hereto.

“Closing” means the closing of the purchase and sale of the Securities pursuant to Section 2.1.

“Closing Date” means the Trading Day on which all of the Transaction Documents have been executed and delivered by the applicable parties thereto, and all conditions precedent to (i) the Purchasers’ obligations to pay the Subscription Amount and (ii) the Company’s obligations to deliver the Securities, in each case, have been satisfied or waived, but in no event later than the second (2<sup>nd</sup>) Trading Day following the date hereof.

“Commission” means the United States Securities and Exchange Commission.

“Common Stock” means the common stock of the Company, par value \$0.001 per share, and any other class of securities into which such securities may hereafter be reclassified or changed.

“Common Stock Equivalents” means any securities of the Company or the Subsidiaries which would entitle the holder thereof to acquire at any time Common Stock, including, without limitation, any debt, preferred stock, right, option, warrant or other instrument that is at any time convertible into or exercisable or exchangeable for, or otherwise entitles the holder thereof to receive, Common Stock.

“Company Counsel” means Jolie Kahn, Esq., with offices located at 33 Edgewood, Locust Valley, NY 11560.

“Disclosure Schedules” means the Disclosure Schedules of the Company delivered concurrently herewith.

“EGS” means Ellenoff Grossman & Schole LLP, with offices located at 1345 Avenue of the Americas, New York, New York 10105-0302.

“Evaluation Date” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 3.1(s).

“Exchange Act” means the Securities Exchange Act of 1934, as amended, and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder.

“Exempt Issuance” means the issuance of (a) shares of Common Stock or options to employees, officers or directors of the Company pursuant to any stock or option plan duly adopted for such purpose, by a majority of the non-employee members of the Board of Directors or a majority of the members of a committee of non-employee directors established for such purpose for services rendered to the Company, (b) securities upon the exercise or exchange of or conversion of any Securities issued hereunder and/or other securities exercisable or exchangeable for or convertible into shares of Common Stock issued and outstanding on the date of this Agreement, provided that such securities have not been amended since the date of this Agreement to increase the number of such securities or to decrease the exercise price, exchange price or conversion price of such securities (other than in connection with stock splits or combinations) or to extend the term of such securities, (c) shares of Common Stock existing under the Company’s At the Market Offering Agreement, and (d) securities issued pursuant to acquisitions or strategic transactions approved by a majority of the disinterested directors of the Company, provided that such securities are issued as “restricted securities” (as defined in Rule 144) and carry no registration rights that require or permit the filing of any registration statement in connection therewith during the prohibition period in Section 4.12(a) herein, and provided that any such issuance shall only be to a Person (or to the equityholders of a Person) which is, itself or through its subsidiaries, an operating company or an owner of an asset in a business synergistic with the business of the Company and shall provide to the Company additional benefits in addition to the investment of funds, but shall not include a transaction in which the Company is issuing securities primarily for the purpose of raising capital or to an entity whose primary business is investing in securities.

“FCPA” means the Foreign Corrupt Practices Act of 1977, as amended.

“FDA” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 3.1(hh).

“FDCA” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 3.1(hh).

“GAAP” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 3.1(h).

“Indebtedness” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 3.1(aa).

“Intellectual Property Rights” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 3.1(p).

“Liens” means a lien, charge, pledge, security interest, encumbrance, right of first refusal, preemptive right or other restriction.

“Material Adverse Effect” shall have the meaning assigned to such term in Section 3.1(b).

“Material Permits” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 3.1(n).

“Per Share Purchase Price” equals \$ \_\_\_\_\_, subject to adjustment for reverse and forward stock splits, stock dividends, stock combinations and other similar transactions of the Common Stock that occur after the date of this Agreement.

“Person” means an individual or corporation, partnership, trust, incorporated or unincorporated association, joint venture, limited liability company, joint stock company, government (or an agency or subdivision thereof) or other entity of any kind.

“Pharmaceutical Product” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 3.1(hh).

“Placement Agent” means H.C. Wainwright & Co., LLC.

“Proceeding” means an action, claim, suit, investigation or proceeding (including, without limitation, an informal investigation or partial proceeding, such as a deposition), whether commenced or threatened.

“Prospectus” means the final prospectus filed for the Registration Statement.

“Prospectus Supplement” means the supplement to the Prospectus complying with Rule 424(b) of the Securities Act that is filed with the Commission and delivered by the Company to each Purchaser at the Closing.

“Purchaser Party” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 4.8.

“Registration Statement” means the effective registration statement with Commission file No. 333-219589 which registers the sale of the Shares, the Warrants and the Warrant Shares to the Purchasers.

“Required Approvals” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 3.1(e).

“Rule 144” means Rule 144 promulgated by the Commission pursuant to the Securities Act, as such Rule may be amended or interpreted from time to time, or any similar rule or regulation hereafter adopted by the Commission having substantially the same purpose and effect as such Rule.

“Rule 424” means Rule 424 promulgated by the Commission pursuant to the Securities Act, as such Rule may be amended or interpreted from time to time, or any similar rule or regulation hereafter adopted by the Commission having substantially the same purpose and effect as such Rule.

“SEC Reports” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 3.1(h).

“Securities” means the Shares, the Warrants and the Warrant Shares.

“Securities Act” means the Securities Act of 1933, as amended, and the rules and regulations promulgated thereunder.

“Shares” means the shares of Common Stock issued or issuable to each Purchaser pursuant to this Agreement.

“Short Sales” means all “short sales” as defined in Rule 200 of Regulation SHO under the Exchange Act (but shall not be deemed to include locating and/or borrowing shares of Common Stock).

“Subscription Amount” means, as to each Purchaser, the aggregate amount to be paid for Shares and Warrants purchased hereunder as specified below such Purchaser’s name on the signature page of this Agreement and next to the heading “Subscription Amount,” in United States dollars and in immediately available funds.



“Subsidiary” means any subsidiary of the Company as set forth on Schedule 3.1(a), and shall, where applicable, also include any direct or indirect subsidiary of the Company formed or acquired after the date hereof.

“Trading Day” means a day on which the principal Trading Market is open for trading.

“Trading Market” means any of the following markets or exchanges on which the Common Stock is listed or quoted for trading on the date in question: the NYSE American, the Nasdaq Capital Market, the Nasdaq Global Market, the Nasdaq Global Select Market or the New York Stock Exchange (or any successors to any of the foregoing).

“Transaction Documents” means this Agreement, the Warrants, all exhibits and schedules thereto and hereto and any other documents or agreements executed in connection with the transactions contemplated hereunder.

“Transfer Agent” means Computershare Investor Services, the current transfer agent of the Company, with a mailing address of 350 Indiana Street, Suite 800, Golden, Colorado 80401 and a facsimile number of \_\_\_\_\_, and any successor transfer agent of the Company.

“Variable Rate Transaction” shall have the meaning ascribed to such term in Section 4.12(b).

“Warrants” means, collectively, the Class A Warrants and the Class B Warrants.

“Warrant Shares” means the shares of Common Stock issuable upon exercise of the Warrants.

## ARTICLE II.

### PURCHASE AND SALE

2.1 Closing. On the Closing Date, upon the terms and subject to the conditions set forth herein, substantially concurrent with the execution and delivery of this Agreement by the parties hereto, the Company agrees to sell, and the Purchasers, severally and not jointly, agree to purchase, up to an aggregate of up to \$\_\_\_\_\_ million of Shares (or Class B Warrants) and Class A Warrants as calculated pursuant to Section 2.2(a). Notwithstanding anything herein to the contrary, to the extent that a Purchaser determines, in its sole discretion, that such Purchaser's Subscription Amount (together with such Purchaser's Affiliates and any Person acting as a group together with such Purchaser or any of such Purchaser's Affiliates) would cause such Purchaser's beneficial ownership of the shares of Common Stock to exceed 4.99% (or, at the election of the Purchaser, 9.99%) of the outstanding shares of Common Stock, such Purchaser may elect to purchase Class B Warrants in lieu of the Shares as determined pursuant to Section 2.2(a); provided, however, that, in the event that a Purchaser's Subscription Amount (together with such Purchaser's Affiliates and any Person acting as a group together with such Purchaser or any of such Purchaser's Affiliates) would cause such Purchaser's beneficial ownership of the shares of Common Stock to exceed 19.99% of the outstanding shares of Common Stock, in lieu of shares of Common Stock in excess of such amount, such Purchaser may be entitled to purchase Class B Warrants as determined pursuant to Section 2.2(a). In each case, it appears that the election to receive pre-funded warrants is solely at the option of the Purchaser. Each Purchaser's Subscription Amount as set forth on the signature page hereto executed by such Purchaser shall be made available for “Delivery Versus Payment” settlement with the Company. The Company shall deliver to each Purchaser its respective Shares (or Class B Warrants) and Class A Warrants as determined pursuant to Section 2.2(a), and the Company and each Purchaser shall deliver the other items set forth in Section 2.2 deliverable at the Closing. Upon satisfaction of the covenants and conditions set forth in Sections 2.2 and 2.3, the Closing shall occur at the offices of the Placement Agent or such other location as the parties shall mutually agree. Unless otherwise directed by the Placement Agent, settlement of the Shares shall occur via “Delivery Versus Payment” (“DVP”) (i.e., on the Closing Date, the Company shall issue the Shares registered in the Purchasers' names and addresses and released by the Transfer Agent directly to the account(s) at the Placement Agent identified by each Purchaser; upon receipt of such Shares, the Placement Agent shall promptly electronically deliver such Shares and deliver the Warrants in physical form to the applicable Purchaser, and payment therefor shall be made by the Placement Agent (or its clearing firm) by wire transfer to the Company). The Company covenants that, if the Purchaser delivers a Notice of Exercise (as defined in the Class B Warrants) on or prior to 12:00 p.m. (New York City time) on the Closing Date to exercise any Class B Warrants, the Company shall deliver shares of Common Stock with respect to the Class B Warrants to the Purchaser by 4:00 p.m. on the Closing Date in connection with such Notice of Exercise.

## 2.2 Deliveries.

- (a) On or prior to the Closing Date, the Company shall deliver or cause to be delivered to each Purchaser the following:
- (i) this Agreement duly executed by the Company;
  - (ii) a legal opinion of Company Counsel, substantially in the form of Exhibit C attached hereto;
  - (iii) subject to the last sentence of Section 2.1, the Company shall have provided each Purchaser with the Company's wire instructions, on Company letterhead and executed by the Chief Executive Officer or Chief Financial Officer;
  - (iv) subject to the last sentence of Section 2.1, a copy of the irrevocable instructions to the Transfer Agent instructing the Transfer Agent to deliver on an expedited basis via The Depository Trust Company Deposit or Withdrawal at Custodian system ("DWAC") Shares equal to such Purchaser's Subscription Amount divided by the Per Share Purchase Price, registered in the name of such Purchaser;
  - (v) a Class A Warrant registered in the name of such Purchaser to purchase up to a number of shares of Common Stock equal to \_\_\_% of such Purchaser's Shares, with an exercise price equal to \$\_\_\_\_, subject to adjustment therein;
  - (vi) if applicable, a Class B Warrant registered in the name of such Purchaser to purchase up to a number of shares of Common Stock equal to the difference between (A) such Purchaser's Subscription Amount divided by the Per Share Purchase Price and (B) the number of Shares otherwise issuable to such Purchaser that would cause such Purchaser's Beneficial Ownership to be more than 4.99%, 9.99% or 19.99%, as applicable, of the issued and outstanding shares of Common Stock, with an exercise price of \$0.01 per share, subject to adjustment therein; and
  - (vii) the Prospectus and Prospectus Supplement (which may be delivered in accordance with Rule 172 under the Securities Act).
- (b) On or prior to the Closing Date, each Purchaser shall deliver or cause to be delivered to the Company the following:
- (i) this Agreement duly executed by such Purchaser; and
  - (ii) immediately available funds equal to such Purchaser's Subscription Amount (less, if applicable, the aggregate exercise price of the Class B Warrants issuable to such Purchaser hereunder), which shall be made available for "Delivery Versus Payment" settlement with the Company and, as to the Class B Warrants, will be wired to the account designed by the Company in writing.

## 2.3 Closing Conditions.

- (a) The obligations of the Company hereunder in connection with the Closing are subject to the following conditions being met:
- (i) the accuracy in all material respects (or, to the extent representations or warranties are qualified by materiality or Material Adverse Effect, in all respects) on the Closing Date of the representations and warranties of the Purchasers contained herein (unless as of a specific date therein in which case they shall be accurate as of such date);
  - (ii) all obligations, covenants and agreements of each Purchaser required to be performed at or prior to the Closing Date shall have been performed; and
  - (iii) the delivery by each Purchaser of the items set forth in Section 2.2(b) of this Agreement.

(b) The respective obligations of the Purchasers hereunder in connection with the Closing are subject to the following conditions being met:

(i) the accuracy in all material respects (or, to the extent representations or warranties are qualified by materiality or Material Adverse Effect, in all respects) when made and on the Closing Date of the representations and warranties of the Company contained herein (unless as of a specific date therein in which case they shall be accurate as of such date);

(ii) all obligations, covenants and agreements of the Company required to be performed at or prior to the Closing Date shall have been performed;

(iii) the delivery by the Company of the items set forth in Section 2.2(a) of this Agreement;

(iv) there shall have been no Material Adverse Effect with respect to the Company since the date hereof; and

(v) from the date hereof to the Closing Date, trading in the Common Stock shall not have been suspended by the Commission or the Company's principal Trading Market, and, at any time prior to the Closing Date, trading in securities generally as reported by Bloomberg L.P. shall not have been suspended or limited, or minimum prices shall not have been established on securities whose trades are reported by such service, or on any Trading Market, nor shall a banking moratorium have been declared either by the United States or New York State authorities nor shall there have occurred any material outbreak or escalation of hostilities or other national or international calamity of such magnitude in its effect on, or any material adverse change in, any financial market which, in each case, in the reasonable judgment of such Purchaser, makes it impracticable or inadvisable to purchase the Securities at the Closing.

### ARTICLE III.

#### REPRESENTATIONS AND WARRANTIES

3.1 Representations and Warranties of the Company. Except as set forth in the Disclosure Schedules, which Disclosure Schedules shall be deemed a part hereof and shall qualify any representation or otherwise made herein to the extent of the disclosure contained in the corresponding section of the Disclosure Schedules, the Company hereby makes the following representations and warranties to each Purchaser:

(a) Subsidiaries. All of the direct and indirect subsidiaries of the Company are set forth on Schedule 3.1(a). The Company owns, directly or indirectly, all of the capital stock or other equity interests of each Subsidiary free and clear of any Liens, and all of the issued and outstanding shares of capital stock of each Subsidiary are validly issued and are fully paid, non-assessable and free of preemptive and similar rights to subscribe for or purchase securities. If the Company has no subsidiaries, all other references to the Subsidiaries or any of them in the Transaction Documents shall be disregarded.

(b) Organization and Qualification. The Company and each of the Subsidiaries is an entity duly incorporated or otherwise organized, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of the jurisdiction of its incorporation or organization, with the requisite power and authority to own and use its properties and assets and to carry on its business as currently conducted. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary is in violation nor default of any of the provisions of its respective certificate or articles of incorporation, bylaws or other organizational or charter documents. Each of the Company and the Subsidiaries is duly qualified to conduct business and is in good standing as a foreign corporation or other entity in each jurisdiction in which the nature of the business conducted or property owned by it makes such qualification necessary, except where the failure to be so qualified or in good standing, as the case may be, could not have or reasonably be expected to result in: (i) a material adverse effect on the legality, validity or enforceability of any Transaction Document, (ii) a material adverse effect on the results of operations, assets, business, prospects or condition (financial or otherwise) of the Company and the Subsidiaries, taken as a whole, or (iii) a material adverse effect on the Company's ability to perform in any material respect on a timely basis its obligations under any Transaction Document (any of (i), (ii) or (iii), a "Material Adverse Effect") and no Proceeding has been instituted in any such jurisdiction revoking, limiting or curtailing or seeking to revoke, limit or curtail such power and authority or qualification.

(c) Authorization; Enforcement. The Company has the requisite corporate power and authority to enter into and to consummate the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and each of the other Transaction Documents and otherwise to carry out its obligations hereunder and thereunder. The execution and delivery of this Agreement and each of the other Transaction Documents by the Company and the consummation by it of the transactions contemplated hereby and thereby have been duly authorized by all necessary action on the part of the Company and no further action is required by the Company, the Board of Directors or the Company's stockholders in connection herewith or therewith other than in connection with the Required Approvals. This Agreement and each other Transaction Document to which it is a party has been (or upon delivery will have been) duly executed by the Company and, when delivered in accordance with the terms hereof and thereof, will constitute the valid and binding obligation of the Company enforceable against the Company in accordance with its terms, except (i) as limited by general equitable principles and applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium and other laws of general application affecting enforcement of creditors' rights generally, (ii) as limited by laws relating to the availability of specific performance, injunctive relief or other equitable remedies and (iii) insofar as indemnification and contribution provisions may be limited by applicable law.

(d) No Conflicts. The execution, delivery and performance by the Company of this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents to which it is a party, the issuance and sale of the Securities and the consummation by it of the transactions contemplated hereby and thereby do not and will not (i) conflict with or violate any provision of the Company's or any Subsidiary's certificate or articles of incorporation, bylaws or other organizational or charter documents, or (ii) conflict with, or constitute a default (or an event that with notice or lapse of time or both would become a default) under, result in the creation of any Lien upon any of the properties or assets of the Company or any Subsidiary, or give to others any rights of termination, amendment, acceleration or cancellation (with or without notice, lapse of time or both) of, any agreement, credit facility, debt or other instrument (evidencing a Company or Subsidiary debt or otherwise) or other understanding to which the Company or any Subsidiary is a party or by which any property or asset of the Company or any Subsidiary is bound or affected, or (iii) subject to the Required Approvals, conflict with or result in a violation of any law, rule, regulation, order, judgment, injunction, decree or other restriction of any court or governmental authority to which the Company or a Subsidiary is subject (including federal and state securities laws and regulations), or by which any property or asset of the Company or a Subsidiary is bound or affected; except in the case of each of clauses (ii) and (iii), such as could not have or reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect.

(e) Filings, Consents and Approvals. The Company is not required to obtain any consent, waiver, authorization or order of, give any notice to, or make any filing or registration with, any court or other federal, state, local or other governmental authority or other Person in connection with the execution, delivery and performance by the Company of the Transaction Documents, other than: (i) the filings required pursuant to Section 4.4 of this Agreement, (ii) the filing with the Commission of the Prospectus Supplement, (iii) application(s) to each applicable Trading Market for the listing of the Shares and Warrant Shares for trading thereon in the time and manner required thereby, and (iv) such filings as are required to be made under applicable state securities laws (collectively, the "Required Approvals").

(f) Issuance of the Securities; Registration. The Securities are duly authorized and, when issued and paid for in accordance with the applicable Transaction Documents, will be duly and validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable, free and clear of all Liens imposed by the Company. The Warrant Shares, when issued in accordance with the terms of the Warrants, will be validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable, free and clear of all Liens imposed by the Company. The Company has reserved from its duly authorized capital stock the maximum number of shares of Common Stock issuable pursuant to this Agreement and the Warrants. The Company has prepared and filed the Registration Statement in conformity with the requirements of the Securities Act, which became effective on \_\_\_\_\_ (the "Effective Date"), including the Prospectus, and such amendments and supplements thereto as may have been required to the date of this Agreement. The Registration Statement is effective under the Securities Act and no stop order preventing or suspending the effectiveness of the Registration Statement or suspending or preventing the use of the Prospectus has been issued by the Commission and no proceedings for that purpose have been instituted or, to the knowledge of the Company, are threatened by the Commission. The Company, if required by the rules and regulations of the Commission, shall file the Prospectus with the Commission pursuant to Rule 424(b). At the time the Registration Statement and any amendments thereto became effective, at the date of this Agreement and at the Closing Date, the Registration Statement and any amendments thereto conformed and will conform in all material respects to the requirements of the Securities Act and did not and will not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state any material fact required to be stated therein or necessary to make the statements therein not misleading; and the Prospectus and any amendments or supplements thereto, at time the Prospectus or any amendment or supplement thereto was issued and at the Closing Date, conformed and will conform in all material respects to the requirements of the Securities Act and did not and will not contain an untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading.

(g) Capitalization. The capitalization of the Company is as set forth on Schedule 3.1(g). The Company has not issued any capital stock since its most recently filed periodic report under the Exchange Act, other than pursuant to the exercise of employee stock options under the Company's stock option plans, the issuance of shares of Common Stock to employees pursuant to the Company's employee stock purchase plans and pursuant to the conversion and/or exercise of Common Stock Equivalents outstanding as of the date of the most recently filed periodic report under the Exchange Act. No Person has any right of first refusal, preemptive right, right of participation, or any similar right to participate in the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents. Except as a result of the purchase and sale of the Securities, there are no outstanding options, warrants, scrip rights to subscribe to, calls or commitments of any character whatsoever relating to, or securities, rights or obligations convertible into or exercisable or exchangeable for, or giving any Person any right to subscribe for or acquire, any shares of Common Stock or the capital stock of any Subsidiary, or contracts, commitments, understandings or arrangements by which the Company or any Subsidiary is or may become bound to issue additional shares of Common Stock or Common Stock Equivalents or capital stock of any Subsidiary. The issuance and sale of the Securities will not obligate the Company or any Subsidiary to issue shares of Common Stock or other securities to any Person (other than the Purchasers) and will not result in a right of any holder of Company securities to adjust the exercise, conversion, exchange or reset price under any of such securities. There are no outstanding securities or instruments of the Company or any Subsidiary that contain any redemption or similar provisions, and there are no contracts, commitments, understandings or arrangements by which the Company or any Subsidiary is or may become bound to redeem a security of the Company or such Subsidiary. The Company does not have any stock appreciation rights or "phantom stock" plans or agreements or any similar plan or agreement. All of the outstanding shares of capital stock of the Company are duly authorized, validly issued, fully paid and nonassessable, have been issued in compliance with all federal and state securities laws, and none of such outstanding shares was issued in violation of any preemptive rights or similar rights to subscribe for or purchase securities. No further approval or authorization of any stockholder, the Board of Directors or others is required for the issuance and sale of the Securities. There are no stockholders agreements, voting agreements or other similar agreements with respect to the Company's capital stock to which the Company is a party or, to the knowledge of the Company, between or among any of the Company's stockholders.

(h) SEC Reports; Financial Statements. The Company has filed all reports, schedules, forms, statements and other documents required to be filed by the Company under the Securities Act and the Exchange Act, including pursuant to Section 13(a) or 15(d) thereof, for the two years preceding the date hereof (or such shorter period as the Company was required by law or regulation to file such material) (the foregoing materials, including the exhibits thereto and documents incorporated by reference therein, together with the Prospectus and the Prospectus Supplement, being collectively referred to herein as the "SEC Reports") on a timely basis or has received a valid extension of such time of filing and has filed any such SEC Reports prior to the expiration of any such extension. As of their respective dates, the SEC Reports complied in all material respects with the requirements of the Securities Act and the Exchange Act, as applicable, and none of the SEC Reports, when filed, contained any untrue statement of a material fact or omitted to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. The Company has never been an issuer subject to Rule 144(i) under the Securities Act. The financial statements of the Company included in the SEC Reports comply in all material respects with applicable accounting requirements and the rules and regulations of the Commission with respect thereto as in effect at the time of filing. Such financial statements have been prepared in accordance with United States generally accepted accounting principles applied on a consistent basis during the periods involved ("GAAP"), except as may be otherwise specified in such financial statements or the notes thereto and except that unaudited financial statements may not contain all footnotes required by GAAP, and fairly present in all material respects the financial position of the Company and its consolidated Subsidiaries as of and for the dates thereof and the results of operations and cash flows for the periods then ended, subject, in the case of unaudited statements, to normal, immaterial, year-end audit adjustments.

(i) Material Changes; Undisclosed Events, Liabilities or Developments. Since the date of the latest audited financial statements included within the SEC Reports, except as set forth on Schedule 3.1(i), (i) there has been no event, occurrence or development that has had or that could reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect, (ii) the Company has not incurred any liabilities (contingent or otherwise) other than (A) trade payables and accrued expenses incurred in the ordinary course of business consistent with past practice and (B) liabilities not required to be reflected in the Company's financial statements pursuant to GAAP or disclosed in filings made with the Commission, (iii) the Company has not altered its method of accounting, (iv) the Company has not declared or made any dividend or distribution of cash or other property to its stockholders or purchased, redeemed or made any agreements to purchase or redeem any shares of its capital stock and (v) the Company has not issued any equity securities to any officer, director or Affiliate, except pursuant to existing Company stock option plans. The Company does not have pending before the Commission any request for confidential treatment of information. Except for the issuance of the Securities contemplated by this Agreement or as set forth on Schedule 3.1(i), no event, liability, fact, circumstance, occurrence or development has occurred or exists or is reasonably expected to occur or exist with respect to the Company or its Subsidiaries or their respective businesses, prospects, properties, operations, assets or financial condition that would be required to be disclosed by the Company under applicable securities laws at the time this representation is made or deemed made that has not been publicly disclosed at least 1 Trading Day prior to the date that this representation is made.

(j) Litigation. There is no action, suit, inquiry, notice of violation, proceeding or investigation pending or, to the knowledge of the Company, threatened against or affecting the Company, any Subsidiary or any of their respective properties before or by any court, arbitrator, governmental or administrative agency or regulatory authority (federal, state, county, local or foreign) (collectively, an “Action”) which (i) adversely affects or challenges the legality, validity or enforceability of any of the Transaction Documents or the Securities or (ii) could, if there were an unfavorable decision, have or reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary, nor any director or officer thereof, is or has been the subject of any Action involving a claim of violation of or liability under federal or state securities laws or a claim of breach of fiduciary duty. There has not been, and to the knowledge of the Company, there is not pending or contemplated, any investigation by the Commission involving the Company or any current or former director or officer of the Company. The Commission has not issued any stop order or other order suspending the effectiveness of any registration statement filed by the Company or any Subsidiary under the Exchange Act or the Securities Act.

(k) Labor Relations. No labor dispute exists or, to the knowledge of the Company, is imminent with respect to any of the employees of the Company, which could reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect. None of the Company’s or its Subsidiaries’ employees is a member of a union that relates to such employee’s relationship with the Company or such Subsidiary, and neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries is a party to a collective bargaining agreement, and the Company and its Subsidiaries believe that their relationships with their employees are good. To the knowledge of the Company, no executive officer of the Company or any Subsidiary, is, or is now expected to be, in violation of any material term of any employment contract, confidentiality, disclosure or proprietary information agreement or non-competition agreement, or any other contract or agreement or any restrictive covenant in favor of any third party, and the continued employment of each such executive officer does not subject the Company or any of its Subsidiaries to any liability with respect to any of the foregoing matters. The Company and its Subsidiaries are in compliance with all U.S. federal, state, local and foreign laws and regulations relating to employment and employment practices, terms and conditions of employment and wages and hours, except where the failure to be in compliance could not, individually or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(l) Compliance. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary: (i) is in default under or in violation of (and no event has occurred that has not been waived that, with notice or lapse of time or both, would result in a default by the Company or any Subsidiary under), nor has the Company or any Subsidiary received notice of a claim that it is in default under or that it is in violation of, any indenture, loan or credit agreement or any other agreement or instrument to which it is a party or by which it or any of its properties is bound (whether or not such default or violation has been waived), (ii) is in violation of any judgment, decree or order of any court, arbitrator or other governmental authority or (iii) is or has been in violation of any statute, rule, ordinance or regulation of any governmental authority, including without limitation all foreign, federal, state and local laws relating to taxes, environmental protection, occupational health and safety, product quality and safety and employment and labor matters, except in each case as could not have or reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect.

(m) Environmental Laws. The Company and its Subsidiaries (i) are in compliance with all federal, state, local and foreign laws relating to pollution or protection of human health or the environment (including ambient air, surface water, groundwater, land surface or subsurface strata), including laws relating to emissions, discharges, releases or threatened releases of chemicals, pollutants, contaminants, or toxic or hazardous substances or wastes (collectively, “Hazardous Materials”) into the environment, or otherwise relating to the manufacture, processing, distribution, use, treatment, storage, disposal, transport or handling of Hazardous Materials, as well as all authorizations, codes, decrees, demands, or demand letters, injunctions, judgments, licenses, notices or notice letters, orders, permits, plans or regulations, issued, entered, promulgated or approved thereunder (“Environmental Laws”); (ii) have received all permits licenses or other approvals required of them under applicable Environmental Laws to conduct their respective businesses; and (iii) are in compliance with all terms and conditions of any such permit, license or approval where in each clause (i), (ii) and (iii), the failure to so comply could be reasonably expected to have, individually or in the aggregate, a Material Adverse Effect.

(n) Regulatory Permits. The Company and the Subsidiaries possess all certificates, authorizations and permits issued by the appropriate federal, state, local or foreign regulatory authorities necessary to conduct their respective businesses as described in the SEC Reports, except where the failure to possess such permits could not reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect (“Material Permits”), and neither the Company nor any Subsidiary has received any notice of proceedings relating to the revocation or modification of any Material Permit.

(o) Title to Assets. The Company and the Subsidiaries have good and marketable title in fee simple to all real property owned by them and good and marketable title in all personal property owned by them that is material to the business of the Company and the Subsidiaries, in each case free and clear of all Liens, except for (i) Liens as do not materially affect the value of such property and do not materially interfere with the use made and proposed to be made of such property by the Company and the Subsidiaries and (ii) Liens for the payment of federal, state or other taxes, for which appropriate reserves have been made therefor in accordance with GAAP and, the payment of which is neither delinquent nor subject to penalties. Any real property and facilities held under lease by the Company and the Subsidiaries are held by them under valid, subsisting and enforceable leases with which the Company and the Subsidiaries are in compliance.

(p) Intellectual Property. The Company and the Subsidiaries have, or have rights to use, all patents, patent applications, trademarks, trademark applications, service marks, trade names, trade secrets, inventions, copyrights, licenses and other intellectual property rights and similar rights necessary or required for use in connection with their respective businesses as described in the SEC Reports and which the failure to so have could have a Material Adverse Effect (collectively, the “Intellectual Property Rights”). None of, and neither the Company nor any Subsidiary has received a notice (written or otherwise) that any of, the Intellectual Property Rights has expired, terminated or been abandoned, or is expected to expire or terminate or be abandoned, within two (2) years from the date of this Agreement. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary has received, since the date of the latest audited financial statements included within the SEC Reports, a written notice of a claim or otherwise has any knowledge that the Intellectual Property Rights violate or infringe upon the rights of any Person, except as could not have or reasonably be expected to not have a Material Adverse Effect. To the knowledge of the Company, all such Intellectual Property Rights are enforceable and there is no existing infringement by another Person of any of the Intellectual Property Rights. The Company and its Subsidiaries have taken reasonable security measures to protect the secrecy, confidentiality and value of all of their intellectual properties, except where failure to do so could not, individually or in the aggregate, reasonably be expected to have a Material Adverse Effect.

(q) Insurance. The Company and the Subsidiaries are insured by insurers of recognized financial responsibility against such losses and risks and in such amounts as are prudent and customary in the businesses in which the Company and the Subsidiaries are engaged, including, but not limited to, directors and officers insurance coverage at least equal to the aggregate Subscription Amount. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary has any reason to believe that it will not be able to renew its existing insurance coverage as and when such coverage expires or to obtain similar coverage from similar insurers as may be necessary to continue its business without a significant increase in cost.

(r) Transactions With Affiliates and Employees. Except as set forth on Schedule 3.1(r), none of the officers or directors of the Company or any Subsidiary and, to the knowledge of the Company, none of the employees of the Company or any Subsidiary is presently a party to any transaction with the Company or any Subsidiary (other than for services as employees, officers and directors), including any contract, agreement or other arrangement providing for the furnishing of services to or by, providing for rental of real or personal property to or from, providing for the borrowing of money from or lending of money to or otherwise requiring payments to or from any officer, director or such employee or, to the knowledge of the Company, any entity in which any officer, director, or any such employee has a substantial interest or is an officer, director, trustee, stockholder, member or partner, in each case in excess of \$120,000 other than for (i) payment of salary or consulting fees for services rendered, (ii) reimbursement for expenses incurred on behalf of the Company and (iii) other employee benefits, including stock option agreements under any stock option plan of the Company.

(s) Sarbanes-Oxley; Internal Accounting Controls. The Company and the Subsidiaries are in compliance with any and all applicable requirements of the Sarbanes-Oxley Act of 2002 that are effective as of the date hereof, and any and all applicable rules and regulations promulgated by the Commission thereunder that are effective as of the date hereof and as of the Closing Date. The Company and the Subsidiaries maintain a system of internal accounting controls sufficient to provide reasonable assurance that: (i) transactions are executed in accordance with management's general or specific authorizations, (ii) transactions are recorded as necessary to permit preparation of financial statements in conformity with GAAP and to maintain asset accountability, (iii) access to assets is permitted only in accordance with management's general or specific authorization, and (iv) the recorded accountability for assets is compared with the existing assets at reasonable intervals and appropriate action is taken with respect to any differences. The Company and the Subsidiaries have established disclosure controls and procedures (as defined in Exchange Act Rules 13a-15(e) and 15d-15(e)) for the Company and the Subsidiaries and designed such disclosure controls and procedures to ensure that information required to be disclosed by the Company in the reports it files or submits under the Exchange Act is recorded, processed, summarized and reported, within the time periods specified in the Commission's rules and forms. The Company's certifying officers have evaluated the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures of the Company and the Subsidiaries as of the end of the period covered by the most recently filed periodic report under the Exchange Act (such date, the "Evaluation Date"). The Company presented in its most recently filed periodic report under the Exchange Act the conclusions of the certifying officers about the effectiveness of the disclosure controls and procedures based on their evaluations as of the Evaluation Date. Since the Evaluation Date, there have been no changes in the internal control over financial reporting (as such term is defined in the Exchange Act) of the Company and its Subsidiaries that have materially affected, or is reasonably likely to materially affect, the internal control over financial reporting of the Company and its Subsidiaries.

(t) Certain Fees. Except as set forth in the Prospectus Supplement, no brokerage or finder's fees or commissions are or will be payable by the Company or any Subsidiary to any broker, financial advisor or consultant, finder, placement agent, investment banker, bank or other Person with respect to the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents. The Purchasers shall have no obligation with respect to any fees or with respect to any claims made by or on behalf of other Persons for fees of a type contemplated in this Section that may be due in connection with the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents.

(u) Investment Company. The Company is not, and is not an Affiliate of, and immediately after receipt of payment for the Securities, will not be or be an Affiliate of, an "investment company" within the meaning of the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended. The Company shall conduct its business in a manner so that it will not become an "investment company" subject to registration under the Investment Company Act of 1940, as amended.

(v) Registration Rights. No Person has any right to cause the Company or any Subsidiary to effect the registration under the Securities Act of any securities of the Company or any Subsidiary.

(w) Listing and Maintenance Requirements. The Common Stock is registered pursuant to Section 12(b) or 12(g) of the Exchange Act, and the Company has taken no action designed to, or which to its knowledge is likely to have the effect of, terminating the registration of the Common Stock under the Exchange Act nor has the Company received any notification that the Commission is contemplating terminating such registration. The Company has not, in the 12 months preceding the date hereof, received notice from any Trading Market on which the Common Stock is or has been listed or quoted to the effect that the Company is not in compliance with the listing or maintenance requirements of such Trading Market. The Company is, and has no reason to believe that it will not in the foreseeable future continue to be, in compliance with all such listing and maintenance requirements. The Common Stock is currently eligible for electronic transfer through the Depository Trust Company or another established clearing corporation and the Company is current in payment of the fees to the Depository Trust Company (or such other established clearing corporation) in connection with such electronic transfer.

(x) Application of Takeover Protections. The Company and the Board of Directors have taken all necessary action, if any, in order to render inapplicable any control share acquisition, business combination, poison pill (including any distribution under a rights agreement) or other similar anti-takeover provision under the Company's certificate of incorporation (or similar charter documents) or the laws of its state of incorporation that is or could become applicable to the Purchasers as a result of the Purchasers and the Company fulfilling their obligations or exercising their rights under the Transaction Documents, including without limitation as a result of the Company's issuance of the Securities and the Purchasers' ownership of the Securities.



(y) Disclosure. Except with respect to the material terms and conditions of the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents, the Company confirms that neither it nor any other Person acting on its behalf has provided any of the Purchasers or their agents or counsel with any information that it believes constitutes or might constitute material, non-public information which is not otherwise disclosed in the Prospectus Supplement. The Company understands and confirms that the Purchasers will rely on the foregoing representation in effecting transactions in securities of the Company. All of the disclosure furnished by or on behalf of the Company to the Purchasers regarding the Company and its Subsidiaries, their respective businesses and the transactions contemplated hereby, including the Disclosure Schedules to this Agreement, is true and correct and does not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state any material fact necessary in order to make the statements made therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made, not misleading. The press releases disseminated by the Company during the twelve months preceding the date of this Agreement taken as a whole do not contain any untrue statement of a material fact or omit to state a material fact required to be stated therein or necessary in order to make the statements therein, in the light of the circumstances under which they were made and when made, not misleading. The Company acknowledges and agrees that no Purchaser makes or has made any representations or warranties with respect to the transactions contemplated hereby other than those specifically set forth in Section 3.2 hereof.

(z) No Integrated Offering. Assuming the accuracy of the Purchasers' representations and warranties set forth in Section 3.2, neither the Company, nor any of its Affiliates, nor any Person acting on its or their behalf has, directly or indirectly, made any offers or sales of any security or solicited any offers to buy any security, under circumstances that would cause this offering of the Securities to be integrated with prior offerings by the Company for purposes of any applicable shareholder approval provisions of any Trading Market on which any of the securities of the Company are listed or designated.

(aa) Solvency. Based on the consolidated financial condition of the Company as of the Closing Date, after giving effect to the receipt by the Company of the proceeds from the sale of the Securities hereunder, (i) the fair saleable value of the Company's assets exceeds the amount that will be required to be paid on or in respect of the Company's existing debts and other liabilities (including known contingent liabilities) as they mature, (ii) the Company's assets do not constitute unreasonably small capital to carry on its business as now conducted and as proposed to be conducted including its capital needs taking into account the particular capital requirements of the business conducted by the Company, consolidated and projected capital requirements and capital availability thereof, and (iii) the current cash flow of the Company, together with the proceeds the Company would receive, were it to liquidate all of its assets, after taking into account all anticipated uses of the cash, would be sufficient to pay all amounts on or in respect of its liabilities when such amounts are required to be paid. The Company does not intend to incur debts beyond its ability to pay such debts as they mature (taking into account the timing and amounts of cash to be payable on or in respect of its debt). The Company has no knowledge of any facts or circumstances which lead it to believe that it will file for reorganization or liquidation under the bankruptcy or reorganization laws of any jurisdiction within one year from the Closing Date. Schedule 3.1(aa) sets forth as of the date hereof all outstanding secured and unsecured Indebtedness of the Company or any Subsidiary, or for which the Company or any Subsidiary has commitments. For the purposes of this Agreement, "Indebtedness" means (x) any liabilities for borrowed money or amounts owed in excess of \$50,000 (other than trade accounts payable incurred in the ordinary course of business), (y) all guaranties, endorsements and other contingent obligations in respect of indebtedness of others, whether or not the same are or should be reflected in the Company's consolidated balance sheet (or the notes thereto), except guaranties by endorsement of negotiable instruments for deposit or collection or similar transactions in the ordinary course of business; and (z) the present value of any lease payments in excess of \$50,000 due under leases required to be capitalized in accordance with GAAP. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary is in default with respect to any Indebtedness.

(bb) Tax Status. Except for matters that would not, individually or in the aggregate, have or reasonably be expected to result in a Material Adverse Effect, the Company and its Subsidiaries each (i) has made or filed all United States federal, state and local income and all foreign income and franchise tax returns, reports and declarations required by any jurisdiction to which it is subject, (ii) has paid all taxes and other governmental assessments and charges that are material in amount, shown or determined to be due on such returns, reports and declarations and (iii) has set aside on its books provision reasonably adequate for the payment of all material taxes for periods subsequent to the periods to which such returns, reports or declarations apply. There are no unpaid taxes in any material amount claimed to be due by the taxing authority of any jurisdiction, and the officers of the Company or of any Subsidiary know of no basis for any such claim.

(cc) Foreign Corrupt Practices. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary, nor to the knowledge of the Company or any Subsidiary, any agent or other person acting on behalf of the Company or any Subsidiary, has (i) directly or indirectly, used any funds for unlawful contributions, gifts, entertainment or other unlawful expenses related to foreign or domestic political activity, (ii) made any unlawful payment to foreign or domestic government officials or employees or to any foreign or domestic political parties or campaigns from corporate funds, (iii) failed to disclose fully any contribution made by the Company or any Subsidiary (or made by any person acting on its behalf of which the Company is aware) which is in violation of law, or (iv) violated in any material respect any provision of FCPA.

(dd) Accountants. The Company's accounting firm is set forth on Schedule 3.1(dd) of the Disclosure Schedules. To the knowledge and belief of the Company, such accounting firm (i) is a registered public accounting firm as required by the Exchange Act and (ii) shall express its opinion with respect to the financial statements to be included in the Company's Annual Report for the fiscal year ending March 31, 2018.

(ee) Acknowledgment Regarding Purchasers' Purchase of Securities. The Company acknowledges and agrees that each of the Purchasers is acting solely in the capacity of an arm's length purchaser with respect to the Transaction Documents and the transactions contemplated thereby. The Company further acknowledges that no Purchaser is acting as a financial advisor or fiduciary of the Company (or in any similar capacity) with respect to the Transaction Documents and the transactions contemplated thereby and any advice given by any Purchaser or any of their respective representatives or agents in connection with the Transaction Documents and the transactions contemplated thereby is merely incidental to the Purchasers' purchase of the Securities. The Company further represents to each Purchaser that the Company's decision to enter into this Agreement and the other Transaction Documents has been based solely on the independent evaluation of the transactions contemplated hereby by the Company and its representatives.

(ff) Acknowledgment Regarding Purchaser's Trading Activity. Anything in this Agreement or elsewhere herein to the contrary notwithstanding (except for Sections 3.2(f) and 4.14 hereof), it is understood and acknowledged by the Company that: (i) none of the Purchasers has been asked by the Company to agree, nor has any Purchaser agreed, to desist from purchasing or selling, long and/or short, securities of the Company, or "derivative" securities based on securities issued by the Company or to hold the Securities for any specified term; (ii) past or future open market or other transactions by any Purchaser, specifically including, without limitation, Short Sales or "derivative" transactions, before or after the closing of this or future private placement transactions, may negatively impact the market price of the Company's publicly-traded securities; (iii) any Purchaser, and counter-parties in "derivative" transactions to which any such Purchaser is a party, directly or indirectly, presently may have a "short" position in the Common Stock, and (iv) each Purchaser shall not be deemed to have any affiliation with or control over any arm's length counter-party in any "derivative" transaction. The Company further understands and acknowledges that (y) one or more Purchasers may engage in hedging activities at various times during the period that the Securities are outstanding, including, without limitation, during the periods that the value of the Warrant Shares deliverable with respect to Securities are being determined, and (z) such hedging activities (if any) could reduce the value of the existing stockholders' equity interests in the Company at and after the time that the hedging activities are being conducted. The Company acknowledges that such aforementioned hedging activities do not constitute a breach of any of the Transaction Documents.

(gg) Regulation M Compliance. The Company has not, and to its knowledge no one acting on its behalf has, (i) taken, directly or indirectly, any action designed to cause or to result in the stabilization or manipulation of the price of any security of the Company to facilitate the sale or resale of any of the Securities, (ii) sold, bid for, purchased, or paid any compensation for soliciting purchases of, any of the Securities, or (iii) paid or agreed to pay to any Person any compensation for soliciting another to purchase any other securities of the Company, other than, in the case of clauses (ii) and (iii), compensation paid to the Company's placement agent in connection with the placement of the Securities.

(hh) FDA. As to each product subject to the jurisdiction of the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (“FDA”) under the Federal Food, Drug and Cosmetic Act, as amended, and the regulations thereunder (“FDCA”) that is manufactured, packaged, labeled, tested, distributed, sold, and/or marketed by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries (each such product, a “Pharmaceutical Product”), such Pharmaceutical Product is being manufactured, packaged, labeled, tested, distributed, sold and/or marketed by the Company in compliance with all applicable requirements under FDCA and similar laws, rules and regulations relating to registration, investigational use, premarket clearance, licensure, or application approval, good manufacturing practices, good laboratory practices, good clinical practices, product listing, quotas, labeling, advertising, record keeping and filing of reports, except where the failure to be in compliance would not have a Material Adverse Effect. There is no pending, completed or, to the Company's knowledge, threatened, action (including any lawsuit, arbitration, or legal or administrative or regulatory proceeding, charge, complaint, or investigation) against the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, and none of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries has received any notice, warning letter or other communication from the FDA or any other governmental entity, which (i) contests the premarket clearance, licensure, registration, or approval of, the uses of, the distribution of, the manufacturing or packaging of, the testing of, the sale of, or the labeling and promotion of any Pharmaceutical Product, (ii) withdraws its approval of, requests the recall, suspension, or seizure of, or withdraws or orders the withdrawal of advertising or sales promotional materials relating to, any Pharmaceutical Product, (iii) imposes a clinical hold on any clinical investigation by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, (iv) enjoins production at any facility of the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, (v) enters or proposes to enter into a consent decree of permanent injunction with the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, or (vi) otherwise alleges any violation of any laws, rules or regulations by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, and which, either individually or in the aggregate, would have a Material Adverse Effect. The properties, business and operations of the Company have been and are being conducted in all material respects in accordance with all applicable laws, rules and regulations of the FDA. The Company has not been informed by the FDA that the FDA will prohibit the marketing, sale, license or use in the United States of any product proposed to be developed, produced or marketed by the Company nor has the FDA expressed any concern as to approving or clearing for marketing any product being developed or proposed to be developed by the Company.

(ii) Stock Option Plans. Each stock option granted by the Company under the Company's stock option plan was granted (i) in accordance with the terms of the Company's stock option plan and (ii) with an exercise price at least equal to the fair market value of the Common Stock on the date such stock option would be considered granted under GAAP and applicable law. No stock option granted under the Company's stock option plan has been backdated. The Company has not knowingly granted, and there is no and has been no Company policy or practice to knowingly grant, stock options prior to, or otherwise knowingly coordinate the grant of stock options with, the release or other public announcement of material information regarding the Company or its Subsidiaries or their financial results or prospects.

(jj) Office of Foreign Assets Control. Neither the Company nor any Subsidiary nor, to the Company's knowledge, any director, officer, agent, employee or affiliate of the Company or any Subsidiary is currently subject to any U.S. sanctions administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Treasury Department (“OFAC”).

(kk) U.S. Real Property Holding Corporation. The Company is not and has never been a U.S. real property holding corporation within the meaning of Section 897 of the Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and the Company shall so certify upon Purchaser's request.

(ll) Bank Holding Company Act. Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries or Affiliates is subject to the Bank Holding Company Act of 1956, as amended (the “BHCA”) and to regulation by the Board of Governors of the Federal Reserve System (the “Federal Reserve”). Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries or Affiliates owns or controls, directly or indirectly, five percent (5%) or more of the outstanding shares of any class of voting securities or twenty-five percent or more of the total equity of a bank or any entity that is subject to the BHCA and to regulation by the Federal Reserve. Neither the Company nor any of its Subsidiaries or Affiliates exercises a controlling influence over the management or policies of a bank or any entity that is subject to the BHCA and to regulation by the Federal Reserve.

(mm) Money Laundering. The operations of the Company and its Subsidiaries are and have been conducted at all times in compliance with applicable financial record-keeping and reporting requirements of the Currency and Foreign Transactions Reporting Act of 1970, as amended, applicable money laundering statutes and applicable rules and regulations thereunder (collectively, the “Money Laundering Laws”), and no Action or Proceeding by or before any court or governmental agency, authority or body or any arbitrator involving the Company or any Subsidiary with respect to the Money Laundering Laws is pending or, to the knowledge of the Company or any Subsidiary, threatened.

3.2 Representations and Warranties of the Purchasers. Each Purchaser, for itself and for no other Purchaser, hereby represents and warrants as of the date hereof and as of the Closing Date to the Company as follows (unless as of a specific date therein, in which case they shall be accurate as of such date):

(a) Organization: Authority. Such Purchaser is either an individual or an entity duly incorporated or formed, validly existing and in good standing under the laws of the jurisdiction of its incorporation or formation with full right, corporate, partnership, limited liability company or similar power and authority to enter into and to consummate the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents and otherwise to carry out its obligations hereunder and thereunder. The execution and delivery of the Transaction Documents and performance by such Purchaser of the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents have been duly authorized by all necessary corporate, partnership, limited liability company or similar action, as applicable, on the part of such Purchaser. Each Transaction Document to which it is a party has been duly executed by such Purchaser, and when delivered by such Purchaser in accordance with the terms hereof, will constitute the valid and legally binding obligation of such Purchaser, enforceable against it in accordance with its terms, except: (i) as limited by general equitable principles and applicable bankruptcy, insolvency, reorganization, moratorium and other laws of general application affecting enforcement of creditors' rights generally, (ii) as limited by laws relating to the availability of specific performance, injunctive relief or other equitable remedies and (iii) insofar as indemnification and contribution provisions may be limited by applicable law.

(b) Understandings or Arrangements. Such Purchaser is acquiring the Securities as principal for its own account and has no direct or indirect arrangement or understandings with any other persons to distribute or regarding the distribution of such Securities (this representation and warranty not limiting such Purchaser's right to sell the Securities pursuant to the Registration Statement or otherwise in compliance with applicable federal and state securities laws). Such Purchaser is acquiring the Securities hereunder in the ordinary course of its business.

(c) Purchaser Status. At the time such Purchaser was offered the Securities, it was, and as of the date hereof it is, and on each date on which it exercises any Warrants, it will be an "accredited investor" as defined in Rule 501(a)(1), (a)(2), (a)(3), (a)(7) or (a)(8) under the Securities Act.

(d) Experience of Such Purchaser. Such Purchaser, either alone or together with its representatives, has such knowledge, sophistication and experience in business and financial matters so as to be capable of evaluating the merits and risks of the prospective investment in the Securities, and has so evaluated the merits and risks of such investment. Such Purchaser is able to bear the economic risk of an investment in the Securities and, at the present time, is able to afford a complete loss of such investment.

(e) Access to Information. Such Purchaser acknowledges that it has had the opportunity to review the Transaction Documents (including all exhibits and schedules thereto) and the SEC Reports and has been afforded, (i) the opportunity to ask such questions as it has deemed necessary of, and to receive answers from, representatives of the Company concerning the terms and conditions of the offering of the Securities and the merits and risks of investing in the Securities; (ii) access to information about the Company and its financial condition, results of operations, business, properties, management and prospects sufficient to enable it to evaluate its investment; and (iii) the opportunity to obtain such additional information that the Company possesses or can acquire without unreasonable effort or expense that is necessary to make an informed investment decision with respect to the investment. Such Purchaser acknowledges and agrees that neither the Placement Agent nor any Affiliate of the Placement Agent has provided such Purchaser with any information or advice with respect to the Securities nor is such information or advice necessary or desired. Neither the Placement Agent nor any Affiliate has made or makes any representation as to the Company or the quality of the Securities and the Placement Agent and any Affiliate may have acquired non-public information with respect to the Company which such Purchaser agrees need not be provided to it. In connection with the issuance of the Securities to such Purchaser, neither the Placement Agent nor any of its Affiliates has acted as a financial advisor or fiduciary to such Purchaser.

(f) Certain Transactions and Confidentiality. Other than consummating the transactions contemplated hereunder, such Purchaser has not, nor has any Person acting on behalf of or pursuant to any understanding with such Purchaser, directly or indirectly executed any purchases or sales, including Short Sales, of the securities of the Company during the period commencing as of the time that such Purchaser first received a term sheet (written or oral) from the Company or any other Person representing the Company setting forth the material terms of the transactions contemplated hereunder and ending immediately prior to the execution hereof. Notwithstanding the foregoing, in the case of a Purchaser that is a multi-managed investment vehicle whereby separate portfolio managers manage separate portions of such Purchaser's assets and the portfolio managers have no direct knowledge of the investment decisions made by the portfolio managers managing other portions of such Purchaser's assets, the representation set forth above shall only apply with respect to the portion of assets managed by the portfolio manager that made the investment decision to purchase the Securities covered by this Agreement. Other than to other Persons party to this Agreement or to such Purchaser's representatives, including, without limitation, its officers, directors, partners, legal and other advisors, employees, agents and Affiliates, such Purchaser has maintained the confidentiality of all disclosures made to it in connection with this transaction (including the existence and terms of this transaction). Notwithstanding the foregoing, for the avoidance of doubt, nothing contained herein shall constitute a representation or warranty, or preclude any actions, with respect to locating or borrowing shares in order to effect Short Sales or similar transactions in the future.

The Company acknowledges and agrees that the representations contained in this Section 3.2 shall not modify, amend or affect such Purchaser's right to rely on the Company's representations and warranties contained in this Agreement or any representations and warranties contained in any other Transaction Document or any other document or instrument executed and/or delivered in connection with this Agreement or the consummation of the transactions contemplated hereby. Notwithstanding the foregoing, for the avoidance of doubt, nothing contained herein shall constitute a representation or warranty, or preclude any actions, with respect to locating or borrowing shares in order to effect Short Sales or similar transactions in the future.

#### ARTICLE IV.

##### OTHER AGREEMENTS OF THE PARTIES

4.1 Warrant Shares. If all or any portion of a Warrant is exercised at a time when there is an effective registration statement to cover the issuance or resale of the Warrant Shares or if the Warrant is exercised via cashless exercise, the Warrant Shares issued pursuant to any such exercise shall be issued free of all legends. If at any time following the date hereof the Registration Statement (or any subsequent registration statement registering the sale or resale of the Warrant Shares) is not effective or is not otherwise available for the sale or resale of the Warrant Shares, the Company shall immediately notify the holders of the Warrants in writing that such registration statement is not then effective and thereafter shall promptly notify such holders when the registration statement is effective again and available for the sale or resale of the Warrant Shares (it being understood and agreed that the foregoing shall not limit the ability of the Company to issue, or any Purchaser to sell, any of the Warrant Shares in compliance with applicable federal and state securities laws). The Company shall use best efforts to keep a registration statement (including the Registration Statement) registering the issuance or resale of the Warrant Shares effective during the term of the Warrants.

4.2 Furnishing of Information. Until the earliest of the time that (i) no Purchaser owns Securities or (ii) the Warrants have expired, the Company covenants to timely file (or obtain extensions in respect thereof and file within the applicable grace period) all reports required to be filed by the Company after the date hereof pursuant to the Exchange Act even if the Company is not then subject to the reporting requirements of the Exchange Act.

4.3 Integration. The Company shall not sell, offer for sale or solicit offers to buy or otherwise negotiate in respect of any security (as defined in Section 2 of the Securities Act) that would be integrated with the offer or sale of the Securities for purposes of the rules and regulations of any Trading Market such that it would require shareholder approval prior to the closing of such other transaction unless shareholder approval is obtained before the closing of such subsequent transaction.

4.4 Securities Laws Disclosure; Publicity. The Company shall (a) by 9:00 a.m. (New York City time) on the Trading Day immediately following the date hereof, issue a press release disclosing the material terms of the transactions contemplated hereby, and (b) file a Current Report on Form 8-K, including the Transaction Documents as exhibits thereto, with the Commission within the time required by the Exchange Act. From and after the issuance of such press release, the Company represents to the Purchasers that it shall have publicly disclosed all material, non-public information delivered to any of the Purchasers by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries, or any of their respective officers, directors, employees or agents in connection with the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents. In addition, effective upon the issuance of such press release, the Company acknowledges and agrees that any and all confidentiality or similar obligations under any agreement, whether written or oral, between the Company, any of its Subsidiaries or any of their respective officers, directors, agents, employees or Affiliates on the one hand, and any of the Purchasers or any of their Affiliates on the other hand, shall terminate. The Company and each Purchaser shall consult with each other in issuing any other press releases with respect to the transactions contemplated hereby, and neither the Company nor any Purchaser shall issue any such press release nor otherwise make any such public statement without the prior consent of the Company, with respect to any press release of any Purchaser, or without the prior consent of each Purchaser, with respect to any press release of the Company, which consent shall not unreasonably be withheld or delayed, except if such disclosure is required by law, in which case the disclosing party shall promptly provide the other party with prior notice of such public statement or communication. Notwithstanding the foregoing, the Company shall not publicly disclose the name of any Purchaser, or include the name of any Purchaser in any filing with the Commission or any regulatory agency or Trading Market, without the prior written consent of such Purchaser, except (a) as required by federal securities law in connection with the filing of final Transaction Documents with the Commission and (b) to the extent such disclosure is required by law or Trading Market regulations, in which case the Company shall provide the Purchasers with prior notice of such disclosure permitted under this clause (b).

4.5 Shareholder Rights Plan. No claim will be made or enforced by the Company or, with the consent of the Company, any other Person, that any Purchaser is an “Acquiring Person” under any control share acquisition, business combination, poison pill (including any distribution under a rights agreement) or similar anti-takeover plan or arrangement in effect or hereafter adopted by the Company, or that any Purchaser could be deemed to trigger the provisions of any such plan or arrangement, by virtue of receiving Securities under the Transaction Documents or under any other agreement between the Company and the Purchasers.

4.6 Non-Public Information. Except with respect to the material terms and conditions of the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents, which shall be disclosed pursuant to Section 4.4, the Company covenants and agrees that neither it, nor any other Person acting on its behalf will provide any Purchaser or its agents or counsel with any information that constitutes, or the Company reasonably believes constitutes, material non-public information, unless prior thereto such Purchaser shall have consented to the receipt of such information and agreed with the Company to keep such information confidential. The Company understands and confirms that each Purchaser shall be relying on the foregoing covenant in effecting transactions in securities of the Company. To the extent that the Company delivers any material, non-public information to a Purchaser without such Purchaser’s consent, the Company hereby covenants and agrees that such Purchaser shall not have any duty of confidentiality to the Company, any of its Subsidiaries, or any of their respective officers, directors, agents, employees or Affiliates, or a duty to the Company, any of its Subsidiaries or any of their respective officers, directors, agents, employees or Affiliates not to trade on the basis of, such material, non-public information, provided that the Purchaser shall remain subject to applicable law. To the extent that any notice provided pursuant to any Transaction Document constitutes, or contains, material, non-public information regarding the Company or any Subsidiaries, the Company shall simultaneously file such notice with the Commission pursuant to a Current Report on Form 8-K. The Company understands and confirms that each Purchaser shall be relying on the foregoing covenant in effecting transactions in securities of the Company.

4.7 Use of Proceeds. Except as set forth on Schedule 4.7 attached hereto, the Company shall use the net proceeds from the sale of the Securities hereunder for working capital purposes and shall not use such proceeds: (a) for the satisfaction of any portion of the Company’s debt (other than payment of trade payables in the ordinary course of the Company’s business and prior practices), (b) for the redemption of any Common Stock or Common Stock Equivalents, (c) for the settlement of any outstanding litigation or (d) in violation of FCPA or OFAC regulations.

4.8 Indemnification of Purchasers. Subject to the provisions of this Section 4.8, the Company will indemnify and hold each Purchaser and its directors, officers, shareholders, members, partners, employees and agents (and any other Persons with a functionally equivalent role of a Person holding such titles notwithstanding a lack of such title or any other title), each Person who controls such Purchaser (within the meaning of Section 15 of the Securities Act and Section 20 of the Exchange Act), and the directors, officers, shareholders, agents, members, partners or employees (and any other Persons with a functionally equivalent role of a Person holding such titles notwithstanding a lack of such title or any other title) of such controlling persons (each, a “Purchaser Party”) harmless from any and all losses, liabilities, obligations, claims, contingencies, damages, costs and expenses, including all judgments, amounts paid in settlements, court costs and reasonable attorneys’ fees and costs of investigation that any such Purchaser Party may suffer or incur as a result of or relating to (a) any breach of any of the representations, warranties, covenants or agreements made by the Company in this Agreement or in the other Transaction Documents or (b) any action instituted against the Purchaser Parties in any capacity, or any of them or their respective Affiliates, by any stockholder of the Company who is not an Affiliate of such Purchaser Party, with respect to any of the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents (unless such action is solely based upon a material breach of such Purchaser Party’s representations, warranties or covenants under the Transaction Documents or any agreements or understandings such Purchaser Party may have with any such stockholder or any violations by such Purchaser Party of state or federal securities laws or any conduct by such Purchaser Party which is finally judicially determined to constitute fraud, gross negligence or willful misconduct). If any action shall be brought against any Purchaser Party in respect of which indemnity may be sought pursuant to this Agreement, such Purchaser Party shall promptly notify the Company in writing, and the Company shall have the right to assume the defense thereof with counsel of its own choosing reasonably acceptable to the Purchaser Party. Any Purchaser Party shall have the right to employ separate counsel in any such action and participate in the defense thereof, but the fees and expenses of such counsel shall be at the expense of such Purchaser Party except to the extent that (i) the employment thereof has been specifically authorized by the Company in writing, (ii) the Company has failed after a reasonable period of time to assume such defense and to employ counsel or (iii) in such action there is, in the reasonable opinion of counsel, a material conflict on any material issue between the position of the Company and the position of such Purchaser Party, in which case the Company shall be responsible for the reasonable fees and expenses of no more than one such separate counsel. The Company will not be liable to any Purchaser Party under this Agreement (y) for any settlement by a Purchaser Party effected without the Company’s prior written consent, which shall not be unreasonably withheld or delayed; or (z) to the extent, but only to the extent that a loss, claim, damage or liability is attributable to any Purchaser Party’s breach of any of the representations, warranties, covenants or agreements made by such Purchaser Party in this Agreement or in the other Transaction Documents. The indemnification required by this Section 4.8 shall be made by periodic payments of the amount thereof during the course of the investigation or defense, as and when bills are received or are incurred. The indemnity agreements contained herein shall be in addition to any cause of action or similar right of any Purchaser Party against the Company or others and any liabilities the Company may be subject to pursuant to law.

4.9 Reservation of Common Stock. As of the date hereof, the Company has reserved and the Company shall continue to reserve and keep available at all times, free of preemptive rights, a sufficient number of shares of Common Stock for the purpose of enabling the Company to issue Shares pursuant to this Agreement and Warrant Shares pursuant to any exercise of the Warrants.

4.10 Listing of Common Stock. The Company hereby agrees to use best efforts to maintain the listing or quotation of the Common Stock on the Trading Market on which it is currently listed, and concurrently with the Closing, the Company shall apply to list or quote all of the Shares and Warrant Shares on such Trading Market and promptly secure the listing of all of the Shares and Warrant Shares on such Trading Market. The Company further agrees, if the Company applies to have the Common Stock traded on any other Trading Market, it will then include in such application all of the Shares and Warrant Shares, and will take such other action as is necessary to cause all of the Shares and Warrant Shares to be listed or quoted on such other Trading Market as promptly as possible. The Company will then take all action reasonably necessary to continue the listing and trading of its Common Stock on a Trading Market and will comply in all respects with the Company’s reporting, filing and other obligations under the bylaws or rules of the Trading Market. The Company agrees to maintain the eligibility of the Common Stock for electronic transfer through the Depository Trust Company or another established clearing corporation, including, without limitation, by timely payment of fees to the Depository Trust Company or such other established clearing corporation in connection with such electronic transfer.

4.11 Reserved

4.12 Subsequent Equity Sales.

(a) From the date hereof until 90 days after the Closing Date, neither the Company nor any Subsidiary shall issue, enter into any agreement to issue or announce the issuance or proposed issuance of any shares of Common Stock or Common Stock Equivalents.

(b) From the date hereof until such time as no Purchaser holds any of the Warrants, the Company shall be prohibited from effecting or entering into an agreement to effect any issuance by the Company or any of its Subsidiaries of Common Stock or Common Stock Equivalents (or a combination of units thereof) involving a Variable Rate Transaction. “Variable Rate Transaction” means a transaction in which the Company (i) issues or sells any debt or equity securities that are convertible into, exchangeable or exercisable for, or include the right to receive additional shares of Common Stock either (A) at a conversion price, exercise price or exchange rate or other price that is based upon and/or varies with the trading prices of or quotations for the shares of Common Stock at any time after the initial issuance of such debt or equity securities, or (B) with a conversion, exercise or exchange price that is subject to being reset at some future date after the initial issuance of such debt or equity security or upon the occurrence of specified or contingent events directly or indirectly related to the business of the Company or the market for the Common Stock or (ii) enters into, or effects a transaction under, any agreement, including, but not limited to, an equity line of credit, whereby the Company may issue securities at a future determined price; provided, however, upon the completion of the restrictive period set forth in Section 4.12(a), the Company may draw down on its Common Stock Sales Agreement with the Placement Agent, dated June 28, 2016. Any Purchaser shall be entitled to obtain injunctive relief against the Company to preclude any such issuance, which remedy shall be in addition to any right to collect damages.

(c) Notwithstanding the foregoing, this Section 4.12 shall not apply in respect of an Exempt Issuance, except that no Variable Rate Transaction shall be an Exempt Issuance.

4.13 Equal Treatment of Purchasers No consideration (including any modification of any Transaction Document) shall be offered or paid to any Person to amend or consent to a waiver or modification of any provision of the Transaction Documents unless the same consideration is also offered to all of the parties to the Transaction Documents. For clarification purposes, this provision constitutes a separate right granted to each Purchaser by the Company and negotiated separately by each Purchaser, and is intended for the Company to treat the Purchasers as a class and shall not in any way be construed as the Purchasers acting in concert or as a group with respect to the purchase, disposition or voting of Securities or otherwise.

4.14 Certain Transactions and Confidentiality. Each Purchaser, severally and not jointly with the other Purchasers, covenants that neither it nor any Affiliate acting on its behalf or pursuant to any understanding with it will execute any purchases or sales, including Short Sales of any of the Company’s securities during the period commencing with the execution of this Agreement and ending at such time that the transactions contemplated by this Agreement are first publicly announced pursuant to the initial press release as described in Section 4.4. Each Purchaser, severally and not jointly with the other Purchasers, covenants that until such time as the transactions contemplated by this Agreement are publicly disclosed by the Company pursuant to the initial press release as described in Section 4.4, such Purchaser will maintain the confidentiality of the existence and terms of this transaction and the information included in the Disclosure Schedules. Notwithstanding the foregoing and notwithstanding anything contained in this Agreement to the contrary, the Company expressly acknowledges and agrees that (i) no Purchaser makes any representation, warranty or covenant hereby that it will not engage in effecting transactions in any securities of the Company after the time that the transactions contemplated by this Agreement are first publicly announced pursuant to the initial press release as described in Section 4.4, (ii) no Purchaser shall be restricted or prohibited from effecting any transactions in any securities of the Company in accordance with applicable securities laws from and after the time that the transactions contemplated by this Agreement are first publicly announced pursuant to the initial press release as described in Section 4.4 and (iii) no Purchaser shall have any duty of confidentiality or duty not to trade in the securities of the Company to the Company or its Subsidiaries after the issuance of the initial press release as described in Section 4.4. Notwithstanding the foregoing, in the case of a Purchaser that is a multi-managed investment vehicle whereby separate portfolio managers manage separate portions of such Purchaser’s assets and the portfolio managers have no direct knowledge of the investment decisions made by the portfolio managers managing other portions of such Purchaser’s assets, the covenant set forth above shall only apply with respect to the portion of assets managed by the portfolio manager that made the investment decision to purchase the Securities covered by this Agreement.



4.15 Capital Changes. Until the one year anniversary of the Closing Date, the Company shall not undertake a reverse or forward stock split or reclassification of the Common Stock without the prior written consent of the Purchasers holding a majority in interest of the Shares.

4.16 Exercise Procedures. The form of Notice of Exercise included in the Warrants set forth the totality of the procedures required of the Purchasers in order to exercise the Warrants. No additional legal opinion, other information or instructions shall be required of the Purchasers to exercise their Warrants. Without limiting the preceding sentences, no ink-original Notice of Exercise shall be required, nor shall any medallion guarantee (or other type of guarantee or notarization) of any Notice of Exercise form be required in order to exercise the Warrants. The Company shall honor exercises of the Warrants and shall deliver Warrant Shares in accordance with the terms, conditions and time periods set forth in the Transaction Documents.

## ARTICLE V.

### MISCELLANEOUS

5.1 Termination. This Agreement may be terminated by any Purchaser, as to such Purchaser's obligations hereunder only and without any effect whatsoever on the obligations between the Company and the other Purchasers, by written notice to the other parties, if the Closing has not been consummated on or before \_\_\_\_\_, 2017; provided, however, that no such termination will affect the right of any party to sue for any breach by any other party (or parties).

5.2 Fees and Expenses. Except as expressly set forth in the Transaction Documents to the contrary, each party shall pay the fees and expenses of its advisers, counsel, accountants and other experts, if any, and all other expenses incurred by such party incident to the negotiation, preparation, execution, delivery and performance of this Agreement. The Company shall pay all Transfer Agent fees (including, without limitation, any fees required for same-day processing of any instruction letter delivered by the Company and any exercise notice delivered by a Purchaser), stamp taxes and other taxes and duties levied in connection with the delivery of any Securities to the Purchasers.

5.3 Entire Agreement. The Transaction Documents, together with the exhibits and schedules thereto, the Prospectus and the Prospectus Supplement, contain the entire understanding of the parties with respect to the subject matter hereof and thereof and supersede all prior agreements and understandings, oral or written, with respect to such matters, which the parties acknowledge have been merged into such documents, exhibits and schedules.

5.4 Notices. Any and all notices or other communications or deliveries required or permitted to be provided hereunder shall be in writing and shall be deemed given and effective on the earliest of: (a) the date of transmission, if such notice or communication is delivered via facsimile at the facsimile number or email attachment at the email address as set forth on the signature pages attached hereto at or prior to 5:30 p.m. (New York City time) on a Trading Day, (b) the next Trading Day after the date of transmission, if such notice or communication is delivered via facsimile at the facsimile number or email attachment at the email address as set forth on the signature pages attached hereto on a day that is not a Trading Day or later than 5:30 p.m. (New York City time) on any Trading Day, (c) the second (2<sup>nd</sup>) Trading Day following the date of mailing, if sent by U.S. nationally recognized overnight courier service or (d) upon actual receipt by the party to whom such notice is required to be given. The address for such notices and communications shall be as set forth on the signature pages attached hereto. To the extent that any notice provided pursuant to any Transaction Document constitutes, or contains, material, non-public information regarding the Company or any Subsidiaries, the Company shall simultaneously file such notice with the Commission pursuant to a Current Report on Form 8-K.

5.5 Amendments; Waivers. No provision of this Agreement may be waived, modified, supplemented or amended except in a written instrument signed, in the case of an amendment, by the Company and Purchasers which purchased at least 50.1% in interest of the Shares based on the initial Subscription Amounts hereunder or, in the case of a waiver, by the party against whom enforcement of any such waived provision is sought, provided that if any amendment, modification or waiver disproportionately and adversely impacts a Purchaser (or group of Purchasers), the consent of such disproportionately impacted Purchaser (or group of Purchasers) shall also be required. No waiver of any default with respect to any provision, condition or requirement of this Agreement shall be deemed to be a continuing waiver in the future or a waiver of any subsequent default or a waiver of any other provision, condition or requirement hereof, nor shall any delay or omission of any party to exercise any right hereunder in any manner impair the exercise of any such right. Any proposed amendment or waiver that disproportionately, materially and adversely affects the rights and obligations of any Purchaser relative to the comparable rights and obligations of the other Purchasers shall require the prior written consent of such adversely affected Purchaser. Any amendment effected in accordance with this Section 5.5 shall be binding upon each Purchaser and holder of Securities and the Company.

5.6 Headings. The headings herein are for convenience only, do not constitute a part of this Agreement and shall not be deemed to limit or affect any of the provisions hereof.

5.7 Successors and Assigns. This Agreement shall be binding upon and inure to the benefit of the parties and their successors and permitted assigns. The Company may not assign this Agreement or any rights or obligations hereunder without the prior written consent of each Purchaser (other than by merger). Any Purchaser may assign any or all of its rights under this Agreement to any Person to whom such Purchaser assigns or transfers any Securities, provided that such transferee agrees in writing to be bound, with respect to the transferred Securities, by the provisions of the Transaction Documents that apply to the "Purchasers."

5.8 No Third-Party Beneficiaries. The Placement Agent shall be the third party beneficiary of the representations and warranties of the Company in Section 3.1 and the representations and warranties of the Purchasers in Section 3.2. This Agreement is intended for the benefit of the parties hereto and their respective successors and permitted assigns and is not for the benefit of, nor may any provision hereof be enforced by, any other Person, except as otherwise set forth in Section 4.8 and this Section 5.8.

5.9 Governing Law. All questions concerning the construction, validity, enforcement and interpretation of the Transaction Documents shall be governed by and construed and enforced in accordance with the internal laws of the State of New York, without regard to the principles of conflicts of law thereof. Each party agrees that all legal Proceedings concerning the interpretations, enforcement and defense of the transactions contemplated by this Agreement and any other Transaction Documents (whether brought against a party hereto or its respective affiliates, directors, officers, shareholders, partners, members, employees or agents) shall be commenced exclusively in the state and federal courts sitting in the City of New York. Each party hereby irrevocably submits to the exclusive jurisdiction of the state and federal courts sitting in the City of New York, Borough of Manhattan for the adjudication of any dispute hereunder or in connection herewith or with any transaction contemplated hereby or discussed herein (including with respect to the enforcement of any of the Transaction Documents), and hereby irrevocably waives, and agrees not to assert in any Action or Proceeding, any claim that it is not personally subject to the jurisdiction of any such court, that such Action or Proceeding is improper or is an inconvenient venue for such Proceeding. Each party hereby irrevocably waives personal service of process and consents to process being served in any such Action or Proceeding by mailing a copy thereof via registered or certified mail or overnight delivery (with evidence of delivery) to such party at the address in effect for notices to it under this Agreement and agrees that such service shall constitute good and sufficient service of process and notice thereof. Nothing contained herein shall be deemed to limit in any way any right to serve process in any other manner permitted by law. If any party shall commence an Action or Proceeding to enforce any provisions of the Transaction Documents, then, in addition to the obligations of the Company under Section 4.8, the prevailing party in such Action or Proceeding shall be reimbursed by the non-prevailing party for its reasonable attorneys' fees and other costs and expenses incurred with the investigation, preparation and prosecution of such Action or Proceeding.

5.10 Survival. The representations and warranties contained herein shall survive the Closing and the delivery of the Securities.

5.11 Execution. This Agreement may be executed in two or more counterparts, all of which when taken together shall be considered one and the same agreement and shall become effective when counterparts have been signed by each party and delivered to each other party, it being understood that the parties need not sign the same counterpart. In the event that any signature is delivered by facsimile transmission or by e-mail delivery of a ".pdf" format data file, such signature shall create a valid and binding obligation of the party executing (or on whose behalf such signature is executed) with the same force and effect as if such facsimile or ".pdf" signature page were an original thereof.

5.12 Severability. If any term, provision, covenant or restriction of this Agreement is held by a court of competent jurisdiction to be invalid, illegal, void or unenforceable, the remainder of the terms, provisions, covenants and restrictions set forth herein shall remain in full force and effect and shall in no way be affected, impaired or invalidated, and the parties hereto shall use their commercially reasonable efforts to find and employ an alternative means to achieve the same or substantially the same result as that contemplated by such term, provision, covenant or restriction. It is hereby stipulated and declared to be the intention of the parties that they would have executed the remaining terms, provisions, covenants and restrictions without including any of such that may be hereafter declared invalid, illegal, void or unenforceable.

5.13 Rescission and Withdrawal Right. Notwithstanding anything to the contrary contained in (and without limiting any similar provisions of) any of the other Transaction Documents, whenever any Purchaser exercises a right, election, demand or option under a Transaction Document and the Company does not timely perform its related obligations within the periods therein provided, then such Purchaser may rescind or withdraw, in its sole discretion from time to time upon written notice to the Company, any relevant notice, demand or election in whole or in part without prejudice to its future actions and rights; provided, however, that, in the case of a rescission of an exercise of a Warrant, the applicable Purchaser shall be required to return any shares of Common Stock subject to any such rescinded exercise notice concurrently with the return to such Purchaser of the aggregate exercise price paid to the Company for such shares and the restoration of such Purchaser's right to acquire such shares pursuant to such Purchaser's Warrant (including, issuance of a replacement warrant certificate evidencing such restored right).

5.14 Replacement of Securities. If any certificate or instrument evidencing any Securities is mutilated, lost, stolen or destroyed, the Company shall issue or cause to be issued in exchange and substitution for and upon cancellation thereof (in the case of mutilation), or in lieu of and substitution therefor, a new certificate or instrument, but only upon receipt of evidence reasonably satisfactory to the Company of such loss, theft or destruction. The applicant for a new certificate or instrument under such circumstances shall also pay any reasonable third-party costs (including customary indemnity) associated with the issuance of such replacement Securities.

5.15 Remedies. In addition to being entitled to exercise all rights provided herein or granted by law, including recovery of damages, each of the Purchasers and the Company will be entitled to specific performance under the Transaction Documents. The parties agree that monetary damages may not be adequate compensation for any loss incurred by reason of any breach of obligations contained in the Transaction Documents and hereby agree to waive and not to assert in any Action for specific performance of any such obligation the defense that a remedy at law would be adequate.

5.16 Payment Set Aside. To the extent that the Company makes a payment or payments to any Purchaser pursuant to any Transaction Document or a Purchaser enforces or exercises its rights thereunder, and such payment or payments or the proceeds of such enforcement or exercise or any part thereof are subsequently invalidated, declared to be fraudulent or preferential, set aside, recovered from, disgorged by or are required to be refunded, repaid or otherwise restored to the Company, a trustee, receiver or any other Person under any law (including, without limitation, any bankruptcy law, state or federal law, common law or equitable cause of action), then to the extent of any such restoration the obligation or part thereof originally intended to be satisfied shall be revived and continued in full force and effect as if such payment had not been made or such enforcement or setoff had not occurred.

5.17 Independent Nature of Purchasers' Obligations and Rights. The obligations of each Purchaser under any Transaction Document are several and not joint with the obligations of any other Purchaser, and no Purchaser shall be responsible in any way for the performance or non-performance of the obligations of any other Purchaser under any Transaction Document. Nothing contained herein or in any other Transaction Document, and no action taken by any Purchaser pursuant hereto or thereto, shall be deemed to constitute the Purchasers as a partnership, an association, a joint venture or any other kind of entity, or create a presumption that the Purchasers are in any way acting in concert or as a group with respect to such obligations or the transactions contemplated by the Transaction Documents. Each Purchaser shall be entitled to independently protect and enforce its rights including, without limitation, the rights arising out of this Agreement or out of the other Transaction Documents, and it shall not be necessary for any other Purchaser to be joined as an additional party in any Proceeding for such purpose. Each Purchaser has been represented by its own separate legal counsel in its review and negotiation of the Transaction Documents. For reasons of administrative convenience only, each Purchaser and its respective counsel have chosen to communicate with the Company through EGS. EGS does not represent any of the Purchasers and only represents the Placement Agent. The Company has elected to provide all Purchasers with the same terms and Transaction Documents for the convenience of the Company and not because it was required or requested to do so by any of the Purchasers. It is expressly understood and agreed that each provision contained in this Agreement and in each other Transaction Document is between the Company and a Purchaser, solely, and not between the Company and the Purchasers collectively and not between and among the Purchasers.

5.18 Liquidated Damages. The Company's obligations to pay any partial liquidated damages or other amounts owing under the Transaction Documents is a continuing obligation of the Company and shall not terminate until all unpaid partial liquidated damages and other amounts have been paid notwithstanding the fact that the instrument or security pursuant to which such partial liquidated damages or other amounts are due and payable shall have been canceled.

5.19 Saturdays, Sundays, Holidays, etc. If the last or appointed day for the taking of any action or the expiration of any right required or granted herein shall not be a Business Day, then such action may be taken or such right may be exercised on the next succeeding Business Day.

5.20 Construction. The parties agree that each of them and/or their respective counsel have reviewed and had an opportunity to revise the Transaction Documents and, therefore, the normal rule of construction to the effect that any ambiguities are to be resolved against the drafting party shall not be employed in the interpretation of the Transaction Documents or any amendments thereto. In addition, each and every reference to share prices and shares of Common Stock in any Transaction Document shall be subject to adjustment for reverse and forward stock splits, stock dividends, stock combinations and other similar transactions of the Common Stock that occur after the date of this Agreement.

5.21 **WAIVER OF JURY TRIAL. IN ANY ACTION, SUIT, OR PROCEEDING IN ANY JURISDICTION BROUGHT BY ANY PARTY AGAINST ANY OTHER PARTY, THE PARTIES EACH KNOWINGLY AND INTENTIONALLY, TO THE GREATEST EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, HEREBY ABSOLUTELY, UNCONDITIONALLY, IRREVOCABLY AND EXPRESSLY WAIVES FOREVER TRIAL BY JURY.**

*(Signature Pages Follow)*

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the parties hereto have caused this Securities Purchase Agreement to be duly executed by their respective authorized signatories as of the date first indicated above.

**AETHLON MEDICAL, INC.**

Address for Notice:

By: \_\_\_\_\_

Name:

Title:

With a copy to (which shall not constitute notice):

E-Mail:

Fax:

[REMAINDER OF PAGE INTENTIONALLY LEFT BLANK  
SIGNATURE PAGE FOR PURCHASER FOLLOWS]

[PURCHASER SIGNATURE PAGES TO AEMD SECURITIES PURCHASE AGREEMENT]

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, the undersigned have caused this Securities Purchase Agreement to be duly executed by their respective authorized signatories as of the date first indicated above.

Name of Purchaser: \_\_\_\_\_

*Signature of Authorized Signatory of Purchaser:* \_\_\_\_\_

Name of Authorized Signatory: \_\_\_\_\_

Title of Authorized Signatory: \_\_\_\_\_

Email Address of Authorized Signatory: \_\_\_\_\_

Facsimile Number of Authorized Signatory: \_\_\_\_\_

Address for Notice to Purchaser:

Address for Delivery of Securities to Purchaser (if not same as address for notice):

Subscription Amount: \$ \_\_\_\_\_

Beneficial Ownership Limit (Circle One): 4.99% 9.99% 19.99%

Shares: \_\_\_\_\_

Class A Warrant Shares: \_\_\_\_\_

Class B Warrant Shares: \_\_\_\_\_

EIN Number: \_\_\_\_\_

☐ Notwithstanding anything contained in this Agreement to the contrary, by checking this box (i) the obligations of the above-signed to purchase the securities set forth in this Agreement to be purchased from the Company by the above-signed, and the obligations of the Company to sell such securities to the above-signed, shall be unconditional and all conditions to Closing shall be disregarded, (ii) the Closing shall occur by the second (2<sup>nd</sup>) Trading Day following the date of this Agreement, and (iii) any condition to Closing contemplated by this Agreement (but prior to being disregarded by clause (i) above) that required delivery by the Company or the above-signed of any agreement, instrument, certificate or the like or purchase price (as applicable) shall no longer be a condition and shall instead be an unconditional obligation of the Company or the above-signed (as applicable) to deliver such agreement, instrument, certificate or the like or purchase price (as applicable) to such other party on the Closing Date.

[SIGNATURE PAGES CONTINUE]

**CONSENT OF INDEPENDENT REGISTERED PUBLIC ACCOUNTING FIRM**

We consent to the use in this Registration Statement on Form S-1 of Aethlon Medical, Inc. of our report dated June 28, 2017, relating to the consolidated financial statements of Aethlon Medical, Inc. (which report expresses an unqualified opinion and includes an explanatory paragraph relating to the Company's ability to continue as a going concern), appearing in the Prospectus, which is part of this Registration Statement.

We also consent to the reference to our firm under the heading "Experts" in such Prospectus.

/s/ **SQUAR MILNER LLP**

**SQUAR MILNER LLP**

San Diego, California

September 15, 2017